

BASIC **SPOKEN** CHINESE PRACTICE ESSENTIALS

CORNELIUS C. KUBLER & YANG WANG

AN INTRODUCTION TO SPEAKING AND LISTENING FOR BEGINNERS

A wealth of carefully-designed activities to power and polish your spoken Chinese



DOWNLOAD
Free audio materials

features 16+ hours of audio,
plus 125+ pages of additional practice!



TUTTLE

《基础中文：听与说》练习册
《基礎中文：聽與說》練習冊

BASIC SPOKEN CHINESE PRACTICE ESSENTIALS

AN INTRODUCTION TO SPEAKING AND LISTENING FOR BEGINNERS

CORNELIUS C. KUBLER & YANG WANG

TUTTLE Publishing
Tokyo | Rutland, Vermont | Singapore

Published by Tuttle Publishing, an imprint of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

www.tuttlepublishing.com

Copyright © 2011 Cornelius C. Kubler and Yang Wang

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without prior written permission from the publisher.

ISBN: 978-1-4629-1464-7 (ebook)

Interior design: Anne Bell Carter

Distributed by

North America, Latin America & Europe

Tuttle Publishing
364 Innovation Drive
North Clarendon, VT 05759-9436 U.S.A.
Tel: 1 (802) 773-8930
Fax: 1 (802) 773-6993
info@tuttlepublishing.com
www.tuttlepublishing.com

Japan

Tuttle Publishing
Yaekari Building, 3rd Floor
5-4-12 Osaki
Shinagawa-ku
Tokyo 141 0032
Tel: (81) 3 5437-0171
Fax: (81) 3 5437-0755
sales@tuttle.co.jp
www.tuttle.co.jp

Asia Pacific

Berkeley Books Pte. Ltd.
61 Tai Seng Avenue #02-12
Singapore 534167
Tel: (65) 6280-1330
Fax: (65) 6280-6290
inquiries@periplus.com.sg
www.periplus.com

First edition
14 13 12 11 5 4 3 2 1

Printed in Singapore

TUTTLE PUBLISHING® is a registered trademark of Tuttle Publishing, a division of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

A Note to the Learner

When it comes to learning Chinese, practice is essential, of course. This workbook offers you many options for practicing and polishing your language skills, and was designed to be used in conjunction with the book *Basic Spoken Chinese*. However, it may be used to hone speaking skills no matter which book or course you're using to learn Chinese.

There are no Chinese characters to be found here because you don't need characters to learn to speak Chinese. In fact, learning the characters for everything you learn to say is an inefficient way to learn Chinese, one that significantly slows down your progress.

To help you learn to speak and understand Chinese as efficiently as possible, this workbook gives you the Chinese language portions not via characters, but instead through [audio](#) featuring native speakers ([on the accompanying disc](#)). And in the pages of this book, the Chinese is represented in Hanyu Pinyin, the official Chinese romanization system.

- If you wish to learn Chinese reading and writing, which is certainly to be recommended for most learners, you should—together with or after the spoken course—use the companion course *Basic Written Chinese*. It corresponds with *Basic Spoken Chinese* and systematically introduces the highest-frequency characters (simplified and traditional) and words in context in sentences and reading passages as well as in realia such as street signs, notes, and name cards.

- For instructors and those learners with prior knowledge of Chinese characters, a Basic Spoken Chinese: Character Transcription is also available. It contains transcriptions into simplified and traditional characters of Basic Spoken Chinese. Please note that the character transcription is not intended, and should not be used, as the primary vehicle for beginning students to learn reading and writing.
- The Basic Chinese Instructor's Guide contains detailed suggestions for using these materials as well as communicative exercises for use by instructors in class or by tutors during practice sessions.

??

??
??
??
??
??

??

??
??
??
??
??



Do you prefer single-sided pages for ease in turning in completed exercises for review & correction?

[DOWNLOAD](#) the free bonus material



Sections 5, 6, 7, and 8 may be printed out in single-sided format.

Contents

1. A Note to the Learner
2. How to Use These Materials
3. Abbreviations
4. 1. New Vocabulary and Grammar Summaries
5. 2. Substitution Drills
6.  Substitution Drills Unit 4, Part 4 – Unit 10, Part 4
7. 3. Transformation and Response Drills
8.  Transformation and Response Drills Unit 3, Part 3 – Unit 10, Part 4
9. 4. Role Play Exercises
10. 5. Listening Comprehension Exercises
11. 6. Dictation Exercises
12. 7. Translation Exercises, Units 1–10: For Each Part (Lesson)
13. 8. Translation Exercises, Units 1–10: For Each Complete Unit

Every section includes practice materials for these 10 topics:

Unit 1: Greetings and Useful Phrases

Unit 2: Introductions

Unit 3: Numbers, Dates, Time, and Money (I)

Unit 4: Numbers, Dates, Time, and Money (II)

Unit 5: Locating Persons, Places, and Things

Unit 6: Biographical Information (I)

Unit 7: Biographical Information (II)

Unit 8: Getting Around Beijing (I)

Unit 9: Getting Around Beijing (II)

Unit 10: Weather



How to Download the Disc Content of this Book.

1. You must have an internet connection.
2. Click the link below or copy paste the URL to your web browser.
<http://www.tuttlepublishing.com/fetchapp-download/cd4840149>
3. Check if the title is correct and click "ADD TO CART".
4. Make sure that the "Order Subtotal" at the top of "Proceed to Checkout" is \$0.00. If not, please email us at info@tuttlepublishing.com. If Checkout shows \$0.00, please proceed to checkout.
5. Secure Checkout (Billing Details): Please complete the Billing Details and click the "BILL & SHIP TO THIS ADDRESS".
6. Secure Checkout (Shipping Details): Click "modify" if your shipping address is different from your billing address and click "SHIP TO THIS ADDRESS".
7. Secure Checkout (Shipping Method): Please tick "Free Shipping \$0.00" and click "CONTINUE".

8. Secure Checkout (Order Confirmation): Check the cart items and make sure that the Grand Total is \$0.00 and "CONTINUE". If the item total is not zero, please email us at info@tuttlepublishing.com.

9. Thereafter, an e-mail confirmation will be sent to you. It contains a link for you to download the file(s).

For support email us at info@tuttlepublishing.com.

How to Use These Materials

Basic Spoken Chinese Practice Essentials contains extensive drills and exercises for each unit of the textbook Basic Spoken Chinese. The purpose of this workbook is to offer learners various kinds of practice activities for both in- and out-of-class use, so as to enable learners to reinforce and “activize” their learning of the new vocabulary and grammar introduced in the textbook.

New Vocabulary and Grammar Summaries

The first section of the Practice Essentials consists of a one-page list of new vocabulary and grammar in each Basic Spoken Chinese lesson, from Unit 1, Part 1 through Unit 10, Part 4.

The lists are divided into a section on “Vocabulary” and a section on “Grammar.” In the vocabulary section, each new vocabulary item introduced in the corresponding lesson of the textbook is listed in alphabetical order of the Pinyin with English translation and indication of word class (any Additional Vocabulary is not included). In the grammar section, each new grammar pattern introduced in that part of the textbook is listed, also in alphabetical order, in most cases with one or more examples in Pinyin and English translation.

- We believe these lists of new vocabulary and grammar will be useful for all learners for review purposes. However, learners should ideally not learn new vocabulary or grammar from these lists; instead, they should always try to learn new

vocabulary and grammar in the context of the Basic Conversations and Build Ups in the textbook.

- Those learners who are using the Practice Essentials to supplement other textbooks and who do not have access to the textbook for Basic Spoken Chinese, will want to pay special attention to these lists, since the various drills and exercises in this book assume thorough familiarity with all this material.

The next two sections consist of drills. Don't underestimate the value of drills as enabling mechanisms that help you, the learner, to attain the ultimate goal of communicative competency. The drills are useful for improving your pronunciation, developing your fluency, and increasing your confidence in speaking Chinese. Although it's true that some of the drills in this workbook are of necessity fairly mechanical, others are more realistic and communicative, in some cases even incorporating a certain amount of cultural material.

- The drills are best done out of class in self-study mode, either in a language learning laboratory or, working with a computer or your audio player, in some other place of your choosing. If you're learning Chinese in a classroom setting, doing the drills out of class also frees up valuable time with the instructor so that you can focus on those kinds of interactive learning activities for which the instructor's guidance and active participation is essential.

- You should work with the recordings on the accompanying disc as actively as possible, speaking loudly and always thinking of the meaning of what you are hearing and saying.
- If you're learning Chinese on your own, the drills will be especially important for you and, working with the accompanying audio disc, you should try to go through each one several times. In addition, it will be to your benefit to seek out a native-speaking tutor or mentor who can work with you one or two hours a week for additional practice and to answer questions.

Substitution Drills

In the substitution drills, a model sentence is first said for you to repeat. Next, various vocabulary and grammar prompts are given that you're to substitute into the model sentence, creating a related but new sentence.

In the audio portion, after each prompt a pause is provided for the learner to say the new sentence with that substitution. A native speaker then provides a confirmation of the correct sentence, followed by a pause during which you should repeat the correct sentence. An English translation of each sentence is included in the workbook.

- It's most effective to do each drill at least twice: the first time with the workbook open and the second time with the workbook closed.

Transformation and Response Drills

As the name implies, these drills involve transforming one phrase or sentence into another, or responding to a question or other cue. There are also a smaller number of politeness drills, translation drills, and drills involving the conversion of Beijing-style speech to non-Beijing-style speech and vice versa.

In the audio portion, instructions for each drill are given in English before the drill. As with the substitution drills, each of the transformation and response drills is followed by a pause for the learner's response, which is then in turn followed by confirmation of the correct response by a native speaker. A pause then allows you time to repeat the correct sentence. An English translation of each sentence or phrase is included in the workbook.

- Again, it is best to do each drill at least twice—once with the workbook open and once with the workbook closed.
- Though the transformation and response drills are in principle meant to be done by students out of class, some instructors may choose to do some of the drills in class, or some of the drills could be adapted for in-class exercises.

Role Play Exercises

The role play exercises involve conversations between two or more speakers that make use of the new vocabulary, grammar, functions, and situations introduced in the lesson.

There are three to eight role plays for each of the four parts of each unit. In many cases, the role plays are based roughly on the textbook's Basic Conversation but with some of the details changed. Most of the role plays involve two roles (indicated by A and B), with a few involving three roles (A, B, C).

Here in the workbook, the role plays are rendered in English, but they're to be performed in Chinese. The role plays are designed to be done as one of the last activities of each lesson.

- While performing the role plays, you may glance at the English but should try to look up as much as possible when saying the Chinese.
- The role plays should be performed at a fairly rapid clip, so you may wish to practice them in advance (making a few notes is fine, but you should not write out complete translations). The goal isn't laboriously translating word-for-word from English to Chinese but, rather, producing natural Chinese equivalents based on the English cues. The emphasis should be on the performance of the role plays. If you find that you're hesitant and choppy in performing a role play, this most likely means you haven't yet attained sufficient mastery of the material.
- If you're learning Chinese in a class, after individual students have performed a role play, the instructor will probably lead the whole class in

repeating the lines of the role play one more time together.

- If you're learning Chinese on your own, then the role plays will be especially helpful in giving you practice in using the vocabulary and grammar of the lesson in new combinations. By playing all the roles in a role play exercise, you as an independent learner stand to gain extra benefits for your language skills, enhancing your fluency and becoming flexible in swiftly switching perspectives. Of course, if you're learning with a friend or have access to a native-speaking tutor, then each of you could take one role.

Listening Comprehension Exercises

The listening comprehension exercises involve conversations or monologues which are available on the accompanying disc only, since it is listening that we want to practice, not reading.¹ There are two listening passages for each lesson, each approximately the same length as the basic conversations, that is, about 6 to 12 lines total. To provide additional practice in listening comprehension, the passages reuse, in new contexts, the new vocabulary (including the Supplementary Vocabulary) and grammar of the current and previous lessons.

Each listening passage is followed by two to four multiple choice questions on the content of the passage. Based on the recorded passages, you should circle the best response—(A), (B), or (C)—to each of the questions that follows.

- While you work on the listening comprehension exercises, feel free to listen to each passage as many times as needed.
- In a classroom setting, the listening comprehension exercises are best done as homework which students hand in the next day for the instructor to correct, grade, and return. After they have been corrected and returned to students, they can be inserted by the student into a binder for future reference.
- Independent learners will also find the listening comprehension exercises helpful for practice in comprehending new combinations of words and grammar patterns; if they have questions, they can ask a tutor or Chinese friend. It may also be useful to obtain the Instructor's Guide, since along with the scripts for the listening comprehension exercises it also includes the correct answers.

Dictation Exercises

The dictation exercises provide practice in listening to and transcribing in Pinyin romanization the sounds of Mandarin, as well as listening comprehension practice involving the classroom expressions, numbers, ages, money amounts, clock times, amounts of time, and dates (days of the week, days of the month, months, and years).

Dictation exercises are included only for some of the lessons in the textbook. The lesson in the textbook that a given dictation exercise is designed to accompany is indicated.

The dictation exercises provide all learners, independent or class-based alike, with additional practice to reinforce the content of the lesson. If you're learning Chinese in a classroom setting, your instructor may suggest that you do the dictation exercises as homework to reinforce what's been covered in class.

- Like the listening comprehension exercises, the dictation exercises are based on audio recordings by native speakers that are available only on the accompanying disc.² Instructions are given in English at the beginning of each exercise.
- You may listen to each dictation exercise as many times as you wish.
- Also like the listening comprehension exercises, the dictation exercises may be removed from the workbook for correction by the instructor, then may be kept in a binder for reference.

Translation Exercises

The purpose of the translation exercises is to provide you with additional practice in using the grammar patterns and important vocabulary of the unit and to serve as a check of mastery over the material. Completing the translation exercises will be helpful to students in reviewing for the unit tests.

It is recommended that the classroom instructor correct and return the translation exercises to students before the test on the corresponding unit, so that any remaining problems can be

identified and addressed in a timely manner. Students should carefully study the instructor's corrections, making sure they understand why any errors occurred, and file the corrected exercises for later reference.

The translation exercises come in two different sets. The first set of translation exercises consists of five sentences for each of the four Parts or lessons of each Unit in the textbook, while the second set of translation exercises consists of ten sentences for each complete Unit of the textbook. Instructors can decide whether the students in their classes should complete both sets or only one of the two sets. Independent learners would profit from doing both sets of translation exercises and can read out their translations to a tutor or native-speaking friend for correction and comments.

- The sentences should be translated into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks in the blank space that has been left under each sentence.
- The English in the translation exercises is in some places purposely somewhat stilted, so as to guide the student toward the correct Chinese translation.
- In certain cases, additional instructions have been added in parentheses within or after the English sentence, for example, to be polite or to use or not use certain words or patterns.
- If you've forgotten the Chinese equivalent for an English word or grammar pattern, you can consult the English-Chinese Glossary, Chinese-English Glossary, or Index of Grammatical and Cultural

Topics in the back of the Basic Spoken Chinese textbook.

Footnotes

1. Complete scripts of the listening comprehension exercises in Chinese characters are available in the Instructor's Guide, which also includes other exercises for in-class use.
2. Scripts of the dictation exercises are also included in the Instructor's Guide.

Abbreviations

Word Classes*

A Adverb

AT Attributive

AV Auxiliary Verb

BF Bound Form

CJ Conjunction

CV Coverb

EV Equative Verb

EX Expression

I Interjection

IE Idiomatic Expression

L Localizer

M Measure

MA Moveable Adverb

N Noun

NU Number

P Particle

PH Phrase

PR Pronoun

PT Pattern

PV Postverb

PW Place Word

QW Question Word

RC Resultative Compound

RE Resultative Ending

SN Surname

SP Specifier

SV Stative Verb

TW Time Word

V Verb

VO Verb-Object Compound

Other Abbreviations and Symbols

(B) Beijing

(T) Taipei

lit. literally

SV Supplementary Vocabulary

AV Additional Vocabulary

* (indicates that what follows is incorrect)

/ (separates alternate forms)

* For explanations of the word classes, see the section “Word Classes of Spoken Chinese” in Basic Spoken Chinese.

1. New Vocabulary and Grammar Summaries

Unit 1, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

a (softens sentence) [P]

bàn take care of, do [V]

dào to [CV]

huí go back to [V]

Kē Ke [SN]

nǎr where [QW]

ne and how about, and what about [P]

nǐ you [PN]

nǐ hǎo hi, how are you? [IE]

qù go [V]

shì(r) matter [N]

shítáng cafeteria [PW]

sùshè dormitory [PW]

túshūguǎn library [PW]

Wáng Wang [SN]

wǒ I [PN]

yě also, too [A]

yìdiǎn(r) a little [N]

Grammar

A as final particle to soften questions, greetings, and exclamations: Nǐ dào nǎr qù a? “And where might you be going?”

DÀO...QÙ “go to...”: Wáng Jīngshēng dào nǎr qù? “Where is Jingsheng Wang going?”

Name + Greeting: Wáng Jīngshēng, nǐ hǎo! “Jingsheng Wang, how are you?”

Names: Wáng Jǐngshēng “Jingsheng Wang”

NE as final particle to abbreviate questions: Wǒ qù shítáng.
Nǐ ne? “I’m going to the dining hall. And what about you?”

QÙ + Place word to indicate “go to a certain place”: Wǒ qù túshūguǎn.
“I’m going to the library.”

QÙ + Verb to indicate purpose: Wǒ qù túshūguǎn bàn yìdiǎnr
shì. “I’m going to the library to take care of something.”

Question Word Questions: Nǐ dào nǎr qù? “Where are you
going?”

Unit 1, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

àirén spouse [N]

bàba dad [N]

dōu all, both [A]

hái still [A]

háizi child [N]

hǎo jiǔ bú jiànle long time no see [IE]

hǎo	be good [SV]
hěn	very [A]
le	(indicates changed status or situation) [P]
lèi	be tired [SV]
ma	(indicates questions) [P]
māma	mom [N]
máng	be busy [SV]
tā	he, she [PN]
tāmen	they [PN]
xiān	first [A]
xièxie	thank you [IE]
xíng	be O.K. [V]

yǒu have [V]

zàijiàn goodbye [IE]

zěmmeyàng how, in what way [QW]

Zhào Zhao [SN]

zǒu depart [V]

Grammar

MA to transform statements into questions: Tāmen yě qù shítáng ma? “Are they going to the dining hall, too?”

Stative Verb Sentences: Wǒ hěn lèi. “I’m tired.”

Unmarked coordination: nǐ àirén, hái zi “your spouse and children”

Unit 1, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

ǎi be short [SV]

bù not [A]

-de (in tǐng...-de “quite, very”) [P]

èi hey, hi [I]

Gāo Gao [SN]

gāo be tall [SV]

gōngzuò work [N]

Hé He [SN]

jǐnzhāng be intense [SV]

kéyi be O.K. [SV]

kùn be sleepy [SV]

lǎo be old [SV]

nán be difficult [SV]

róngyi be easy [SV]

shì be [EQ]

tài too, excessively [A]

tǐng quite, very [A]

xiǎo be small [SV]

xuéxí study, studies [N]

yàngzi way [N]

Zhōngwén Chinese language [N]

zuìjìn recently [TW]

Grammar

Affirmative-Negative Questions: Zhōngwén nán bu nán? “Is Chinese hard?”

BÙ to negate verbs: bù máng “not be busy,” bù huí sùshè “not go back to the dormitory”

LǎO and XIǎO before monosyllabic surnames: Lǎo Gāo “Old Gao,” Xiǎo Wáng “Little Wang”

Stative Verbs before nouns as adjectives: lǎo yàngzi “old way,” hǎo háizi “good child,” xiǎo shìr “small matter”

TǐNG...-DE: tǐng jǐnzhāngde “quite intense,” tǐng róngyide “quite easy”

Tone change of BÙ to BÚ before Tone Four syllables: bù + qù → bú qù

Topic-comment construction: Nǐ gōngzuò máng bu máng? “Is your work busy or not busy?”

Vocative Expressions: Xiǎo Liú! “Little Liu!” Bàba! “Dad!”

Unit 1, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bú kèqi you’re welcome [IE]

děi must [AV]

huānyíng welcome [IE]

jìn enter [V]

lǎoshī teacher [N]

Lǐ Li [SN]

Lín Lin [SN]

màn zǒu take care [IE]

méi yìsi not be interesting [PH]

nǐmen you (plural) [PN]

nín you (polite) [PN]

qǐng jìn please come in [IE]

qǐng zuò please sit down [IE]

qǐng please [IE]

tàitai Mrs. [N]

wǒmen we [PN]

xiānsheng Mr. [N]

xiáojie Miss [N]

Xiè Xie [SN]

xièxie thank [V]

yǒu yìsi be interesting [PH]

zuò sit [V]

Grammar

Imperatives: Qǐng nín dào túshūguǎn qù. “Please go to the library.”

LE to indicate a changed situation: Nǐ māma hǎole ma? “Has your mom gotten well?” Wǒ bú qùle. “I’m no longer going.”

Pronouns: wǒ, nǐ, nín, tā, wǒmen, nǐmen, tāmen

Titles: Wáng Xiānsheng “Mr. Wang,” Lǐ Tàitai “Mrs. Li,” Wáng Xiáojie “Miss/Ms. Wang,” Lín Lǎoshī “Teacher Lin”

Unit 2, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

Bái Bai (lit. “white”) [SN]

Chén Chen [SN]

Huáyì Měiguó rén Chinese-American [PH]

Huáyì person of Chinese descent [N]

Jiā'nádà Canada [PW]

jiào be called or named [EQ]

kěshi but [MA]

Mǎ Ma (lit. “horse”) [SN]

Mǎláixīyà Malaysia [PW]

Měiguó America [PW]

míngzi name [N]

nèi that [SP]

něi which [QW]

něiguó which country [QW]

qǐng wèn	“excuse me,” “may I ask” [IE]
rén	person [N]
Rìběn	Japan [PW]
shémmè	what [QW]
Táiwān	Taiwan [PW]
tóngxué	classmate [N]
wèi	(polite measure for people) [M]
wèn	ask [V]
Xībānyá	Spain [PW]
Xīnjiāpō	Singapore [PW]
zhèi	this [SP]
Zhōngguó	China [PW]
Grammar	

JIÀO in equative verb sentences: Wǒ jiào Bái Jiérui. “My name is Bai Jierui.” Nǐ jiào shémmé míngzi? “What’s your name?”

Nationalities: Měiguó rén “American,” Zhōngguó rén “Chinese,” etc.

SHÌ in equative verb sentences: Wǒ shì Měiguó rén. “I am (an) American.”

ZHÈI- and NÈI- as specifiers with the polite measure WÈI: zhèiwèi lǎoshī “this teacher,” nèiwèi tóngxué “that classmate”

Unit 2, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bié don’t [AV]

búyào don’t [AV]

chēnghu address [V]

-de (indicates possession) [P]

gāoxìng be happy [SV]

gěi for [CV]

hǎo “all right,” “O.K.” [IE]

huānyíng welcome [V]

jiào call (someone a name) [V]

jièshào introduce [V]

lái come [V]

nà in that case [CJ]

nà that [PN]

ò “oh” [I]

rènshi be acquainted with, know [V]

shéi who, whom [QW]

tóngwū(r) roommate [N]

xīn be new [SV]

yīnggāi should [AV]

zěmme how [QW]

zhè this [PN]

zhèmmme like this, in this way, so [A]

Grammar

BÍE or BÚYÀO to indicate negative imperative: Qǐng nǐ bié qu! “Please don’t go!” Búyào jiào wǒ Lǎo Wáng! “Don’t call me old Wang!”

DÀO...LÁI: Qǐng nǐ dào túshūguǎn lái. “Please come to the library.”

-DE to indicate possession: wǒde gōngzuò “my work,” nǐde xīn tóngxué “your new classmate”

...HǎOLE: Nǐ hái shì jiào wǒ Xiǎo Chén hǎole. “It would be better if you called me Little Chen.”

YÍXIÀ(R) after verbs to make them less abrupt: jièshào yixià “introduce,” lái yixià “come,” wèn yixià “ask”

ZHÈ “this” and NÀ “that” as pronoun subjects: Zhè shì Wáng Àihuá, zhè shì Chén Lì “This is Wang Aihua, this is Chen Li,” Nà shì shéi? “Who is that?”

Unit 2, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

ba (indicates supposition) [P]

dānwèi work unit, organization [PW]

dàshǐguǎn embassy [PW]

dàxué university, college [PW]

ge (general measure) [M]

gōngsī company, firm [PW]

gōngzuò work [V]

guìxìng “what’s your honorable surname?” [IE]

jiā (for companies, factories) [M]

nǚshì madam, lady [N]

tàitai wife [N]

tóngshì colleague [N]

wàijiāobù foreign ministry [PW]

Wú Wu [SN]

Xiānggǎng Hong Kong [PW]

xiānsheng husband [N]

xiàozhǎng head of a school [N]

xìng be surnamed [EQ]

xuéxí learn, study [V]

yī one, a [NU]

zài be located at, at [CV]

Grammar

BA to indicate supposition: Tā shì Yīngguó rén ba “I suppose she’s English.” Nǐ lèile ba? “You must be tired?”

XÌNG in equative verb sentences: Wǒ xìng Zhāng. “My last name is Zhang.” Nǐ xìng shémmé? “What’s your last name?”

Unit 2, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

à	“oh” [I]
cuò	be wrong [SV]
-cuò	wrong [RE]
dài	take along, bring [V]
-de	(indicates that what precedes describes what follows) [P]
gǎo	get, do [V]
gǎocuò	get or do something wrong [RC]
gēn	and [CJ]
Hóu	Hou [SN]

jīnglǐ	manager [N]
-le	(indicates completed action) [P]
Luó	Luo [SN]
màoyì gōngsī	trading company [PH]
màoyì	trade [N]
méi guānxi	“never mind” [IE]
méi	(indicates past negative of action verbs) [AV]
míngpiàn	name card, business card [N]
Shī	Shi [SN]
tàitai	married woman, lady [N]
xiānsheng	gentleman [N]
xiáojie	young lady [N]

Yīngguó England [PW]

Zhōng-Měi Sino-American [AT]

zǒngjīnglǐ general manager [N]

Grammar

BÙ DŌU vs. DŌU BÙ: Wǒmen bù dōu shì Měiguó rén. “We are not all Americans.” Wǒmen dōu bú shì Měiguó rén. “None of us is American.”

-DE to indicate that what precedes describes what follows: Zhōng-Měi Mào yì Gōngsī de Shī Xiǎojié “Ms. Shi from Sino-American Trading Company”

-LE to indicate completed action: Wǒ gāocuò le. “I got it wrong.”

MÉI to indicate past negative of action verbs: Tāmen méi lái. “They didn’t come.”

MÉI DŌU vs. DŌU MÉI: Tāmen méi dōu qù. “They didn’t all go.” Tāmen dōu méi qù. “None of them went.”

Unit 3, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bā eight [NU]

bān class [N]

bàn(r) half [NU]

Déguo Germany [PW]

èr two [NU]

Fǎguo France [PW]

jǐ- how many [QW]

jiǔ nine [NU]

liǎng two [NU]

liù six [NU]

nánde man, male [N]

nánlǎoshī male teacher [N]

nánshēng male student [N]

nǚde woman, female [N]

nǚlǎoshī female teacher [N]

nǚshēng female student [N]

qī seven [NU]

sān three [NU]

shí ten [NU]

sì four [NU]

wǔ five [NU]

yígòng in all [A]

yǒu there is, there are [V]

Grammar

Numbers from one to ten

Place Word + YŌU + Noun Phrase to indicate existence:
Bānshang yǒu shíge tóngxué. “In the class there are ten
classmates.”

Unit 3, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

ài love; like [V]

cāi guess [V]

dà be big; old (of people) [SV]

dìdì younger brother [N]

duì be correct [SV]

duō how [QW]

fùqin father [N]

gēge older brother [N]

jiějie older sister [N]

jīnnián this year [TW]

jiù then [A]

kàn look, see [V]

kě'ài be loveable, cute [SV]

mèimei younger sister [N]

méiyǒu not have; there is/are not [V]

mǔqīn mother [N]

niánjì age [N]

shàng last [SP]

sui year of age [M]

xià- next [SP]

xiǎng think [V]

yuè month [N]

Grammar

Age: Nǐ duō dà niánji le? “How old are you?”; Nǐ jǐsuì le? “How old are you?” (of children); Wǒ jīnnián shíbāsù le. “I’m eighteen years old.”

LE to indicate anticipated change in a situation: Tā xiàge yuè jiù jiǔsuì le “Next month she will be nine years old.”

MÉIYOU “not have; there is not/there are not” as the negative of YŌU: Wǒ méiyōu gēge. “I don’t have (any) brothers.”

Numbers from 11 to 99 with SHÍ

Reduplicated monosyllabic verbs + KÀN: xiángxiang kàn “try and think”

Tag Questions: Zhè shì nǐ mèimei, duì bu duì? “This is your younger sister, right?”; Zhè shì nǐ dìdi, shì bu shì? “This is your younger brother, isn’t it?”

Unit 3, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

a (indicates suggestions) [P]

-bǎi	hundred [NU]
bēibāo	knapsack, backpack [N]
bēizi	cup [N]
dàizi	bag [N]
duōshǎo	how much, how many [QW]
fēn	penny [M]
gōngshìbāo	briefcase, attache case [N]
guì	be expensive [SV]
jiā	add; plus [V]
jiǎn	subtract; minus [V]
kuài	dollar (monetary unit) [M]
líng	zero [NU]

mǎi	buy [V]
mài	sell [V]
máo	ten cents, dime [M]
piányi	be cheap [SV]
-qiān	thousand [NU]
qián	money [N]
yào	want, need, cost, take [V]
yī	one [NU]
yò	“gosh,” “wow” [I]
zhǐ	only [A]

Grammar

BA to indicate suggestions: Nín kàn ba. “Why don’t you take a look?”

LE after TÀI in affirmative sentences: tài guile “too expensive”

Monetary system: liùkuài wǔmáo jiǔfēn qián “six dollars and fifty-nine cents”

Numbers from 100 to 999 with -Bǎi “hundred”

Numbers from 1,000 to 9,999 with -Qīān “thousand”

Reduplication of verbs: kàn → kànkàn “take a look”

Yào to indicate price: Nèige bēizi yào sānkuài wǔ. “That cup costs three fifty.”

Zhèige “this/this one” and Nèige “that/that one”

Unit 3, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

chà lack [V]

chàbuduō almost, about [MA]

cháng be long [SV]

chē vehicle (car, cab, bus, bicycle) [N]

dào	arrive, reach [V]
diǎn	o'clock, hour [M]
fēn	minute [M]
huǒ	fire [N]
huǒchē	train [N]
-jí	reach a goal in time [RE]
kāi	depart (of a train, bus, ship) [V]
kè	quarter of an hour [M]
kǒngpà	“I’m afraid that”; probably [MA]
láibují	not have enough time [RC]
nèmme	then, in that case, well [CJ]
shíjiān	time [N]

tàng (for runs by trains, buses) [M]

Tiānjīn Tianjin [PW]

xiànzài now [TW]

yǐjīng already [A]

zài again [A]

zhōng clock, o'clock; bell [N]

zhōngtóu hour [N]

zuò travel by, take [V]

Grammar

Clock times: liǎngdiǎn sānshíbāfēn zhōng “2:38”

-DE following long phrases to indicate modification: dào Tiānjīnde huǒchē “the trains that go to Tianjin”

-DE to create nominal phrases: shídiǎn bànde “the 10:30 one,” wǒ mǎide “the ones I bought”

Number of hours: sān'ge zhōngtóu “three hours”

Time when before the verb: Wǒ bādiǎn zhōng qù. “I go at eight o’clock.”

Unit 4, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

guān	close [V]
guānmén	close a door, close [VO]
kāi	open [V]
kāimén	open a door, open [VO]
lǐbài	week [N]
měi	each, every [SP]
mén(r)	door, gate [N]
náli	“not at all” [IE]
píngcháng	usually, ordinarily [MA]
qǐchuáng	get up from bed, rise [VO]

shàngwǔ morning, A.M. [TW]

shíyàn experiment [N]

shíyànshì laboratory [N]

shuì sleep [V]

shuìjiào sleep, go to bed [VO]

tiān day [M]

wǎnshang in the evening [TW]

xiàwǔ afternoon, P.M. [TW]

xīngqī week [N]

xiūxi rest, take time off [V]

yǔyán shíyànshì language lab [PH]

yǔyán language [N]

zǎoshang in the morning [TW]

Grammar

Days of the week: xīngqīyī OR lǐbàiyī “Monday,” xīngqī’èr OR lǐbài’èr “Tuesday,” xīngqīsān OR lǐbàisān “Wednesday,” xīngqīsì OR lǐbàisì “Thursday,” xīngqīwǔ OR lǐbàiwǔ “Friday,” xīngqīliù OR lǐbàiliù “Saturday,” xīngqītiān OR xīngqīrì OR lǐbàitiān OR lǐbàirì “Sunday,” xīngqījǐ OR lǐbàijǐ “which day of the week?”

TIĀN as measure meaning “day”: yìtiān “one day,” liǎngtiān “two days,” jǐtiān “how many days?,” měitiān “every day”

Time spent after the verb: Yǔyán shíyànshì xīngqīliù kāi bàn tiān. “On Saturday the language lab is open for half the day.”

Unit 4, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

chūshēng be born [V]

děng wait, wait for [V]

dìzhǐ address [N]

dōng east [L]

duàn section [M]

gōng bow (the weapon) [N]

hào day of the month; number (in addresses, sizes) [M]

héping peace [N]

jīnnián this year [TW]

jīntiān today [TW]

jiù precisely, exactly [A]

lóu floor (of a building) [N]

míngnián next year [TW]

míngtiān tomorrow [TW]

Mínguó the Republic (of China) [TW]

nián year [M]

-nòng alley [BF]

qùnián last year [TW]

shēngrì birthday [N]

wénhuà culture [N]

-xiàng lane [BF]

Zhāng Zhang [SN]

zuótiān yesterday [TW]

Grammar

Addresses: Zhōngguo Guǎngdōng Guǎngzhōu Zhōngshān Lù
wǔhào sānlóu “3rd floor, Number 5, Zhong Shan Road,
Guangzhou, China”

Dates: èr-líng-líng-wǔ nián shíyīyuè èrhào xīngqīyī “Monday,
November 2, 2005”

Days of the month with HÀO: wǔhào “the fifth,” jīhào
“which day of the month?”

Floors of buildings with LÓU: yīlóu “first floor,” èrlóu “second floor,” jǐlóu? “which floor?”

Months of the year with YUÈ: yīyuè “January,” èryuè “February,” sānyuè “March,” sìyuè “April,” wǔyuè “May,” liùyuè “June,” qīyuè “July,” báyùè “August,” jiǔyuè “September,” shíyuè “October,” shíyīyuè “November,” shí’èryuè “December,” jǐyuè “which month of the year?”

NIÁN as measure for “year”: yìnián “one year,” jǐnián “how many years?” měinián “every year”

SHI...-DE to express time or place of known past actions: Wǒ shì yī-jiǔ-bā-wǔ-nián chūshēngde. “I was born in 1985.”

Time when before place: Wǒ shì yī-jiǔ-bā-wǔ-nián zài Měiguó chūshēngde. “I was born in 1985 in America.”

Years of the calendar with NIÁN: yī-jiǔ-bā-wǔ-nián “1985”

Unit 4, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

báitiān in the daytime [TW]

cì time [M]

dàyuē approximately, about [A]

dì- (forms ordinal numbers) [SP]

fǎngjiān room [N]

-guo (indicates experience) [P]

hòunián year after next [TW]

hòutiān day after tomorrow [TW]

huíguó return to one's home country [VO]

huíjiā return to one's home [VO]

jiā family, home [PW]

jiǔ be long (of time) [SV]

m (hesitation sound; pause filler) [I]

qiánnián year before last [TW]

qiántiān day before yesterday [TW]

ránhòu afterward, then [MA]

shuō say, speak [V]

yào be going to, will [AV]

yèli at night [TW]

zhōngwǔ noon [TW]

zhù live (in), stay (in) [V]

Grammar

DÌ- to create ordinal numbers: dìyī “first,” dì’èrge “the second one,” dìsāncì “the third time”

-GUO to express experience: Wǒ qùguo. “I’ve gone there.”
OR “I’ve been there.”

Unit 4, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

-bǎiwàn million [NU]

Běijīng Beijing [PW]

bǐjiào comparatively, relatively [A]

chángcháng often [A]

chídào arrive late, be late [V]

duō be many, much, more [SV]

Guǎngzhōu Guangzhou, Canton [PW]

hǎoxiàng apparently, it seems to me [MA]

kè class [N]

Nánjīng Nanjing [PW]

-qiānwàn ten million [NU]

rénkǒu population [N]

Shànghǎi Shanghai [PW]

shàngkè have class [VO]

shǎo	be few, less [SV]
shíwàn	hundred thousand [NU]
Sūn	Sun [SN]
Táiběi	Taipei [PW]
táokè	skip class [VO]
-wàn	ten thousand [NU]
Xī'ān	Xian [PW]
-yì	hundred million [NU]

Grammar

DUŌ to express “more than”: yìbǎiduō rén “more than a hundred people,” yìqiānduōkuài “more than a thousand dollars”

HǎOXIÀNG: Tāmen hǎoxiàng hái méi lái. “It seems they haven’t come yet.”

Large numbers: yíwàn “ten thousand,” shíwàn “one hundred thousand,” yìbǎiwàn “one million,” yìqiānwàn “ten million,” yíyì “one hundred million,” shíyì “billion”

Unit 5, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bǎ (for chairs, umbrellas) [M]

bàngōngshì office [PW]

bàoqiàn feel sorry, regret [V]

búguò however [CJ]

dāngrán of course [MA]

Huáqiáo overseas Chinese [N]

kéyi may, can [AV]

lǎobǎn boss, owner [N]

líu leave (someone something) [V]

nàr there [PW]

shízài really, truly [A]

tiáozi note [N]

xiǎng want to, would like to [AV]

yàoshi if [MA]

Yīngwén English (language) [N]

yǐzi chair [N]

zài be present; be located at [V]

zěmme bàn “what should be done?” [IE]

zhāng (for tables, name cards) [M]

zhǎo look for [V]

zhèr here [PW]

zhīdao know [V]

zhuōzi table [N]

Grammar

Deletion of second syllable of bisyllabic verbs in affirmative part of affirmative-negative questions: kényi bu kényi → kě bu kényi “may I or may I not?”

Embedded questions: Nǐ zhīdao tā zài nǎr ma? “Do you know where she is?”

GĚI as coverb: Wǒ gěi tā liú yíge tiáozi “I’m going to leave a note for her.”

YÀOSHI: Yàoshi nǐ zhǎo yíge rén.../Nǐ yàoshi zhǎo yíge rén... “If you’re looking for a person...”

ZÀI as main verb: Tā zài bu zài? “Is she present?,” Tā zài Niūyuē. “She is in New York.”

-ZI as a noun suffix: zhuōzi “table,” yǐzi “chair”

Unit 5, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

Běidà Peking University [PW]

cài food [N]

cháng often [A]

chǎng factory [N]

chī eat [V]

chīfàn eat food, eat [VO]

dàxuéshēng college student [N]

fàn rice (cooked); food [N]

gōngrén worker, laborer [N]

Hànyǔ Chinese (language) [N]

kuài soon, quickly [A]

péixùn	train [V]
pí	leather, skin [N]
píxié	leather shoe [N]
wǎnfàn	dinner, evening meal [N]
wèizi	seat, place [N]
wǔfàn	lunch [N]
xié	shoe [N]
xué	learn, study [V]
xuésheng	student [N]
zǎofàn	breakfast [N]
zhōngfàn	lunch [N]
zhōngxīn	center [N]

Grammar

College and university abbreviations: Běijīng Dàxué → Běidà
“Beijing University”

KUÀI (YÀO)...LE to indicate an imminent action or situation: Tā kuài yào zǒule. “She will be leaving soon.”

LÁI + Verb to indicate purpose: Tā lái zhèr xué Zhōngwén.
“She’s coming here to study Chinese.”

Verb-Object compounds: chīfàn “eat rice” → “eat,” shuìjiào
“sleep”

ZÀI as coverb: Wǒ zài yìjiā gōngsī gōngzuò. “I work at a
company.”

Unit 5, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bān move (a thing or one’s home) [V]

běibiān(r) north [PW]

cèsuǒ toilet [PW]

Cháng Chéng Great Wall [PW]

Cháng Chéng Fàndiàn Great Wall Hotel [PW]

chéng	city [N]
-dào	arrive at, to [PV]
dìfang	place [N]
dōngbiān(r)	east [PW]
fàndiàn	hotel [PW]
huí	time [M]
kě	indeed, certainly [A]
méi shì(r)	“it’s nothing,” “never mind” [IE]
nánbiān(r)	south [PW]
něibiān(r)	which side, where [QW]
nèibian(r)	that side, there [PW]
pàng	be fat (of people or animals) [SV]

ràng	let, cause, make [CV]
ràng nǐ jiǔ děngle	“made you wait a long time” [IE]
shān	mountain, hill [N]
shòu	be thin, lean, skinny [SV]
Xiāng Shān	Fragrant Hills [PW]
xiāng	be fragrant, smell good [SV]
xībiān(r)	west [PW]
yāo	one [NU]
-zài	at, in, on [PV]
zhèbian(r)	this side, here [PW]

Grammar

-DÀO as postverb: Tāmen qùnián bāndao Táiběi le. “Last year they moved to Taipei.”

Points of the compass: dōngbiān(r) “east, east side,”
nánbiān(r) “south, south side,” xībiān(r) “west, west side,”
běibiān(r) “north, north side”

Stative Verb + (YÌ)DIǎN(R): piányi yìdiǎnr “a little
cheaper,” hǎo yìdiǎn “a little better”

-ZÀI as postverb: Wǒ zhùzai Nánjīng. “I live in Nanjing.”

Unit 5, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

āiyò	(indicates surprise) [I]
diànnǎo	computer [N]
dǐxia	underneath [PW]
dōngxì	thing [N]
e	(hesitation sound; pause filler) [I]
gǒu(r)	dog [N]
guǎn	concern oneself with [V]

hòu	in back, back [L]
hòubian(r)/hòumian/hòutou	in back, back [PW]
kāiguān	switch [N]
lǐ	in, inside [L]
lǐbian(r)/lǐmiàn/lǐtou	in, inside [PW]
pángbiān(r)	at or on the side, next to [PW]
qián	in front, front [L]
qiánbian(r)/qiánmian/qiántou	in front, front [PW]
shàng	on top, on [L]
shàngbian(r)/shàngmian/ shàngtou	on top, on [PW]
shǐyòng	use, employ [V]
shǐyòng shǒucè	operating manual [PH]

shǒucè	handbook, manual [N]
shūfáng	study [PW]
shūjià	bookshelf, bookcase [N]
tā	it (animal or thing) [PN]
tái	(for computers, TV sets) [M]
wài	outside [L]
wàibian(r)/wàimian/wàitou	outside [PW]
wǔ-bā-liù	Pentium [®] (brand of computer) [N]
xià	on the bottom, under, below [L]
xiàbian(r)/xiàmian/xiàtou	on the bottom, under, below [PW]
yào	want to [AV]

yòu	right [L]
yòubian(r)	right side, right [PW]
zuǒ	left [L]
zuǒbian(r)	left side, left [PW]

Grammar

-LE in sentences with quantified objects to indicate completed action: Wǒ mǎile yítái xīn diànnǎo “I bought a new computer.”

Localizers: fángjiānli “in the room,” zhuōzishang “on the table”

Place Words: lǐmiàn/lǐtou/lǐbian(r) “inside”; wàibian(r)/wàimian/wàitou “outside”; qiánbian(r)/qiánmian/ qiántou “in front”; hòubian(r)/hòumian/hòutou “in back”; shàngbian(r)/shàngmian/shàngtou “on top”; xiàbian(r)/xiàmian/xiàtou “on the bottom”; zuǒbian(r) “left side,” yòubian(r) “right side,” pángbiān(r) “on the side, next to”; dīxia “underneath”

Unit 6, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

āyí	aunt (mother's sister) [N]
chū'èr	second year in junior high school [TW]
chūsān	third year in junior high school [TW]
chūyī	first year in junior high school [TW]
chūzhōng	junior high school [PW]
dà'èr	sophomore year in college [TW]
dāsān	junior year in college [TW]
dàsi	senior year in college [TW]
dàyī	first year in college [TW]
gāo'èr	junior year in high school [TW]
gāosān	senior year in high school [TW]
gāoyī	sophomore year in high school [TW]

gāozhōng	senior high school [PW]
-gěi	give; for, to [PV]
hǎochī	be good to eat, delicious [SV]
hǎokàn	be good-looking [SV]
lǐwù	gift, present [N]
m	(indicates something tastes delicious) [I]
nán péngyou	boyfriend, male friend [N]
niánjí	grade, level (in school) [N]
nǚ péngyou	girlfriend, female friend [N]
péngyou	friend [N]
shàng	go to, attend [V]
shūshu	uncle (father's younger brother) [N]

sòng give (as a present) [V]

táng candy; sugar [N]

xiǎoxué elementary school [PW]

xǐhuan like [AV/V]

yìniánjí first grade [TW]

zhēn really [A]

zhōngxué middle school [PW]

Grammar

School system and grade in school: xiǎoxué sānniánjí “third grade in elementary school,” chūyī “seventh grade,” gāo’èr “eleventh grade,” dàsān “junior year in college,” jǐniánjí “which grade?”

Unit 6, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bānjiā move one's home [VO]

-dà big [RE]

ei (indicates liveliness) [P]

érzi son [N]

jiéhūn marry, get married [VO]

jīn gold [BF]

Jīn gold [SN]

jiù be old (of things) [SV]

Jiùjīnshān San Francisco [PW]

kànqilai in the looking [RC]

lìhūn divorce, get divorced [VO]

nàli there [PW]

náli where [QW]

niánqīng be young [SV]

Niūyuē New York [PW]

nǚ'ér daughter [N]

-qǐlai in the VERBing [RE]

xiǎohái(r) small child, kid [N]

yìsi meaning [N]

zhǎng grow [V]

zhǎngdà grow up [RC]

zhèli here [PW]

zuò do, make [V]

Grammar

-QILAI to indicate “in the VERBing”: Tā kànqilai hěn lǎo.
“She looks very old.”

Unit 6, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

dōngběi northeast [PW]

dōngnán southeast [PW]

fúwù serve [V]

hángkōng aviation [N]

hángkōng gōngsī airline [PH]

jiāo teach [V]

jiāoshū teach [VO]

Měiguó Zài Tái
Xíehuì American Institute in Taiwan [PW]

méiyǒu (indicates past negative of action
verbs) [AV]

néng be able to, can [AV]

shàngbān(r)	work, go to work [VO]
shàngxué	attend school [VO]
suóyì	therefore, so [CJ]
Táiběi Xuéxiào	Měiguó Taipei American School [PW]
wèishemǎ	why [QW]
xiàbān(r)	get off from work [VO]
xīběi	northwest [PW]
xiéhuì	association, society [N]
xī'nán	southwest [PW]
Xī'nán Gōngsī	Hángkōng Southwest Airlines® [PW]
xuéxiào	school [PW]
yīnwèi	because [MA]

Grammar

Intermediate points of the compass: dōngnán “southeast,”
dōngběi “northeast,” xī nán “southwest,” xīběi “northwest”

Jiāo and Jiāoshū: Wǒ xǐhuan jiāoshū. “I like to teach.”
Shéi jiāo nǐmen Yīngwén? “Who is teaching you English?”

Méiyǒu to indicate past negative of action verbs: Tā
méiyǒu qù. “She didn’t go.”

Yīnwèi...suǒyǐ...: Tā yīnwèi hěn máng, suǒyǐ bù néng lái.
“Because she’s busy, she can’t come.”

Unit 6, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

Àodàliyà Australia [PW]

Àozhōu Australia [PW]

dà mèi older younger sister

fù mǔ parents [N]

gěi give [V]

gēn with [CV]

Huáng	Huang (lit. “yellow”) [SN]
jiěmèi	older and younger sisters [N]
jīhui	opportunity, chance [N]
lǎo-	(indicates rank among siblings) [BF]
lǎodà	oldest (among siblings) [N]
liáo	chat [V]
liáotiān	chat [VO]
liúxué	study as a foreign student [VO]
páiháng	one’s seniority among siblings [N]
wàizǔfù	maternal grandfather [N]
wàizǔmǔ	maternal grandmother [N]
wàng	forget [V]

xiǎomèi younger younger sister [N]

xiōngdì older and younger brothers [N]

yǐhòu in the future [TW]

yímín immigrate, emigrate [V]

Zhèng Zheng [SN]

zìwǒ jièshào introduce oneself [PH]

zǔfù paternal grandfather [N]

zǔmǔ paternal grandmother [N]

Grammar

...-LE...LE in sentences with non-quantified objects to indicate completed action: Wǒ wàngle zìwǒ jièshaole. “I forgot to introduce myself.”

Unit 7, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

biǎojiě	older female cousin of different surname [N]
biǎojiěfu	husband of older female cousin of different surname [N]
cóngqián	in the past, formerly [TW]
gǎiháng	change one's line of work [VO]
gōngchǎng	factory [PW]
hái	in addition [A]
hé	and [CJ]
kǒu	(for people; lit. “mouth”) [M]
mǎimài	business [N]
nánhái	boy [N]
ne	(pause filler) [P]
nǚhái	girl [N]

shēntǐ body [N]

xiàn county [N]

yòu'éryuán kindergarten [PW]

yuánlái originally, formerly [MA]

zuò
mǎimài do or engage in business [PH]

Grammar

Choice-type questions with choice implied: Nánhái'r nǚhái'r?
“A boy or a girl?” Nǐ yào zhèige yào nèige? “Do you want
this one or do you want that one?”

Unit 7, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

Běijīng Yǔyán Beijing Language and Culture
Wénhuà Dàxué University [PW]

bú cuò “not bad,” “quite good” [IE]

Déyǔ German (language) [N]

-de	(verb suffix that indicates manner) [P]
Fǎyǔ	French (language) [N]
Hànzì	Chinese character [N]
huà	word, language [N]
huì	know how to, can [AV]
jǐ-	a few, several [NU]
jìxù	continue [V]
ma	(indicates something obvious) [P]
Pǔtōnghuà	Mandarin (language) [N]
qítā	other [AT]
quán	completely [A]
rènshi	recognize [V]

Riyǔ	Japanese (language) [N]
shuōhuà	speak words, speak [VO]
Xībānyáyǔ	Spanish (language) [N]
xiě	write [V]
xiězì(r)	write characters, write [VO]
ya	(form of particle a used after words ending in -a or -i) [P]
Yīngyǔ	English (language) [N]
yǐqián	before, formerly [TW]
yǒude	some [AT]
Zhōngguó huà	spoken Chinese [PH]
Zhōngguó zì(r)	Chinese character [PH]
Grammar	

Equivalents of “can”: huì “know how,” néng “be physically able,” kéyǐ “have permission to”

Equivalents of “know”: huì “know how,” zhīdao “know a fact,” rènshi “be acquainted with”

-DE after verbs to indicate manner: Tā Zhōngguo huà shuōde hěn hǎo. “She speaks Chinese very well.” Tā xiě Zhōngguo zì xiěde hěn hǎokàn. “He writes Chinese characters very attractively.”

MA to indicate an obvious situation: Nín de Hànyǔ shuōde tīng bú cuò ma! “You speak Chinese quite well, you know!”

Names of languages

Question words used as indefinites: Wǒ rènshi jǐbǎige Zhōngguo zì. “I know a few hundred Chinese characters.” Wǒ zhǐ yǒu jǐkuài qián. “I only have a few dollars.”

Terms for “Chinese language”

YŌUDE...YŌUDE...: Yŏude láiile, yŏude méi lái. “Some came, some didn’t come.” Yŏude wŏ mǎile, yŏude méi mǎi. “I bought some, I didn’t buy others.”

Unit 7, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

duàn(r) section, segment, period (of time) [M]

hé	with [CV]
hòulái	afterward, later [TW]
jiǎng	speak, say [V]
jiǎnghuà	speak, talk [VO]
kāishǐ	begin [V]; in the beginning [TW]
nánguài...	no wonder... [PT]
nèmme	like that, so [A]
shíhou(r)	time [N]
yíge rén	by oneself, alone [PH]
yìqǐ	together [A]
yòu	again [A]
yǒude shíhou(r)	sometimes [PH]

yuǎn be far away [SV]

yuèfen(r) month [N]

Grammar

HÉ...YÌQǐ and GĒN...YÌQǐ: Wǒmen hé tāmen yìqǐ qù ba!
“Let’s go together with them!”

NÁNGUÀI...: Nánguài nǐde Hànyǔ jiǎngde zhèmmě hǎo. “No
wonder that you speak Chinese so well.”

SHI...-DE to express attendant circumstances of known past
actions: Wǒ shi hé wǒ àirén yìqǐ lái. “I came together with
my spouse.”

Unit 7, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bàng be great, wonderful [SV]

bìyè graduate [PT]

chà be lacking, deficient [SV]

cóng from [CV]

duōshù	the majority [N]
fùyu	be prosperous [SV]
gǔ	be ancient [SV]
jiù	only [A]
juéde	feel [V]
nèiyang(r)	that way, like that [MA]
niàn	study [V]
nǔlì	be diligent, work hard [SV]
shēnqǐng	apply [V]
tīngshuō	hear of, hear it said that [V]
yánjiū	research [V/N]
yánjiūshēng	graduate student [N]

...yǐhòu after... [PT]

...yǐqián before..., ...ago [PT]

zhèiyang(r) this way, like this [MA]

...zhīhòu after... [PT]

...zhīqián before..., ...ago [PT]

zhì'ān public order, public security [N]

Grammar

Backchannel comments: Ò. “Oh,” Zhèiyang. “So this is how it is.”

BÌYÈ: Tā shì Běidà bìyède. “She graduated from Beijing University.”

Phrase + YǐQIÁN/ZHĪQIÁN and Phrase + YǐHÒU/ZHĪHÒU: Tā shì yìnián yǐqián qù Zhōngguode. “He went to China one year ago.” Tā liǎngge yuè zhīhòu yào jiéhūn. “She’s going to get married in two months.”

Unit 8, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

běi	north [L]
běifāng	north, the North [PW]
běifāng huà	northern speech [PH]
běifāng rén	Northerner [PH]
Běijīng Fàndiàn	Beijing Hotel [PW]
dǎdī	take a taxi [VO]
dàgài	probably, about [MA]
dōngfāng	east, the East [PW]
Dōngfāng rén	Asian person [PH]
gèng	even more, more [A]
guò	pass, go by [V]
huòzhě	or [CJ]

jìn	be close, near [SV]
kāi	drive, operate a vehicle [V]
kuài	be fast [SV]
láojià	excuse me [IE]
lí	be distant from, from [CV]
nán	south [L]
nánfāng	south, the South [PW]
nánfāng huà	southern speech [PH]
nánfāng rén	Southerner [PH]
Tiān'ānmén	Tiananmen [PW]
wàng	to, toward [CV]
xī	west [L]

xīfāng	west, the West [PW]
Xīfāng rén	Westerner [PH]
yìzhí	straight [A]
zǒu	go, walk [V]
zǒulù	walk [VO]
zuǒyòu	about, approximately [PW]

Grammar

Conditional clauses with -DE HUÀ: Zǒulùde huà, dàgài yào bàn'ge zhōngtóu zuǒyòu. “If you walk, it will probably take about half an hour.”

LÍ to express distance from: Nǐ jiā lí zhèr yuǎn bu yuǎn? “Is your home far from here?” Wǒ jiā lí zhèr hěn jìn. “My home is close to here.”

QÙ...ZĚMME ZŌU: Láojià, qù Wàijiāobù zěmme zǒu? “Excuse me, how do you get to the Foreign Ministry?”

WÀNG to express movement toward a certain direction: wàng xī zǒu “walk toward the west,” wàng qián kāi “drive forward”

ZUǑYÒU: liǎngge yuè zuǒyòu “about two months”

Unit 8, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

Běijīng Wàiguoyǔ Dàxué Beijing Foreign Studies University [PW]

Běiwài (abbreviation for Beijing Foreign Studies University) [PW]

bīnguǎn guest house, hotel [PW]

chēzi car, vehicle [N]

chūzū rent out [V]

chūzū qìchē taxi [PH]

Fù Fu [SN]

hǎode “all right,” “O.K.” [IE]

jīchǎng airport [PW]

liàng	(for land vehicles) [M]
lóu	building (with two or more floors) [N]
ménkǒu(r)	doorway, entrance [PW]
qìchē	car, vehicle [N]
shǒudū	capital [N]
Shǒudū Jīchǎng	Capital Airport [PW]
wàiguó	foreign country [N]
wàiguó huà	foreign language [PH]
wàiguó rén	foreigner [PH]
wàiguoyǔ	foreign language [N]
wéi	“hello” [I]
xìngmíng	first and last name [N]

Yǒuyì Bīnguǎn Friendship Hotel [PW]

yǒuyì friendship [N]

zhuānjiā expert [N]

zhuānjiā lóu (foreign) experts' building [PH]

Grammar

Pivot sentences: Wǒ yào yíliàng chē qù Shǒudū Jīchǎng “I want a car to go to Capital Airport”

Unit 8, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

dǎ hit [V]

dǎ diànhuà make a telephone call [PH]

diànhuà telephone [N]

fǎzi means, method, way [N]

gǎn rush, hurry [V]

huì	be likely to, will [AV]
jiāotōng	traffic [N]
jìnkùài	as fast as possible [A]
juéding	decide [V]
máfan	trouble, disturb [V]
mǎshàng	immediately, right away [A]
nàixīn	be patient/patience [SV/N]
pài	dispatch, send [V]
pàiqu	dispatch, send out [RC]
-qu	(indicates motion away from the speaker) [RE]
shàng	go to, come to, to [CV]
sījī	driver, chauffeur [N]

tōngzhī notify [V]

xiǎoshí hour [N]

yào need to, have to, should [AV]; request [V]

yìhuǐr a while [N]

yōngjǐ be crowded [SV]

zěmme how come, why [QW]

zháojí worry, get excited [SV/VO]

Grammar

Resultative compounds: pàiqu “send out,” láibují “not be able to make it on time”

Unit 8, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bàntiān “half the day,” a long time [NU+M]

biéde other, another [AT]

dǔchē be clogged up with cars [VO]

gōngjīn kilo [M]

huàn change to, exchange [V]

jiàn (for luggage, matters) [M]

kāichē drive a car [VO]

mǐ meter [M]

qīng be light (not heavy) [SV]

sāichē be clogged up with cars [VO]

shīfu master; driver [N]

tiáo (for streets, alleys) [M]

xíngli luggage, baggage [N]

xūyào need [V]

yīngdāng should, ought to [AV]

zāogāo be a mess [SV]; “darn it,” “what a mess” [IE]

zhǎo give in change [V]

zhǎoqián give (someone) change [VO]

zhǐhǎo have no choice but [A]

zhòng be heavy [SV]

zuìhòu in the end, finally [TW]

Grammar

CÓNG...DÀO...: Cóng sāndiǎn bàn dào wǔdiǎn. “From 3:30 until 5:00.”

Height and weight: Nǐ duō zhòng? “How heavy are you?” Wǒ liùshísāngōngjīn. “I weigh 63 kilos.” Nǐ duō gāo? “How tall are you?” Wǒ yīmǐ bā’èr. “I’m one meter eighty-two.”

Specifier + Number + Measure + Noun: zhèiliǎngjiàn xíngli “these two pieces of luggage”

ZHǏHǎO: Wǒmen zhǐhǎo huí sùshè. “We have no choice but to return to our dorm.”

Unit 9, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bái be white [SV]

báisè the color white [N]

běndì this place, here [N]

bú yòng not need to, don't need to [AV]

bú yòng xiè “don't mention it” [IE]

dēng light, lamp [N]

guǎi turn [V]

hēi be black [SV]

hēisè the color black [N]

Héping Bīnguǎn Peace Hotel [PW]

hóng be red [SV]

hónglùdēng	traffic light [N]
hóngsè	the color red [N]
huáng	be yellow [SV]
huángsè	the color yellow [N]
jiāotōng jǐngchá	traffic police [PH]
jiāotōngjǐng	traffic police [N]
jǐngchá	police [N]
lán	be blue [SV]
lánsè	the color blue [N]
lǜ	be green [SV]
lùkǒu(r)	intersection [PW]
lǜsè	the color green [N]

qīngchū be clear, clear about [SV]

xiè thank [V]

yánsè color [N]

zhuǎn turn [V]

Grammar

Chinese equivalents of English “ask”: Nǐ yàoshi bù dǒngde huà, yào wèn lǎoshī a! “If you don’t understand, you should ask the teacher!” Qǐng tā míngtiān zài lái. “Ask him to come again tomorrow.” Lǎoshī jiào wǒmen zuò zuòyè. “The teacher asked us to do our homework.”

Color terms

Unit 9, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

búbì don’t need to, not be necessary [AV]

chēzhàn bus stop; bus station [PW]

diànchē street car, trolley, tram [N]

dòngwù	animal [N]
dòngwùyuyuán(r)	zoo [PW]
gōnggòng	public [AT]
gōnggòng qìchē	public bus, bus [PH]
lù	(for bus routes) [M]
māo(r)	cat [N]
niǎo(r)	bird [N]
shàngchē	get on a vehicle [VO]
yǎng	raise, keep [V]
Yíhéyuán	Summer Palace [PW]
yú(r)	fish [N]
zhàn	station, stop [N]

zhī (for most animals) [M]

zhōngdiǎn final or terminal point [N]

zhōngdiǎn zhàn last station, last stop [PH]

Grammar

XIĀN...RÁNHÒU... “First...then...”: Xiān chīfàn ránhòu zài qù mǎi dōngxì. “First eat and then go shopping.”

Unit 9, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bèn be stupid [SV]

búdàn not only [A]

cōngmíng be smart [SV]

érqiě moreover, and, also [CJ]

gāng just now, just [A]

gānggāng just now, just [A]

gānjìng	be clean [SV]
jiào	call (someone) [V]
kāi wánxiào	joke around, play a prank [PH]
lǎn	be lazy [SV]
luàn	be disorderly, messy [SV]
méi	not have [V]
piào	ticket [N]
shàng	get on [V]
shēngqì	get angry [SV/VO]
shòupiàoyuán	ticket seller, conductor [N]
shuō xiàohuà(r)	tell a joke [PH]
wánxiào	joke [N]

xīwàng hope [V]

yònggōng be hardworking, studious [SV]

zāng be dirty [SV]

zhěngqí be in order, neat [SV]

Grammar

BÚDÀN...ÉRQIĚ... “Not only...but also...”: Tā búdàn niánqīng, érqiě cōngmíng. “She’s not only young, but also smart.”

Unit 9, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

chēpiào bus ticket [N]

chūshì show, produce [V]

-dào (indicates action of verb is realized) [RE]

dǒng understand [V]

-dǒng understand [RE]

gāi should [AV]

jìde remember [V]

kàn read [V]

kàndǒng read and understand [RC]

ne (indicates continuous aspect) [P]

shuìzháo fall asleep [RC]

tīng hear, listen [V]

tīngdǒng hear and understand [RC]

tóngzhì comrade [N]

wèi “hey” [I]

xiàchē get off a vehicle [VO]

xiǎoxīn be careful [SV]

yuèpiào monthly ticket [N]

zǎo be early [SV]

-zháo (indicates action of verb is realized) [RE]

zhǎodào look for and find, find [RC]

zhǎozháo look for and find, find [RC]

-zhe (indicates continuous aspect) [P]

zhǔnbèi prepare, get ready, plan [V]

Grammar

Potential resultative compounds: zhǎo “look for,” zhǎozháo “look for and find,” zhǎodezháo “be able to find,” zhǎobuzháo “be unable to find”

-ZHE as continuous aspect suffix: zǎozhe ne “it’s (continuing being) early”

Unit 10, Part 1: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

āiyà	“oh,” “gosh” [I]
biàn	change [V]
-chéng	become; into [PV]
dǎléi	thunder [VO]
dī	be low [SV]
dù	degree (of temperature) [M]
éi	(introduces questions) [I]
...éryǐ	only [PT]
kěnéng	be possible [AV]
qíngtiān	fine day, sunny day [N]
rè	be hot [SV]
shǎndiàn	lightning strikes [VO]

suóyǐ shuō so, therefore [PH]

tiān sky [N]

tiānqì weather [N]

tiānqì yùbào weather forecast [PH]

wēndù temperature [N]

xiàyǔ rain [VO]

yídìng definitely [A]

yīntiān cloudy or overcast weather [N]

yǔ rain [N]

yùbào forecast [N]

yuè lái yuè... more and more... [PT]

yún cloud [N]

zǎo “good morning” [IE]

zhǔn be accurate [SV]

zuì most [A]

Grammar

CÓNG...KĀISHǐ: cóng míngtiān kāishǐ “starting from tomorrow”

DÙ to express temperatures: shíbādù “eighteen degrees”

...ÉRYǐ “and that’s all”: Wǒ zhǐ yǒu yìbǎikuài éryǐ. “I only have one hundred dollars and that’s all.”

YUÈ LÁI YUÈ... “more and more”: Tiānqì yuè lái yuè rè. “The weather has been getting hotter and hotter.”

Unit 10, Part 2: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

chū tàiyáng the sun comes/is out [PH]

chūntiān spring [TW]

dōngtiān winter [TW]

fēng	wind [N]
fēngshā	wind and sand; blowing sand [N]
gān	be dry [SV]
hǎn shǎo	seldom [PH]
héshì	be appropriate [SV]
jìjié	season [N]
lěng	be cold [SV]
qiūtiān	fall, autumn [TW]
rúguǒ	if [MA]
shā	sand, gravel [N]
shūfu	be comfortable [SV]
sǐ	die [V]

tàiyáng sun [N]

wán(r) play, have a good time [V]

xiàtiān summer [TW]

xiàxuě snow [VO]

xuě snow [N]

yào if [MA]

zhèmmě shuō saying it like this; then [PH]

zhèng just [A]

Grammar

BÙ...YĚ BÙ... “neither...nor...”: Tā shuō Zhōngwén bù nán yě bù róngyi. “She said that Chinese was neither hard nor easy.”

RÚGUǒ...JIÙ... “if...then...”: Rúguǒ xiàyǔde huà, wǒmen jiù bú qù. “If it should rain, we (then) won’t go.”

YÒU...YÒU... “both...and...”: Nèige xuésheng yòu cōngmíng yòu yònggōng. “That student is both smart and diligent.”

Unit 10, Part 3: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

bànfǎ(r) way of doing something, method [N]

cháoshī be humid [SV]

chūlái come out [RC]

-chūlái come out [RE]

chūmén(r) go outside [VO]

chūqu go out [RC]

dànshi but [CJ]

gēnběn (+ NEGATIVE)(not) at all [A]

jìnlái come in [RC]

-jìnlái come in [RE]

jìnqu go in [RC]

kànchūlái	know something by looking [RC]
kōngqì	air [N]
m	(indicates agreement) [I]
máomáyǔ	light rain [N]
nèiyangzi	that way, like that [MA]
pèng	bump, run into [V]
pèngshang	run into, meet with, encounter [RC]
piāo	float [V]
piāojìnlái	float in [RC]
qíshí	actually [MA]
shāchuāng	screen window [N]
-shàng	up, on [RE]

táifēng	typhoon [N]
wù	fog [N]
xià máomáoyǔ	drizzle [PH]
Yángmíng Shān	Yangming Mountain [PW]
yùnqì	luck [N]
zài	(indicates progressive aspect) [AV]
zhèiyangzi	this way, like this [MA]

Grammar

Directional Verbs: jìnlái “come in,” jìnqu “go in,” chūlái “come out,” chūqu “go out,” piāojìnlái “float in,” kànbuchūlái “be unable to know something by looking”

Hǎoxiàng...-DE Yàngzi “seem like...”: Hǎoxiàng wù cóng shāchuāng piāojìnláide yàngzi. “It seems as though the fog is floating in through the window screen.”

Noun suffix -Fǎ “way of doing something”: bànfǎ “way of doing something,” kànfǎ “way of looking at things,” xiǎngfǎ “way of thinking,” xiěfǎ “way of writing,” etc.

Reduplication of measures and nouns to indicate “every”: tiān “day” → tiāntiān “every day,” nián “year” → niánnián “every year,” rén “person” → rénrén “everybody”

ZÀI as auxiliary verb to indicate progressive aspect: Tā zài chīfàn. “He’s eating.”

Unit 10, Part 4: New Vocabulary and Grammar

Vocabulary

Àomén	Macao [PW] (10-4)
bǐ	compare [CV/V]
chàbuduō	not lack much, be good enough [IE]
...-de shíhou(r)	when... [PT]
dōngàn	east coast [PW]
dōng-nuǎn-xià-liáng	“warm in winter, cool in summer” [EX]
fēngjǐng	scenery [N]
gānzào	be dry [SV]

Jiāzhōu	California [PW]
liángkuai	be comfortably cool [SV]
měi	be beautiful [SV]
Měijí Huárén	Chinese with U.S. nationality [PH]
nánguò	be sad [SV]
nuǎnhuo	be warm [SV]
qìhòu	climate [N]
shìyìng	adapt, get used to [V]
wǎn	be late [SV]
xī'àn	west coast [PW]
xíguàn	be accustomed to [V]

Grammar

Bǐ to express unequal comparison: Tā bǐ wǒ gāo. “He is taller than me.”

...DE SHÍHOU(R) “when”: Tā gàosu wǒde shíhou, yǐjīng tài wǎnle. “When he told me, it was already too late.”

A MÉIYOU B NÈMME/ZHÈMME C “A is not as C as B”:
Wǒ méiyǒu tā nèmme gāo. “I’m not as tall as him.”

2. Substitution Drills

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 1, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Kē Léi'ēn , nǐ hǎo! Ke Leien, how are you?

Wáng Jīngshēng Wang Jingsheng, how are you?

Kē Léi'ēn Ke Leien, how are you?

2. Nǐ dào nǎr qù
a? Where are you going?

Kē Léi'ēn Where is Ke Leien going?

Wáng
Jīngshēng Where is Wang Jingsheng
going?

Nǐ Where are you going?

3. Wǒ qù túshūguǎn. I'm going to the library.

shítáng. I'm going to the dining hall.

sùshè. I'm going to the dormitory.

túshūguǎn. I'm going to the library.

4. Wǒ dào túshūguǎn qù. I'm going to the library.

shítáng I'm going to the cafeteria.

sùshè I'm going to the dormitory.

túshūguǎn I'm going to the library.

5. Wǒ qù Nǐ túshūguǎn. I'm going to the library. How about you?

Kē Léi'ēn I'm going to the library. How about Ke Leien?

Wáng Jīngshēng I'm going to the library. How about Wang Jing-sheng?

Nǐ I'm going to the library. How
 about you?

6. Wǒ huí sùshè. I'm going back to the dormitory.

túshūguǎn. I'm going back to the library.

shítáng. I'm going back to the cafeteria.

sùshè. I'm going back to the dormitory.

7. Wǒ qù bàn I'm going to take care of a little
 yìdiǎnr shìr. matter.

Kē Léi'ēn Ke Leien is going to take care of a
 little matter.

Wáng Wang Jingsheng is going to take
Jīngshēng care of a little matter.

Wǒ I'm going to take care of a little
 matter.

8. Wǒ Wáng Jīngshēng I'm going and Wang Jingsheng is
qù, yě qù. going, too.

Kē Léi'ēn yě qù. I'm going and Ke Leien is going,
too.

nǐ yě qù. I'm going and you're going, too.

Wáng Jīngshēng yě qù. I'm going and Wang Jingsheng is
going, too.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 1, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Zhào Guócái , hǎo jiǔ bú jiànle! Zhao Guocai, long time no see!

Wáng Jīngshēng Wang Jingsheng, long time no see!

Kē Léi'ēn Ke Leien, long time no see!

Bàba Dad, long time no see!

Māma Mom, long time no see!

Háizi Child, long time no see!

Zhào Guócái Zhao Guocai, long time no see!

2. Nǐ zěmmeyàng a? How are you?

Tā How is he?

Tāmen How are they?

Nǐ àirén How is your spouse?

Wáng Jīngshēng How is Wang Jingsheng?

Shítáng How is the cafeteria?

Nǐ How are you?

3. Wǒ hái xíng. I'm all right.

Nǐ You're all right.

Tā He's all right.

Tāmen They're all right.

Wǒ bàba My dad is all right.

Wǒ māma My mom is all right.

Wǒ àirén My spouse is all right.

Wǒ I'm all right.

4. Nǐ àirén hǎo ma? Is your spouse well?

Nǐ māma Is your mom well?

Nǐ Are you well?

Tā Is she well?

Tāmen Are they well?

Zhào Guócai Is Zhao Guocai well?

Sùshè	Is the dormitory good?
Nǐ àirén	Is your spouse well?
5. Nǐ àirén, hái zi	dōu hǎo Are your spouse and children ma? all O.K.?
Nǐ bàba, māma	Are your mom and dad both O.K.?
Kē Léi'ēn, Wáng Jǐngshēng	Are Ke Leien and Wang Jingsheng both O.K.?
Zhào Guócái, Wáng Jǐngshēng	Are Zhao Guocai and Wang Jingsheng both O.K.?
Tāmen	Are they all O.K.?
Háizi	Are the children all O.K.?
Nǐ àirén, hái zi	Are your spouse and children all O.K.?
6. Nǐ bàba qù ma?	Is your father going?

Tā Is her father going?

Wǒ Is my father going?

Nǐ Is your father going?

7. Tāmen dōu hěn hǎo. They are all very well.

 máng. They are all very busy.

 lèi. They are all very tired.

 hǎo. They are all very well.

8. Tāmen yě hěn hǎo. They also are all very well.
dōu

 hěn máng. They also are all very busy.

 qù. They also are all going.

 huí sùshè. They also are all going back to the
 dormitory.

hái xíng. They also are all alright.

yǒu yìdiǎnr They also all have something to
shì. do.

qù bàn They also are all going to take care
yìdiǎnr shì. of something.

hěn hǎo. They also are all very well.

9. Wǒ yǒu yìdiǎnr I have something to do.
shì.

Tā He has something to do.

Tāmen They have something to do.

Zhào Zhao Guocai has something to
Guócái do.

Wǒ bàba My father has something to do.

Wǒ I have something to do.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 1, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Èi, Lǎo Hé , nǐ hǎo a! Hey, Old He, how are you?

Kē Hey, Old Ke, how are you?

Wáng Hey, Old Wang, how are you?

Gāo Hey, Old Gao, how are you?

Zhào Hey, Old Zhao, how are you?

Hé Hey, Old He, how are you?

2. Xiǎo Gāo , zǐjìn Little Gao, how have you been
zěmmeyàng a? recently?

Hé Little He, how have you been
recently?

Kē	Little Ke, how have you been recently?
Wáng	Little Wang, how have you been recently?
Zhào	Little Zhao, how have you been recently?
Gāo	Little Gao, how have you been recently?

3. Wǒ bù máng. I'm not busy.

jǐnzhāng. I'm not nervous.

lǎo. I'm not old.

ǎi. I'm not short.

zǒu. I'm not leaving.

máng. I'm not busy.

4. Tā yě bú kù. He is also not sleepy.

lèi. He is also not tired.

zuò. He is also not sitting.

jìn. He is also not entering.

qù. He is also not going.

kùn. He is also not sleepy.

5. Bú tài máng. Not very busy.

lèi. Not very tired.

kùn. Not very sleepy.

gāo. Not very tall.

lǎo. Not very old.

nán. Not very difficult.

máng. Not very busy.

6. Nǐ
gōngzuò máng bu máng? Is your work busy or not?
- lèi bu lèi? Is your work tiring or not?
- nán bu nán? Is your work difficult or not?
- jǐnzhāng
jǐnzhāng? bu Is your work intense or not?
- róngyi bu róngyi? Is your work easy or not?
- máng bu máng? Is your work busy or not?

7. Tāmen zuìjìn jǐnzhāng de. They have been quite nervous recently.
tǐng
- lèi They have been quite tired recently.
- kùn They have been quite sleepy recently.
- máng They have been quite busy recently.

hǎo They have been quite well
recently.

jǐnzhāng They have been quite nervous
recently.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 1, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Lín Tàitai , xièxie nín le! Thank you, Mrs. Lin!

Wáng Xiānsheng Thank you, Mr. Wang!

Zhào Xiáojie Thank you, Miss Zhao!

Xiè Tàitai Thank you, Mrs. Xie!

Hé Xiānsheng Thank you, Mr. He!

Lín Tàitai Thank you, Mrs. Lin!

2. Wáng
Xiānsheng, qǐng jìn! Mr. Wang, please enter!

màn
zǒu! Mr. Wang, please take care!

zuò! Mr. Wang, please sit down!

qù shítáng! Mr. Wang, please go to the
cafeteria!

huí sùshè! Mr. Wang, please return to the
dormitory!

jìn! Mr. Wang, please enter!

3. Xiǎo Zhào, dào shítáng Little Zhao, please go to the
qǐng nǐ qù. cafeteria.

dào túshūguǎn Little Zhao, please go to the
qù. library.

huí sùshè. Little Zhao, please return to the
dormitory.

qù bàn Little Zhao, please go and take
yìdiǎnr shì. care of something.

xièxie
tāmen. Little Zhao, please thank them.

qù. Little Zhao, please go.

zǒu. Little Zhao, please leave.

dào shítáng Little Zhao, please go to the
qù. cafeteria.

4. Wǒ zǒu le. I'll be going now.

yǒu I have it now.

kùn I've gotten sleepy.

lèi I've gotten tired.

lǎo I've gotten old.

hǎo I'm O.K. now.

kéyi I'm O.K. now.

zǒu I'll be going now.

5. Wǒ bú qù le. I'm no longer going.

bú zuò I won't sit any longer.

bú bàn I don't handle it any more.

bù zǒu I'm not leaving anymore.

bù xíng I'm in a bad way now.

bú kùn I'm no longer tired.

bù jǐnzhāng I'm no longer nervous.

bú qù I'm no longer going.

6. Nǐ lèi le ma? Have you gotten tired?

kùn Have you gotten sleepy?

hǎo Are you O.K. now?

bú qù Are you no longer going?

bú bàn Are you no longer doing it?

lèi Have you gotten tired?

7. Zhōngwén yǒu yìsi ma? Is Chinese interesting?

méi yìsi Is Chinese not interesting?

nán Is Chinese difficult?

róngyi Is Chinese easy?

yǒu yìsi Is Chinese interesting?

8. Tāmen gāo ma? Are they tall?

Wǒ Am I tall?

Nǐ Are you tall?

Nín Are you tall?

Tā Is he tall?

Wǒmen Are we tall?

Nǐmen Are you tall?

Tāmen Are they tall?

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 2, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Nǐ shì nǐguó What country are you from?
 rén?

Nín What country are you from?

Tā What country is she from?

Xiǎo Hé What country is Little He from?

Lǎo Zhào What country is Old Zhao from?

Bái
Xiáojie What country is Miss Bai from?

Xiè Tàitai What country is Mrs. Xie from?

Nǐ What country are you from?

2. Tā shì Zhōngguó rén. She is Chinese.

Jiā'nádà rén. She is Canadian.

hǎo háizi. She is a good child.

Zhōngwén lǎoshī. She is a Chinese teacher.

wǒ bàba. She is my father.

wǒ àirén. She is my spouse.

hǎo rén. She is a good person.

Zhōngguo rén. She is Chinese.

3. Nǐ shì bu shì Zhōngguo rén? Are you Chinese?

zōngjīnglǐ? Are you the general manager?

Jiā'nádà rén? Are you Canadian?

Měiguó rén? Are you American?

Rìběn rén? Are you Japanese?

jīnglǐ? Are you the manager?

Zhōngguo rén? Are you Chinese?

4. Wǒ bú shì Zhōngguo rén. I'm not Chinese.

Táiwān rén. I'm not Taiwanese.

Xībānyá rén. I'm not Spanish.

Yīngguo rén. I'm not English.

lǎoshī. I'm not a teacher.

jīnglǐ. I'm not the manager.

zōngjīnglǐ. I'm not the general manager.

Zhōngguo rén. I'm not Chinese.

5. Nǐ jiào shémméi míngzi? What is your name?

Tā What is her name?

Nǐ māma What is your mother's name?

Zhèiwèi tóngxué What is this student's name?

Nèiwèi lǎoshī What is that teacher's name?

Nǐ What is your name?

6. Tā jiào shémmé? What is his name?

wèn What did he ask?

bàn What is he taking care of?

yǒu What does he have?

jiào What is his name?

7. Nǐmen dōu shì Měiguó rén ma? Are you all Americans?

lǎoshī Are you all teachers?

Rìběn rén Are you all Japanese?

Zhōngguó rén Are you all Chinese?

jīnglǐ Are you all managers?

Měiguó rén Are you all Americans?

8. Wǒmen bù dōu Měiguó
shì rén. We are not all Americans.

Jiā'nádà rén. We are not all Canadians.

xīn lǎoshī. We are not all new teachers.

xuésheng. We are not all students.

zōngjīnglǐ. We are not all general managers.

tóngshì. We are not all colleagues.

Měiguó rén. We are not all Americans.

9. Wǒmen dōu bú shì Měiguó rén. None of us are Americans.

Zhōngguó rén. None of us are Chinese.

Rìběn rén. None of us are Japanese.

lǎoshī. None of us are teachers.

jīnglǐ. None of us are managers.

háizi. None of us are children.

Měiguó rén. None of us are
Americans.

10. Nèiwèi tóngxué yě shì Rìběn That classmate is also
rén. Japanese.

lǎoshī That teacher is also
Japanese.

Gāo That Mr. Gao is also
Xiānsheng Japanese.

Kē Tàitai That Mrs. Ke is also
Japanese.

Lín Xiáojie That Miss Lin is also
Japanese.

tóngxué That classmate is also
Japanese.

11. Nǚwèi tóngxué jiào Wáng Which student is called
Jǐngshēng? Wang Jingsheng?

Zhèiwèi . This student is called Wang
Jingsheng.

Nèiwèi . That student is called Wang
Jingsheng.

Nǚwèi ? Which student is called
Wang Jingsheng?

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 2, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Zhè wǒde xīn This is my new roommate.
shì tóngwū.

nǐde This is your new roommate.

tāde This is her new roommate.

Xiǎo
Lín de This is Little Lin's new
roommate.

Lǎo
Wáng de This is Old Wang's new
roommate.

wǒ de This is my new roommate.

2. Huānyíng nǐ Zhōngguó lái!
dào Welcome to China!

wǒmende sùshè Welcome to our
dormitory!

wǒmende shítáng Welcome to our
cafeteria!

wǒmende túshūguǎn Welcome to our library!

Měiguó Welcome to the United
States!

Rìběn Welcome to Japan!

Zhōngguó Welcome to China!

3. Wǒ hěn rènshi nǐ. I'm very happy to become
gāoxìng acquainted with you.

nǐ shì wǒde I'm very happy that you are my
tóngwū. roommate.

nín shì I'm very happy that you are
wǒmende our teacher.
lǎoshī.

dào Zhōngguo I'm very happy to go to China.
qù.

xuéxí I'm very happy to study
Zhōngwén. Chinese.

dào Měiguó qù. I'm very happy to go to the
United States.

rènshi nǐ. I'm very happy to become
acquainted with you.

4. Bié zhèmmè chēnghu wǒ! Don't address me this way!

wèn!

Don't ask!

wèn ta! Don't ask him!

gāoxìng! Don't be happy!

bù gāoxìng! Don't be unhappy!

dào Zhōngguo qù! Don't go to China!

qù wǒmende sùshè! Don't go to our dormitory!

lái wǒmende shítáng! Don't come to our dining hall!

zhèmmè chēnghu wǒ! Don't address me this way!

5. Nǐ bú yào zǒu! Don't leave!

qù! Don't go!

wèn! Don't ask!

lái! Don't come!

zuò! Don't sit!

zǒu! Don't leave!

6. Háishi jiào wǒ Xiǎo Chén hǎole. Why don't you just call me Little Chen.

jiào wǒ Lǎo Luó Why don't you just call me Old Luo.

jiào tā Lín Tàitai Why don't you just call her Mrs. Lin.

dài nǐde tóngwū Why don't you just bring your roommate.

dài nǐde háizi Why don't you just bring your kids.

jiào wǒ Xiǎo Chén Why don't you just call me Little Chen.

7. Wǒ yīnggāi zěmme chēnghu nín? How should I address you?

nǐ? How should I address you?

tā? How should I address him?

nǐde
tóngwū? How should I address your
roommate?

nǐde bàba? How should I address your
father?

nǐmende
zǒngjīnglǐ? How should I address your
general manager?

nín? How should I address you?

8. Nà shi shéi a? Who is that?

Zhè Who is this?

Tā Who is she?

Tāmen Who are they?

Nǐ Who are you?

Nīmen Who are you all?

Wǒ Who am I?

Wǒmen Who are we?

Nà Who is that?

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 2, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Wǒ Nín My name is Gao. What is your
xìng Gāo. guìxìng? name?

Wáng. My name is Wang. What is your
name?

Lín. My name is Lin. What is your
name?

Shī. My name is Shi. What is your
name?

Wú. My name is Wu. What is your name?

Chén. My name is Chen. What is your name?

Gāo. My name is Gao. What is your name?

2. Nín zài dānwèi gōngzuò? Which organization do you work at?
něige

gōngsī Which company do you work at?

dàxué Which university do you work at?

túshūguǎn Which library do you work at?

shítáng Which cafeteria do you work at?

dānwèi Which organization do you work for?

3. Wǒ Xiānggǎng zài Zhōngwén Dàxué xuéxí. I study at Chinese University of Hong Kong.

sùshè I study in the dormitory.

túshūguǎn I study at the library.

shítáng I study in the cafeteria.

dānwèi I study in my work unit.

gōngsī I study at the company.

Xiānggǎng Zhōngwén Dàxué I study at Chinese University of Hong Kong.

4. Xiǎo Wáng zài nǐge dàshǐguǎn gōngzuò ? Which embassy does Little Wang work at?

zhèige Little Wang works at this embassy

nèige Little Wang works at that embassy

- něige ? Which embassy does Little Wang work at?
5. Tā bàba gōngsī Her father works for a
zài yìjiā gōngzuò company.
- něijiā ? Which company does her father work for?
- zhèijiā Her father works for this company.
- nèijiā Her father works for that company.
- yìjiā Her father works for a company.

6. Nèiwèi shì Mǎ Xiàozhǎng . That is President Ma.

Zhèiwèi . This is President Ma.

Nèiwèi ? Which one is President Ma?

Nèiwèi . That is President Ma.

7. Tā shì nín de xiānsheng ba? I suppose he is your husband?

lǎoshī I suppose he is your teacher?

jīnglǐ I suppose he is your manager?

tàitai I suppose she is your wife?

tóngshì I suppose she is your colleague?

tóngwū I suppose she is your roommate?

tóngxué I suppose she is your classmate?

xiānsheng I suppose he is your husband?

8. Nǐ hěn gāoxìng ba? I suppose you must be happy?

jǐnzhāng I suppose you must be nervous?

kùn I suppose you must be sleepy?

lèi I suppose you must be tired?

máng I suppose you must be busy?

gāoxìng I suppose you must be happy?

9. Nǐmen
yě gōngzuò ba? I suppose you are also working?

dài I suppose you are also bringing
some?

rènshi I suppose you are also acquainted?

yǒu I suppose you also have some?

qù I suppose you are also going?

bàn I suppose you are also doing it?

gōngzuò I suppose you are also working?

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 2, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ dài Sorry, I didn't bring a name
méi míngpiàn. card.

jièshao tā. Sorry, I didn't introduce him.

wèn nǐ. Sorry, I didn't ask you.

xièxie nǐ. Sorry, I didn't thank you.

dài Sorry, I didn't bring a name
míngpiàn. card.

2. Wǒ gēn Luó^{shi} Miss Luo and I, neither one
Xiáojie dōu bú Yīngguó
rén. of us is English.

lèi. Miss Luo and I, neither one
of us is tired.

kùn. Miss Luo and I, neither one
of us is sleepy.

shi Měiguó Miss Luo and I, neither one
rén. of us is American.

shi
Zhōngguó Miss Luo and I, neither one
rén. of us is Chinese.

shi
Yīngguó Miss Luo and I, neither one
rén. of us is English.

3. Wǒ gēn Luó gāoxìng. Miss Luo and I, neither one of
Xiáojiē dōu bù us is happy.

lái. Miss Luo and I, neither one of
us is coming.

gāo. Miss Luo and I, neither one of
us is tall.

lǎo. Miss Luo and I, neither one of
us is old.

máng. Miss Luo and I, neither one of
us is busy.

zǒu. Miss Luo and I, neither one of us is leaving.

gāoxìng. Miss Luo and I, neither one of us is happy.

4. Tāmen dōu méi qù. None of them went.

lái. None of them came.

zuò. None of them sat.

zǒu. None of them left.

wèn. None of them asked.

dài. None of them brought it.

gōngzuò. None of them worked.

qù. None of them went.

5. Zhè Zhōng-Měi de Shī This is Miss Shi from the
shì Mào yì de Shī Sino-American Trading
Gōng sī Xiáojie. Company.

Xiānggǎng
Dàxué This is Miss Shi from Hong
Kong University.

Rìběn
Dàshǐguǎn This is Miss Shi from the
Japanese Embassy.

túshūguǎn This is Miss Shi from the
library.

Jiā'nádà
Dàshǐguǎn This is Miss Shi from the
Canadian Embassy.

Zhōng-Měi
Màoyì
Gōngsī This is Miss Shi from the
Sino-American Trading
Company.

6. Nǐ rènshi tàitai ma? Do you know that lady?
nèiwèi

xiānsheng Do you know that
gentleman?

xiáojie Do you know that young
lady?

nǚshì Do you know that lady?

lǎoshī Do you know that teacher?

xiàozhǎng Do you know that
president?

tóngxué Do you know that
classmate?

tàitai Do you know that lady?

7. Nǐ dài bu míngpiàn? Are you bringing name cards?
dài

tóngxué? Are you bringing classmates?

tóngshì? Are you bringing colleagues?

nǐ Are you bringing your
xiānsheng? husband?

nǐ tàitai? Are you bringing your wife?

nǐ māma? Are you bringing your mother?

nǐde hái zi? Are you bringing your children?

Gāo Xiǎo jie? Are you bringing Miss Gao?

míng piàn? Are you bringing name cards?

8. Tāmen méi dōu qù. Not all of them went.

zuò. Not all of them sat.

zǒu. Not all of them left.

wèn. Not all of them asked.

lái. Not all of them came.

qù. Not all of them went.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 3, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

Tāmen 1. bānshang yǒu	jǐge	tóngxué?	How many classmates are there in their class?
	yíge		There is one classmate in their class.
	liǎngge		There are two classmates in their class.
	sān'ge		There are three classmates in their class.
	sìge		There are four classmates in their class.
	wǔge		There are five classmates in their class.

liùge There are six classmates in
· their class.

qíge There are seven classmates
· in their class.

báge There are eight classmates
· in their class.

jiǔge There are nine classmates in
· their class.

shíge There are ten classmates in
· their class.

jǐge ? How many classmates are
there in their class?

2. Bānshang yǒu shíge rén. In the class there are ten people.

Túshūguǎn In the library there are ten people.

Sùshè In the dormitory there are ten
people.

Shítáng In the dining hall there are ten people.

Gōngsī In the company there are ten people.

Dǎnwèi In the organization there are ten people.

Bānshàng In the class there are ten people.

3. Tāmen How many teachers do they
yǒu jīwèi lǎoshī? have?

yíwèi . They have one teacher.

liǎngwèi . They have two teachers.

sānwèi . They have three teachers.

sìwèi . They have four teachers.

wǔwèi . They have five teachers.

liùwèi . They have six teachers.

qíwèi . They have seven teachers.

báwèi . They have eight teachers.

jiǔwèi . They have nine teachers.

shíwèi . They have ten teachers.

jǐwèi ? How many teachers do they have?

4. Yígòng
yǒu

sānwèi. In all, there are three of them.

sān'ge. In all, there are three.

sān'ge rén. In all, there are three people.

sān'ge nánshēng. In all, there are three male students.

sān'ge nǚshēng. In all, there are three female students.

sān'ge nánde. In all, there are three men.

sān'ge nǚde.	In all, there are three women.
sān'ge hái'zi.	In all, there are three children.
sān'ge bān.	In all, there are three class sections.
sān'ge shítáng.	In all, there are three cafeterias.
sānwèi Xiáojie.	Zhào In all, there are three Miss Zhaos.
sānwèi nánlǎoshī.	In all, there are three male teachers.
sānwèi nǚlǎoshī.	In all, there are three female teachers.
sānwèi.	In all, there are three of them.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 3, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with

the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Tā duō dà niánji le? How old is she?

Tāde hái zi How old is her child?

Lǎo Gāo How old is Old Gao?

Tāmen How old are they?

Nèiwèi lǎoshī How old is that teacher?

Wáng Xiǎojié How old is Ms. Wang?

Tā How old is she?

2. Nǐ mèimei jǐsuì le? How old is your younger sister?

Nǐ didi How old is your younger brother?

Zhèige hái zi How old is this child?

Nèige hái zi How old is that child?

Nǐde hái zi	How old is your child?
Nǐ	How old are you?
Nǐmen	How old are you?
Nǐ mèimei	How old is your younger sister?

3. Wǒ jīnnián èrshí'èr suì le. I'm twenty-two this year.

shíliù	I'm sixteen this year.
shíqī	I'm seventeen this year.
shíbā	I'm eighteen this year.
shíjiǔ	I'm nineteen this year.
èrshí	I'm twenty this year.
èrshiyī	I'm twenty-one this year.
èrshí'èr	I'm twenty-two this year.

4. Nǐ xiángxiang kàn. Try to think.

wènwen Try to ask.

zuòzuo Try to sit.

cāicai Try to guess.

jiào jiao Try to call (somebody's name).

xiángxiang Try to think.

5. Zhè shì nǐ mèimei, duì bu duì? This is your younger sister, right?

dìdi This is your younger brother, right?

gēge This is your older brother, right?

jiějie This is your older sister, right?

fùqin This is your father, right?

mǔqīn This is your mother, right?

àirén This is your spouse, right?

mèimei This is your younger sister,
right?

6. Nǐ bié kàn , hǎo bu hǎo? Don't look, O.K.?

wèn Don't ask, O.K.?

lái Don't come, O.K.?

qù Don't go, O.K.?

zuò Don't sit down, O.K.?

zǒu Don't leave, O.K.?

cāi Don't guess, O.K.?

kàn Don't look, O.K.?

7. Nǐ didi hěn kě'ài! Your younger brother is cute!

gāo! Your younger brother is tall!

ǎi! Your younger brother is short!

dà! Your younger brother is big!

xiǎo! Your younger brother is small!

hǎo! Your younger brother is good!

gāoxìng! Your younger brother is happy!

máng! Your younger brother is busy!

kùn! Your younger brother is sleepy!

kě'ài! Your younger brother is cute!

8. Tā xiàge jiǔsuì le. She will be nine years old next
yuè jiù month.

èrshiyīsuì She will be twenty-one years old
next month.

lái	She will come next month.
bù lái	She will not come next month.
yǒu	She will have it next month.
méiyǒu	She will not have it next month.
yǒu háizi	She will have a child next month.
zǒu	She will leave next month.
jiǔsuì	She will be nine years old next month.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 3, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

- Qǐng zhèige duōshǎo Excuse me, how much is
wèn, zhèige qián? this?

zhèige bēibāo	Excuse me, how much is this backpack?
nèige	Excuse me, how much is that?
nèige bēibāo	Excuse me, how much is that backpack?
bēizi	Excuse me, how much is that cup?
gōngshìbāo	Excuse me, how much is that briefcase?
yíge yuè	Excuse me, how much is it for a month?
liǎngge yuè	Excuse me, how much is it for two months?
zhèige	Excuse me, how much is this?

2. Yò, tài guì le. Gosh, that's too expensive.

dà Gosh, that's too big.

xiǎo Gosh, that's too small.

cháng Gosh, that's too long.

nán Gosh, that's too hard.

guì Gosh, that's too expensive.

3. Nèige That is only three dollars and fifty
zhǐ yào sānkuài wǔ. cents.

yīfēn qián. That is only one cent.

liùkuài wǔ. That is only six dollars and fifty
cents.

shíkuài qián. That is only ten dollars.

jiǔqiān jiǔbǎi That is only nine thousand nine
jiǔshíjiǔkuài. hundred and ninety-nine dollars.

qīkuài sì. That is only seven dollars and forty
cents.

sānkuài wǔ. That is only three dollars and fifty cents.

4. Wǒ kànkàn, xíng bu xíng? Let me see, O.K.?

xíng ma? Let me see, O.K.?

hǎo bu hǎo? Let me see, O.K.?

hǎo ma? Let me see, O.K.?

xíng bu xíng? Let me see, O.K.?

5. Qǐng nǐ kànkàn. Please take a look.

wènwen. Please go and ask.

zuòzuò. Please sit down.

xiángxiang. Please think about it.

cāicai. Please guess.

kànkàn. Please take a look.

6. Nín kàn ba. Why don't you look.

cāi Why don't you guess.

wèn Why don't you ask.

mǎi Why don't you buy it.

mài Why don't you sell it.

zuò Why don't you sit.

zǒu Why don't you leave.

lái Why don't you come.

qù Why don't you go.

kàn Why don't you look.

7. Wǒmen zǒu

ba. Let's leave.

huí sùshè

Let's return to the
dormitory.

qù túshūguǎn	Let's go to the library.
yě dài míngpiàn	Let's also bring name cards.
yě Zhōngwén	xuéxí Let's also study Chinese.
yě jiào tā Xiǎo Mǎ	Let's also call him Little Ma.
yě mǎi yíge	Let's also buy one.
zǒu	Let's leave.

8. Wǒ méi dài míngpiàn. I didn't bring name cards.

qián. I didn't bring money.

gōngzuò. I didn't bring work.

bēizi. I didn't bring a cup.

dàizi. I didn't bring a bag.

bēibāo. I didn't bring a backpack.

gōngshìbāo. I didn't bring a briefcase.

míngpiàn. I didn't bring name cards.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 3, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

Xià 1. yítàng dào	Tiānjīn	de huǒchē jǐdiǎn kāi?	When does the next train for Tianjin depart?
	Yīngguó		When does the next train for England depart?
	Fǎguó		When does the next train for France depart?
	Déguó		When does the next train for Germany depart?

Xībānyá When does the next train
for Spain depart?

Měiguó When does the next train
for the U.S. depart?

Jiā'nádà When does the next train
for Canada depart?

Zhōngguó When does the next train
for China depart?

Tiānjīn When does the next train
for Tianjin depart?

2. Xià yítàngde huǒchē When does the next train for
dào Tiānjīn jǐdiǎn kāi? Tianjin depart?

Bādiǎn èrshí When does the train that arrives
dào Tiānjīn in Tianjin at 8:20 depart?

Shí'èrdiǎn When does the train that arrives
dào Xīnjiāpō in Singapore at 12:00 depart?

Wǒ gēn Bái When does the train that Mrs. Bai
Tàitai zuò and I are taking depart?

Tāmen yīnggāi zuò When does the train that they're supposed to take depart?

Lǎo Chén dēi zuò When does the train that Old Chen must take depart?

Xià yítàng dào Tiānjīn When does the next train for Tianjin depart?

3. Tā yīdiǎn èrshí dào. She arrives at 1:20.

liǎngdiǎn She arrives at 2:20.

sāndiǎn She arrives at 3:20.

sìdiǎn She arrives at 4:20.

wǔdiǎn She arrives at 5:20.

liùdiǎn She arrives at 6:20.

qīdiǎn She arrives at 7:20.

bādiǎn She arrives at 8:20.

jiǔdiǎn	She arrives at 9:20.
shídiǎn	She arrives at 10:20.
shíyīdiǎn	She arrives at 11:20.
shí'èrdiǎn	She arrives at 12:20.
yīdiǎn	She arrives at 1:20.

4. Jiǔdiǎn èrshí. 9:20.

bàn. 9:30.

sānkè. 9:45.

wǔshí. 9:50.

wǔfēn. 9:05.

shífēn. 9:10.

yíkè. 9:15.

èrshí. 9:20.

5. Kǒngpà láibujíle. I'm afraid you're not going to make
nín it.

gǎocuòle. I'm afraid you got it wrong.

lèile. I'm afraid you're tired.

kùngle. I'm afraid you've gotten sleepy.

děi I'm afraid you have to go now.
zǒule.

láibujíle. I'm afraid you're not going to make
it.

6. Nà, wǒ jiù shídiǎn In that case, I'll take the 10:30
zuò bàn de. one.

liùdiǎn yíkè In that case, I'll take the 6:15
one.

qīdiǎn sānkè In that case, I'll take the 7:45
one.

bādiǎn wǔfēn In that case, I'll take the 8:05 one.

jiǔdiǎn èrshí In that case, I'll take the 9:20 one.

wǔdiǎn bàn In that case, I'll take the 5:30 one.

sìdiǎn yíkè In that case, I'll take the 4:15 one.

shídiǎn bàn In that case, I'll take the 10:30 one.

7. Dào Tiānjīn yào duō cháng How long does it take to get
shíjiān? to Tianjin?

Fǎguo How long does it take to get
to France?

túshūguǎn How long does it take to get
to the library?

shítáng How long does it take to get
to the cafeteria?

sùshè How long does it take to get
to the dormitory?

Déguo How long does it take to get
to Germany?

Tiānjīn How long does it take to get
to Tianjin?

8. Chàbùduō liǎngge It takes about two and a half
yào bàn zhōngtóu. hours.

bàn'ge It takes about half an hour.

yíge bàn It takes about one and a half
hours.

sān'ge It takes about three and a
bàn half hours.

yíge It takes about one hour.

qīge bàn It takes about seven and a
half hours.

liǎngge
bàn

It takes about two and a half
hours.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 4, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Qǐng yǔyán jǐdiǎn
wèn, shíyànshì zhōng
kāimén? Excuse me, what time does
the language lab open?

túshūguǎn Excuse me, what time does
the library open?

shítáng Excuse me, what time does
the cafeteria open?

dàshǐguǎn Excuse me, what time does
the embassy open?

màoyì
gōngsī Excuse me, what time does
the trading company open?

shíyànshì	Excuse me, what time does the laboratory open?
yǔyán shíyànshì	Excuse me, what time does the language lab open?
2. Qǐng yǔyán jǐdiǎn zhōng wèn, shíyànshì guānmén?	Excuse me, what time does the language lab close?
túshūguǎn	Excuse me, what time does the library close?
shítáng	Excuse me, what time does the cafeteria close?
dàshǐguǎn	Excuse me, what time does the embassy close?
màoyì gōngsī	Excuse me, what time does the trading company close?
shíyànshì	Excuse me, what time does the laboratory close?
yǔyán shíyànshì	Excuse me, what time does the language lab close?

3. Měitiān
zǎoshang bādiǎn kāimén. It opens at 8:00 A.M.
every day.

qīdiǎn bàn It opens at 7:30 A.M.
every day.

shídiǎn
yíkè It opens at 10:15 A.M.
every day.

liùdiǎn
bàn It opens at 6:30 A.M.
every day.

jiǔdiǎn
sānkè It opens at 9:45 A.M.
every day.

shídiǎn
wǔfēn It opens at 10:05 A.M.
every day.

bādiǎn It opens at 8:00 A.M.
every day.

4. Wǎnshang jiǔdiǎn bàn guānmén. It closes at 9:30 P.M.

shídiǎn bàn It closes at 10:30 P.M.

bādiǎn yíkè It closes at 8:15 P.M.

liùdiǎn sānkè It closes at 6:45 P.M.

qīdiǎn It closes at 7:00 P.M.

jiǔdiǎn bàn It closes at 9:30 P.M.

5. Xīngqīliù kāi bu kāi? Is it open on Saturday?

Xīngqīyī Is it open on Monday?

Xīngqī'èr Is it open on Tuesday?

Xīngqīsān Is it open on Wednesday?

Xīngqīsì Is it open on Thursday?

Xīngqīwǔ Is it open on Friday?

Xīngqītīān Is it open on Sunday?

Xīngqīrì Is it open on Sunday?

Xīngqīliù Is it open on Saturday?

6. Lǐbàiliù kāi bàntiān. It's open half-days on Saturday.

Lǐbàiyī It's open half-days on Monday.

Lǐbài'èr It's open half-days on Tuesday.

Lǐbàisān It's open half-days on Wednesday.

Lǐbàisi It's open half-days on Thursday.

Lǐbàiwǔ It's open half-days on Friday.

Lǐbàitiān It's open half-days on Sunday.

Lǐbàiri It's open half-days on Sunday.

Lǐbàiliù It's open half-days on Saturday.

7. Xīngqītiān xiūxi. He rests on Sundays.

Zǎoshang It's closed in the morning.

Wǎnshang It's closed in the evening.

Shàngwǔ It's closed mornings.

Xiàwǔ It's closed afternoons.

Shàngge xīngqī It was closed last week.

Zhèige xīngqī It's closed this week.

Xiàge xīngqī It's closed next week.

Píngcháng It's ordinarily closed.

Měitiān dōu It's closed every day.

Xīngqītiān He rests on Sundays.

8. Wǒ píngcháng qīdiǎn qǐchuáng. I usually get up from
zǎoshàng bed at 7:00.

wǔdiǎn I usually get up from
bàn bed at 5:30.

liùdiǎn I usually get up from
yíkè bed at 6:15.

	bādiǎn bàn		I usually get up from bed at 8:30.
	jiǔdiǎn sānkè		I usually get up from bed at 9:45.
	qīdiǎn èrshí		I usually get up from bed at 7:20.
	qīdiǎn		I usually get up from bed at 7:00.
9. Wǒ píngcháng	shíyīdiǎn zhōng	shuìjiào.	I usually go to bed at 11:00.
	liǎngdiǎn bàn		I usually go to bed at 2:30.
	shídiǎn yíkè		I usually go to bed at 10:15.
	shí'èrdiǎn sānkè		I usually go to bed at 12:45.
	sāndiǎn zhōng		I usually go to bed at 3:00.

yīdiǎn bàn I usually go to bed at
1:30.

liǎngdiǎn
yíkè I usually go to bed at
2:15.

shíyīdiǎn I usually go to bed at
11:00.

Wǒ
10. píngcháng qíge zhōngtóu. I usually sleep for seven
měitiān shuì hours every day.

báge I usually sleep for eight
hours every day.

liùge
bàn I usually sleep for six
and a half hours every
day.

sìge I usually sleep for four
hours every day.

wūge
bàn I usually sleep for five
and a half hours every
day.

shí'èrge	I usually sleep for twelve hours every day.
shíge	I usually sleep for ten hours every day.
qíge	I usually sleep for seven hours every day.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 4, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

- | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|--------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Nǐ | jiào míngzi? | shémmē | What is your name? |
| Tā | | | What is her name? |
| Nǐ àirén | | | What is your spouse's name? |
| Nǐde hái zi | | | What is your child's name? |

Nǐde
tóngwū What is your roommate's
name?

Nǐde
tóngxué What is your classmate's
name?

Nèiwèi
tóngshì What is that colleague's
name?

Nǐ What is your name?

2. Nǐ shì nǐnián In what year were you
chūshēngde? born?

Tā In what year was she born?

Gāo
Xiānsheng In what year was Mr. Gao
born?

Bái Xiáojie In what year was Ms. Bai
born?

Lǎo Wáng In what year was Old
Wang born?

Xiǎo Lín	In what year was Little Lin born?
Tāmen	In what year were they born?
Chén Tàitai	In what year was Mrs. Chen born?
Nǐ	In what year were you born?

3. Wǒ shì yī-jiǔ-qī-jiǔ-nián chūshēngde. I was born in 1979.

yī-jiǔ-bā-líng-nián I was born in 1980.

yī-jiǔ-bā-yī-nián I was born in 1981.

yī-jiǔ-bā-èr-nián I was born in 1982.

yī-jiǔ-jiǔ-sān-nián I was born in 1993.

yī-jiǔ-jiǔ-sì-nián I was born in 1994.

yī-jiǔ-jiǔ-wǔ-nián I was born in 1995.

yī-jǐ-qī-jǐ-nián

I was born in 1979.

4. Wǒde shēngri shì yuè shísānhào. My birthday is April 13th.
shi

shíyuè yīhào. My birthday is October
1st.

sānyuè èrshibāhào. My birthday is March
28th.

jiǔyuè sìhào. My birthday is September
4th.

liùyuè èrshíhào. My birthday is June 20th

wǔyuè sānhào. My birthday is May 3rd.

yīyuè sānshíhào. My birthday is January
30th.

shìyuè shísānhào. My birthday is April 13th.

5. Wénhuà Lù sìhào

4 Culture Road

sānbǎi èrshisānhào 323 Culture Road

bābǎi líng wǔhào 805 Culture Road

shísānhào 13 Culture Road

sānshihào 30 Culture Road

jiǔhào 9 Culture Road

sìbǎi wǔshiwǔhào 455 Culture Road

sìhào 4 Culture Road

6. Héping yī duàn Number 4, Hoping East Road
Dōng Lù sìhào. Section One.

èr Number 4, Hoping East Road
Section Two.

sān Number 4, Hoping East Road
Section Three.

sì Number 4, Hoping East Road
Section Four.

	wǔ	Number 4, Hoping East Road Section Five.
	liù	Number 4, Hoping East Road Section Six.
	qī	Number 4, Hoping East Road Section Seven.
	yī	Number 4, Hoping East Road Section One.
7. Tiānjīn Lù	èrxiàng qīhào.	Number 7, Lane 2, Tianjin Road.
	yīxiàng	Number 7, Lane 1, Tianjin Road.
	sānxiàng	Number 7, Lane 3, Tianjin Road.
	sìxiàng	Number 7, Lane 4, Tianjin Road.
	wǔxiàng	Number 7, Lane 5, Tianjin Road.

liùxiàng Number 7, Lane 6, Tianjin Road.

qīxiàng Number 7, Lane 7, Tianjin Road.

èrxiàng Number 7, Lane 2, Tianjin Road.

8. Tā yào qù jǐ lóu? What floor does she want to go to?

yī lóu. She wants to go to the first floor.

èr lóu. She wants to go to the second floor.

sān lóu. She wants to go to the third floor.

sì lóu. She wants to go to the fourth floor.

wǔ lóu. She wants to go to the fifth floor.

liù lóu. She wants to go to the sixth floor.

qī lóu. She wants to go to the seventh floor.

jǐlóu? What floor does she want to go to?

9. Qǐng nǐ děng Could you wait a moment,
 yíxià. please?

tā Could she wait a moment,
 please?

tāmen Could they wait a moment,
 please?

Zhào Could Mr. Zhao wait a moment,
Xiānsheng please?

Xiè Tàitai Could Mrs. Xie wait a moment,
 please?

Wáng Could Miss Wang wait a
Xiáojie moment, please?

Lǎo Zhāng Could Old Zhang wait a
 moment, please?

Xiǎo Mǎ Could Little Ma wait a moment,
 please?

nǐ Could you wait a moment,
please?

10. Jīntiān jīnyuè
 jīhào? What is today's date?

Míngtiān What is tomorrow's date?

Zuótiān What was yesterday's date?

Jīnnián Which month and which day this
year?

Míngnián Which month and which day next
year?

Qùnián Which month and which day last
year?

Nǐde
shēngrì When is your birthday?

Jīntiān What is today's date?

11. Jīnnián shì nǎinián? What year is this year?

Míngnián What year will it be next year?

Qùnián What year was it last year?

Jīnnián What year is this year?

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 4, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Zhè shì cì dào How many times has he been
tā dì jǐ Zhōngguo lái ? to China?

yī This is his first time in
China.

èr This is his second time in
China.

sān This is his third time in
China.

sì This is his fourth time in
· China.

wǔ This is his fifth time in
· China.

liù This is his sixth time in
· China.

qī This is his seventh time in
· China.

bā This is his eighth time in
· China.

jiǔ This is his ninth time in
· China.

jǐ ? How many times has he been
to China?

2. Zhè shì wǒ dì èr cì lái. This is my second time here.

yī This is my first time here.

sān This is my third time here.

sì This is my fourth time here.

wǔ This is my fifth time here.

liù This is my sixth time here.

qī This is my seventh time here.

bā This is my eighth time here.

jiǔ This is my ninth time here.

èr This is my second time here.

3. Dì yí ge rén shì shéi? Who was the first person?

èr Who was the second person?

sān Who was the third person?

sì Who was the fourth person?

wǔ Who was the fifth person?

liù Who was the sixth person?

qī Who was the seventh person?

bā Who was the eighth person?

jiǔ Who was the ninth person?

shí Who was the tenth person?

yí Who was the first person?

4. Yǒu wèi lǎoshī yě Interesting, the 2nd teacher's
yìsi, dì èr xìng Wáng! surname was also Wang!

sān Interesting, the 3rd teacher's
surname was also Wang!

sì Interesting, the 4th teacher's
surname was also Wang!

wǔ Interesting, the 5th teacher's
surname was also Wang!

liù	Interesting, the 6th teacher's surname was also Wang!
qī	Interesting, the 7th teacher's surname was also Wang!
bā	Interesting, the 8th teacher's surname was also Wang!
èr	Interesting, the 2nd teacher's surname was also Wang!

5. Wǒ lái guo. I've been here before.

qù I've been there before.

wèn I've asked before.

mǎi I've bought them before.

mài I've sold them before.

lái I've been here before.

6. Tā lái guo yí cì . She has been here once.

liǎng . She has been here twice.

sān . She has been here three times.

sì . She has been here four times.

wǔ . She has been here five times.

liù . She has been here six times.

qī . She has been here seven times.

bā . She has been here eight times.

jiǔ . She has been here nine times.

shí . She has been here ten times

jǐ ? How many times has she been here?

yí . She has been here once.

7. Lǎo Zhào zuò guo. Old Zhao has never taken one (e.g., a
méi train) before.

mǎi Old Zhao has never bought one before.

mài Old Zhao has never sold one before.

shuō Old Zhao has never said it before.

zuò Old Zhao has never taken one before.

8. Tā zhècì
yào zhù duō jiǔ? How long will he stay this time?

liǎngtiān. He will stay for two days this time.

liǎngge He will stay for two weeks this time.
xīngqī.

liǎngge He will stay for two months this time.
yuè.

liǎngnián. He will stay for two years this time.

bàn'ge He will stay for half a month this time.
yuè.

yíge bàn He will stay for one and a half
yuè. months this time.

duō jiǔ? How long will he stay this time?

9. Wǒ míngtiān guó. I'll return to my native country
huí tomorrow.

jiā. I'll go home tomorrow.

sùshè. I'll return to my dorm tomorrow.

xuéxiào. I'll return to school tomorrow.

guó. I'll return to my native country
tomorrow.

10. Nǐ nǎige fángjiān? In which room are you staying?
zhù

jǐhào What is the number of the room in
which you are staying?

shéide Whose room are you staying in?

něige In which room are you staying?

11. Tā zhù sān líng liù. She is staying in 306.

èr jiǔ bā. She is staying in 298.

sùshè. She is staying in the dormitory.

wǒ jiā. She is staying in my home.

něige fángjiān? Which room is she staying in?

wǒde fángjiān. She is staying in my room.

nǎr? Where is she staying?

sān líng liù. She is staying in 306.

12. Tā What did he say
xiān shuōle shémme? first? What did he
ránhòu shuōle shémme? say then?

zuòle What did he do
zuòle first? What did he
do then?

wènle wènle What did he ask
first? What did he
ask then?

mǎile mǎile What did he buy
first? What did he
buy then?

kànle kànle What did he look at
first? What did he
look at then?

shuōle shuōle What did he say
first? What did he
say then?

13. Nǐ shì lái Did you come to my house the
bu shì lái day before yesterday?
qiántiān láiguo wǒ jiā?

zuótiān Did you come to my house
yesterday?

jīntiān Did you come to my house this
shàngwǔ morning?

qiánnián Did you come to my house the
year before last?

qùnián Did you come to my house last
year?

jīnnián
èryuè Did you come to my house
February of this year?

qiántiān Did you come to my house the
day before yesterday?

Bái
14. Xiānsheng jīnnián bù Mr. Bai says he won't return
shuō tā huíguó. to his country this year.

míngnián Mr. Bai says he won't return
to his country next year.

hòunián Mr. Bai says he won't return
to his country the year after
next.

xiàge
yuè Mr. Bai says he won't return
to his country next month.

xiàge
xīngqī Mr. Bai says he won't return
to his country next week.

míngtiān Mr. Bai says he won't return
to his country tomorrow.

hòutiān Mr. Bai says he won't return
to his country the day after
tomorrow.

jīnnián Mr. Bai says he won't return
to his country this year.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 4, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Qǐng yǒu
wèn, Zhōngguo duōshǎo Excuse me, how many people
 rén? are there in China?

Měiguó Excuse me, how many people
are there in the United States?

Fǎguo Excuse me, how many people
are there in France?

Déguo Excuse me, how many people
are there in Germany?

Rìběn Excuse me, how many people
are there in Japan?

Yīngguo Excuse me, how many people
are there in England?

Zhōngguo Excuse me, how many people
are there in China?

2. Chàbuduō shísānyì rén. There are about 1.3 billion
yǒu people.

liùqiān There are about 6,000
people.

sānwàn There are about 30,000
people.

èrshiwǔwàn There are about 250,000
people.

yībǎiwàn There are about 1 million people.

liǎngqiānwàn There are about 20 million people.

yíyì There are about 100 million people.

shísānyì There are about 1.3 billion people.

3. Nánjīng de rénkǒu bǐjiào shǎo. The population of Nanjing is smaller.

Tiānjīn The population of Tianjin is smaller.

Běijīng The population of Beijing is smaller.

Yīngguo The population of England is smaller.

Xīnjiāpō The population of Singapore is smaller.

Nánjīng

The population of Nanjing is smaller.

4. Běijīng Dōng Lù
bǐjiào hǎo.

Beijing East Road is better.

guì.

Beijing East Road is more expensive.

piányi. Beijing East Road is cheaper.

dà. Beijing East Road is bigger.

xiǎo. Beijing East Road is smaller.

duō. Beijing East Road has more.

shǎo. Beijing East Road has less.

hǎo. Beijing East Road is better.

5. Hǎoxiàng Nánjīng zhǐ yǒu
wǔbǎiwàn rén.

Apparently, Nanjing only has 5 million people.

měitiān dōu yǒu Apparently, we have Chinese
Zhōngwén kè. class every day.

zhè shì tā dìyí cì Apparently, this is her first
dào Zhōngguó. time in China.

yǔyán shíyànshì bù Apparently, the language lab
kāimén. is not open.

tāmen méi dài Apparently, they didn't bring
míngpiàn. name cards.

Nánjīng zhǐ yǒu Apparently, Nanjing only
wǔbǎiwàn rén. has 5 million people.

6. Xiǎo Sūn táokè. Little Sun often skips class.
chángcháng

chídào. Little Sun is often late.

bù lái. Little Sun often doesn't
come.

bù lái Little Sun often doesn't come
shàngkè. to class.

táokè. Little Sun often skips class.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 5, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Wǒ xiǎng Wáng
zhǎo yixiar Xiáojie. I'm looking for Miss Wang.

Kē Léi'ēn
Xiānsheng. I'm looking for Mr. Ke Leien.

Zhāng
Xiǎomíng
tóngxué. I'm looking for a student by the
name of Zhang Xiaoming.

Xiè Tàitai. I'm looking for Mrs. Xie.

Chén Lǎoshī. I'm looking for Instructor Chen.

Mǎ
Xiàozhǎng. I'm looking for Principal Ma.

Wú lǎobǎn. I'm looking for boss Wu.

Luó jīnglǐ. I'm looking for manager Luo.

Wáng
Xiáojie. I'm looking for Miss Wang.

2. Qǐng wèn, tā zài zài? bu Excuse me, is he there?

nǐ bàba Excuse me, is your dad here?

nǐ māma Excuse me, is your mom here?

Bái Xiáojie Excuse me, is Miss Bai in?

Hóu
Xiānsheng Excuse me, is Mr. Hou in?

Shī Tàitai Excuse me, is Mrs. Shi in?

Gāo
Zōngjīnglǐ Excuse me, is General Manager Gao in?

wǒ didi Excuse me, is my brother there?

tā

Excuse me, is he there?

3. Xiǎo Kēlǎobǎnde Little Ke is now in the
xiànzài zài bàngōngshì. boss' office.

nǎr? Where is Little Ke now?

Xiānggǎng. Little Ke is now in Hong
Kong.

túshūguǎn. Little Ke is now in the
library.

shéide In whose office is Little Ke
bàngōngshì? now?

Yīngguo. Little Ke is now in
England.

Xībānyá. Little Ke is now in Spain.

Měiguó Little Ke is now at the U.S.
Dàshǐguǎn. Embassy.

nèige fángjiān. Little Ke is now in that
room.

lǎobǎnde Little Ke is now in the
bàngōngshì. boss' office.

4. Hǎoxiàng Lǎo jiā. Apparently, Old Xie is not at
Xiè bú zài jiā. home.

zhèr. Apparently, Old Xie is not
here.

bàngōngshì. Apparently, Old Xie is not at
the office.

wǒde Apparently, Old Xie is not in
fángjiān. my room.

tāde gōngsī. Apparently, Old Xie is not at
his company.

tāde sùshè. Apparently, Old Xie is not in
his dorm.

shítáng. Apparently, Old Xie is not in
the cafeteria.

Wàijiāobù. Apparently, Old Xie is not at
the Foreign Ministry.

nàr. Apparently, Old Xie is not there.

jiā. Apparently, Old Xie is not at home.

5. Nēiwèi Wáng Xiáojie? Which Miss Wang?

Gāo Nǚshì? Which Madam Gao?

Hé Xiānsheng? Which Mr. He?

Lín Jīnglǐ? Which manager Lin?

Zhào Xiàozhǎng? Which Principal Zhao?

Mǎ Lǎoshī? Which Professor Ma?

Wáng Xiáojie? Which Miss Wang?

6. Wǒ bù tāde Zhōngwén míngzi. I don't know her Chinese name.
zhīdào

tāde Yīngwén míngzi. I don't know her English name.

lǎobǎn xiànzài zài nǎr. I don't know where the boss is.

yīnggāi zěmme bàn. I don't know what I should do.

nǐ shuō shémme. I don't know what you are saying.

tā yào shémme. I don't know what she wants.

kě bu kéyi. I don't know whether or not it's O.K.

zhuōzi, yǐzi shì shéide. I don't know to whom the tables and chairs belong.

tāde Zhōngwén míngzi. I don't know her Chinese name.

7. Nǐ zhīdao tāde Zhōngwén míngzi ma? Do you know her Chinese name?

tā yào mǎi shémme. Do you know what she wants to buy?

tā xiànzài zài nǎr Do you know where she is
now?

Wáng Xiáojie zài Do you know whether Miss
bàngōngshì Wang is at the office?

tā shì shéi Do you know who she is?

tā qù nǎr Do you know where she
went?

tāde Zhōngwén Do you know her Chinese
míngzi name?

8. Nǐ zhīdao tāde Zhōngwén Do you know her Chinese
bu zhīdao míngzi? name?

tā didi jiào Do you know the name of
shémme? her brother?

tāde tóngwū shi Do you know who her
shéi? roommate is?

Chén Xiàozhǎng Did you know President
shi wǒ gēge? Chen is my brother?

shéi chángcháng Do you know who often
táokè? skips class?

shéi chángcháng Do you know who is often
chídào? late for class?

tāde Zhōngwén Do you know her Chinese
míngzi? name?

Ò,
9. zhīdaole.
Nèige rén

wǒ jiào Wáng Oh, I know. That person is
Guólì. Wang Guoli.

shi tāde Oh, I know. That person is
mèimei. her younger sister.

shi Mǎ Lǎoshī. Oh, I know. That person is
Professor Ma.

shi Xiǎo Lǐde Oh, I know. That person is
xīn lǎobǎn. Little Li's new boss.

shi Lǎo Báide Oh, I know. That person is
tóngshì. Old Bai's colleague.

jiào Wáng Oh, I know. That person is
Guólì. Wang Guoli.

10. Wǒ kě bu gěi tā liú yíge Can I leave her a note?
kéyi tiáozi?

gěi nǐ jièshào wǒde Can I introduce my
tóngwū? roommate to you?

jīntiān wǎnshang qù Can I go and look for you
zhǎo nǐ? tonight?

jiào nǐ Xiǎo Chén? Can I call you Little
Chen?

zuò huǒchē? Can I take the train?

mǎi bēibāo? Can I purchase a
bookbag?

xuéxí Zhōngwén? Can I study Chinese?

gěi tā liú yíge Can I leave her a note?
tiáozi?

11. Yàoshi tā bú zài zěmme nǐ
bàn? If he isn't in, what will you do?

tā zǒule If he leaves, what will you do?

tā bú rènshi nǐ If he doesn't recognize you, what will you do?

tā chídào If he is late, what will you do?

nǐ gǎocuòle If you got it wrong, what will you do?

tā bù lái If he doesn't come, what will you do?

tā bú zài If he isn't in, what will you do?

12. Zhèi zhāng zhuōzi zhèi bǎ This table and this
gēn yǐzi chair.

Nèi	nèi	That table and that chair.
Měi	měi	Every table and every chair.
Yi	yì	One table and one chair.
Liǎng	liǎng	Two tables and two chairs.
Jǐ	jǐ	? How many tables and how many chairs?
Duōshǎo	duōshǎo	? How many tables and how many chairs?
Něi	něi	? Which table and which chair?
Zhèi	zhèi	This table and this chair.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 5, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Qǐng zhèige wèizi yǒu rén Excuse me, is this seat
wèn, ma? taken?

nèige wèizi Excuse me, is that seat
taken?

zhèizhāng Excuse me, is this table
zhuōzi taken?

nèibǎ yǐzi Excuse me, is that chair
taken?

zhèr Excuse me, is someone
here?

zhèige wèizi Excuse me, is this seat
taken?

2. Qǐng zhèige yǒu méiyǒu Excuse me, is there
wèn, wèizi rén? anyone in this

seat?

nèige wèizi Excuse me, is there
anyone in that
seat?

nèizhāng
zhuōzi Excuse me, is there
anyone at that
table?

zhèibā yǐzi Excuse me, is there
anyone at this
chair?

nàr Excuse me, is there
anyone there?

zhèige
wèizi Excuse me, is there
anyone in this
seat?

3. Zhèige wèizi xiànzài Right now, there is nobody
méiyǒu rén. in this seat.

Nèige wèizi	Right now, there is nobody in that seat.
Něige wèizi	? Right now, which seat is not taken?
Zhèzhāng zhuōzi	Right now, this table is not taken.
Nèizhāng zhuōzi	Right now, that table is not taken.
Něizhāng zhuōzi	? Right now, which table is not taken?
Zhèige wèizi	Right now, there is nobody in this seat.
4. Nín cháng lái chī zhèr wǔfàn	ma? Do you often come here to eat lunch?
chī zhōngfàn	Do you often come here to eat lunch?
chī zǎofàn	Do you often come here to eat breakfast?

chī
wǎnfàn Do you often come here to eat
dinner?

chīfàn Do you often come here to
eat?

mǎi bēizi Do you often come here to
buy cups?

xuéxí Do you often come here to
study?

xiūxi Do you often come here to
rest?

chī
wǔfàn Do you often come here to eat
lunch?

Nǐ
5. chángcháng túshūguǎn xuéxí Do you often study in the
zài ma? library?

sùshè Do you often study in the
dormitory?

bàngōngshì	Do you often study in the office?
shítáng	Do you often study in the cafeteria?
nǐde fángjiān	Do you often study in your room?
gōngsī	Do you often study at the company?
túshūguǎn	Do you often study in the library?

6. Wǒ cháng zài zhè chīfàn. I often eat here.

gōngzuò. I often work here.

xiūxi. I often rest here.

xuéxí. I often study here.

shuìjiào. I often sleep here.

chīfàn. I often eat here.

Tā
7. bàba píxié chǎng gōngzuò. Her father works at a shoe
zài factory.

Zhōngguo Her father works at the
Wàijiāobù Chinese foreign ministry.

Měiguó Her father works at the U.S.
dàshǐguǎn Embassy.

Déguo Her father works at the
Wénhuà German Cultural Center.
Zhōngxīn

Zhōng-Měi Her father works at
Màoyì Sino-American Trading
Gōngsī Company.

yìjiā hěn dàde Her father works in a very
gōngsī large company.

Wéilián Her father works at the
Dàxué Williams College library.
túshūguǎn

píxié chǎng Her father works at a shoe
factory.

8. Wǒ xué
zài Zhōngwén. I'm studying Chinese here.

nàr I'm studying Chinese there.

Běidà I'm studying Chinese at
Peking University.

Táidà I'm studying Chinese at
Taiwan University.

Gǎngdà I'm studying Chinese at the
University of Hong Kong.

Xiānggǎng
Zhōngwén
Dàxué I'm studying Chinese at
Chinese Univ. of Hong
Kong.

Zhōngguo
dàshǐguǎn I'm studying Chinese at the
Chinese Embassy.

Hànyǔ péixùn
zhōngxīn

I'm studying Chinese at the
Chinese language training
center.

Hànyǔ
zhōngxīn

I'm studying Chinese at the
Chinese center.

zhèr

I'm studying Chinese here.

9. Nín píngcháng zài
nǎr xuéxí?

Where do you usually study?

chīfàn? Where do you usually eat?

gōngzuò? Where do you usually work?

xiūxi? Where do you usually rest?

shuìjiào? Where do you usually sleep?

zuò? Where do you usually sit?

mǎi
bēizi? Where do you usually buy
cups?

shàngkè? Where do you usually attend
class?

xuéxí? Where do you usually study?

10. Yò! le. Wǒ Gosh! It's almost one o'clock. I
Kuài yīdiǎn de. ǒuought to be going now.

liùdiǎn Gosh! It's almost six o'clock. I
ought to be going now.

zhōngwǔ Gosh! It's almost noon. I ought
to be going now.

chí dào Gosh! I'm almost late. I ought
to be going now.

shàngkè Gosh! Class will start soon. I
ought to be going now.

guānmén Gosh! It's going to close soon. I
ought to be going now.

yīdiǎn Gosh! It's almost one o'clock. I
ought to be going now.

11. Xiǎo Bái, nǐ bù chīfàn! Little Bai, you can't eat!
kéyi
- guānmén! Little Bai, you can't close the door!
- táokè! Little Bai, you can't skip classes!
- shuìjiào! Little Bai, you can't sleep!
- kāimén! Little Bai, you can't open the door!
- huíjiā! Little Bai, you can't go home!
- shàngkè! Little Bai, you can't go to class!
- chīfàn! Little Bai, you can't eat!

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 5, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with

the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Cèsuǒ zài nǎr ? Where is the bathroom?

zhèbianr . The bathroom is over here.

nèibianr . The bathroom is over there.

zhèr . The bathroom is here.

nàr . The bathroom is there.

něibianr ? Where is the bathroom?

nǎr ? Where is the bathroom?

2. Duìbuqǐ, nǐ jiǔ Sorry, I made you wait a long
ràng děngle. time.

nín Sorry, I made you wait a long
time.

nǐmen Sorry, I made you all wait a
long time.

Lǎoshī	Sorry, Professor, I made you wait a long time.
Xiàozhǎng	Sorry, Mr. Principal, I made you wait a long time.
Zǒngjīnglǐ	Sorry, General Manager, I made you wait a long time.
nǐ	Sorry, I made you wait a long time.

3. Tā shòu le yidianr. She's gotten a little thinner.

gāo She's gotten a little taller.

ǎi She's gotten a little shorter.

lǎo She's gotten a little older.

shòu She's gotten a little thinner.

4. Mǎ Xiáojie ? Where does Miss Ma live?
zhùzai nǎr

shémme difang ? Where does Miss Ma live?

lǎo difang Miss Ma is staying at the
· same place as before.

fāndiàn Miss Ma is staying at the
· hotel.

sān-líng-yī-hào Miss Ma is staying in room
fángjiān · 301.

sùshè Miss Ma is staying in the
· dormitory.

jiā · Miss Ma is living at home.

shéide fángjiān ? In whose room is Miss Ma
· staying?

zhèr · Miss Ma is staying here.

nèibianr Miss Ma is staying over
· there.

zhèibianr · Miss Ma is staying over here.

6. Wǒ míngnián yào Xiāng
bāndao Shān le. I'll move to Fragrant Hills
next year.

nèige
sùshè I'll move to that dorm next
year.

tāde
fángjiān I'll move to her room next
year.

nǐ jiā I'll move to your home next
year.

Tiānjīn I'll move to Tianjin next
year.

dàxué
sùshè I'll move to the college
dorm next year.

Xiāng
Shān I'll move to Fragrant Hills
next year.

7. Qǐng zhùzai wǒ zhèr, hǎo Please stay at my place,
nǐ ma? O.K.?

zuòzai Please sit here, O.K.?

bāndao Please move to my place,
O.K.?

shuìzai Please sleep at my place,
O.K.?

zhùzai Please stay at my place,
O.K.?

8. Nǐmen bān ^{dao} nǎr Where did you move to?
le?

xué Where did you learn up to?

zuò Where did you take it (bus/tram/
train) up to?

shuō Up to what point did you get in
talking?

wèn Where did you ask up to?

bān Where did you move to?

Nǐ shuōde nèige
9. dìfang zài Běijīng běibiānr.
chéngde The place you mentioned is
in the northern part of
Beijing.

nánbiānr. The place you mentioned is
in the southern part of
Beijing.

dōngbiānr. The place you mentioned is
in the eastern part of
Beijing.

xībiānr. The place you mentioned is
in the western part of
Beijing.

něibiānr? Where in Beijing is the
place you mentioned?

běibiānr. The place you mentioned is
in the northern part of
Beijing.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 5, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with

the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Xiǎo Hé yì tái xīn Little He bought a new
mǎile diànnǎo. computer.

liǎng Little He bought two new
computers.

sān Little He bought three new
computers.

sì Little He bought four new
computers.

wǔ Little He bought five new
computers.

liù Little He bought six new
computers.

qī Little He bought seven new
computers.

jǐ ? How many new computers did
Little He buy?

yì Little He bought a new
computer.

2. Wǒ mǎile yítái shūfáng li. I bought a new computer,
xīn diànnǎo, zài it's in the study.

fángjiān I bought a new computer,
it's in the room.

zhè I bought a new computer,
it's here.

nà I bought a new computer,
it's there.

gōngsī I bought a new computer,
it's at the company.

chǎng (→ I bought a new computer,
cháng) it's at the factory.

túshūguǎn (→ I bought a new computer,
túshūguǎn) it's in the library.

bàngōngshì I bought a new computer,
it's in the office.

shūfǎng I bought a new computer,
 it's in the study.

3. Kāiguān zài pángbiān. The switch is on the side.

nàr. The switch is there.

zuǒbian. The switch is on the left.

zhèr. The switch is here.

yòubian. The switch is on the right.

xiàbian. The switch is on the bottom.

wàibian. The switch is on the outside.

shàngbian. The switch is on top.

qiánbian. The switch is in the front.

nèibian. The switch is over there.

lǐbian. The switch is on the inside.

hòubian. The switch is in the back.

dǐxia. The switch is on the bottom.

pángbiān. The switch is on the side.

4. Shǐyòng
shǒucè zài shūjià shang. The instruction manual is on the
bookshelf.

zhuōzi The instruction manual is on the
table.

yǐzi The instruction manual is on the
chair.

bēibāo The instruction manual is on top
of the backpack.

dàizi The instruction manual is on top
of the bag.

shūjià The instruction manual is on the
bookshelf.

5. Bēizi zài nǐ zuǒbian de nèige shūjiàshang. The cup is on the bookcase to your left.

yòubian The cup is on the bookcase to your right.

qiánmian The cup is on the bookcase in front of you.

hòumian The cup is on the bookcase behind you.

pángbiān The cup is on the bookcase next to you.

zuǒbian The cup is on the bookcase to your left.

6. Zhuōzi dīxia shi shémme What is that under the table?
dōngxī a?

Yǐzishang What is that on the chair?

Shūjiàshang What is that on the bookcase?

tāmen! Don't concern yourself with them!

ta! Don't worry about it!

8. Qián zài qiánmian. The money is in front of the cup.
bēizide

hòumian. The money is behind the cup.

lǐmiàn. The money is inside the cup.

wàimian. The money is outside of the cup.

shàngmian. The money is on top of the cup.

xiàmian. The money is under the cup.

zuǒbianr. The money is to the left of the cup.

yòubianr. The money is to the right of the cup.

pángbiān. The money is next to the cup.

qiánmian. The money is in front of the cup.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 6, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Shūshu , nǐ hǎo! Uncle, how are you?

Āyí Auntie, how are you?

Xiǎo dìdi Little brother, how are you?

Xiǎo mèimei Little sister, how are you?

Xiǎo péngyou Little friend, how are you?

Bàba Dad, how are you?

Māma Mom, how are you?

Shūshu Uncle, how are you?

2. Nǐ xiǎoxué le I suppose you're already attending
shàng ba? elementary school?

chūzhōng I suppose you're already attending
junior middle school?

gāozhōng I suppose you're already attending
high school?

zhōngxué I suppose you're already attending
middle school?

dàxué I suppose you're already attending
college?

xiǎoxué I suppose you're already attending
elementary school?

3. Nǐ dàxué jǐniánjí? What year are you in college?

xiǎoxué What year are you in elementary school?

chūzhōng What year are you in middle school?

gāozhōng What year are you in high school?

dàxué What year are you in college?

4. Wǒ dìdì yǐjīng shàng xiǎoxué yīniánjí le. My younger brother is already in the first grade.

èrniánjí My younger brother is already in the second grade.

sānniánjí My younger brother is already in the third grade.

sìniánjí My younger brother is already in the fourth grade.

wǔniánjí My younger brother is already in the fifth grade.

liùniánjí My younger brother is already in the sixth grade.

yīniánjí My younger brother is
already in the first grade.

5. Wǒ mèimei shàng chū yī le. My younger sister is in the first year of
junior middle school.

èr My younger sister is in the second
year of junior middle school.

sān My younger sister is in the third year
of junior middle school.

yī My younger sister is in the first year of
junior middle school.

6. Wǒ gēge shàng gāo yī le. My older brother is in his sophomore
year of high school.

èr My older brother is in his junior year
of high school.

sān My older brother is in his senior year
of high school.

yī My older brother is in his sophomore
year of high school.

7. Wǒ jiějie yǐjīng yī le. My older sister is already a
shàng dà first-year student in college.

èr My older sister is already a
sophomore in college.

sān My older sister is already a junior in
college.

sì My older sister is already a senior in
college.

yī My older sister is already a
first-year student in college.

8. Zhè shì wǒ sònggei lǐwù. This is a little present I'm
nǐde xiǎo giving you.

gǒu. This is a little dog I'm giving
you.

dōngxi. This is a little thing I'm
giving you.

bēizi. This is a little cup I'm giving
you.

yǐzi. This is a little chair I'm giving you.

shūjià. This is a little bookcase I'm giving you.

lǐwù. This is a little present I'm giving you.

9. Tāmen màide zhēn The candy they sell is really
táng hǎochī. delicious.

hěn hǎochī. The candy they sell is delicious.

tǐng The candy they sell is quite
hǎochī. delicious.

tǐng The candy they sell is quite
hǎochīde. delicious.

tài The candy they sell is absolutely
hǎochīle. delicious.

bú tài The candy they sell doesn't taste
hǎochī. very good.

bù hǎochī. The candy they sell doesn't taste good.

hěn bù hǎochī. The candy they sell tastes bad.

tài bù hǎochīle. The candy they sell tastes awful.

zhēn hǎochī. The candy they sell is really delicious.

10. Tā shuō nǐde hēn She said your boyfriend is
nán péngyou hǎokàn. very handsome.

tǐng She said your boyfriend is
hǎokàn. quite handsome.

tǐng She said your boyfriend is
hǎokànde. quite handsome.

tài She said your boyfriend is
hǎokànle. incredibly handsome.

bú tài She said your boyfriend is not
hǎokàn. very handsome.

bù She said your boyfriend is not
hǎokàn. handsome.

hěn bù She said your boyfriend is
hǎokàn. ugly.

tài bù She said your boyfriend is
hǎokànle. very ugly.

hěn She said your boyfriend is
hǎokàn. very handsome.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 6, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Lǎo Lín Niǔyuē zhǎngdàde. Old Lin grew up in
shì zài New York.

Jiùjīnshān Old Lin grew up in San
Francisco.

Běijīng Old Lin grew up in
· Beijing.

Tiānjīn Old Lin grew up in
· Tianjin.

Guǎngzhōu Old Lin grew up in
· Guangzhou.

Shànghǎi Old Lin grew up in
· Shanghai.

Chéngdū Old Lin grew up in
· Chengdu.

nǎr ? Where did Old Lin
grow up?

Niūyuē Old Lin grew up in
· New York.

2. Nǐ shì nǎlǐ Where are you from?
rén?

Tā Where is she from?

Lǎo Gāo	Where is Old Gao from?
Xiǎo Wáng	Where is Little Wang from?
Bái Xiáojie	Where is Miss Bai from?
Wú Xiānsheng	Where is Mr. Wu from?
Xiè Tàitai	Where is Mrs. Xie from?
Chén Lǎoshī	Where is Professor Chen from?
Hóu Xiàozhǎng	Where is Principal Hou from?
Nǐ	Where are you from?

3. Nǐ kànqilai hěn niánqīng! You look very young!

lǎo! You look very old!

gāo! You look very tall!

ǎi! You look very short!

kùn! You look very sleepy!

lèi! You look very tired!

máng! You look very busy!

niánqīng! You look very young!

4. Tā hái bú dào sānshí ba? I suppose he must be under 30.

èrshí I suppose he must be under 20.

sìshí I suppose he must be under 40.

sānshiwǔ I suppose he must be under 35.

èrshiwǔ I suppose he must be under 25.

èrshiyī I suppose he must be under 21.

sānshí I suppose he must be under 30.

5. Nǐ jiéhūnle ma? Are you married?

Tā Is she married?

Lǎo Zhāng Is Old Zhang married?

Xiǎo Lǐ Is Little Li married?

Sūn Xiānsheng Is Mr. Sun married?

Luó Xiáojie Is Ms. Luo married?

Mǎ Tàitai Is Mrs. Ma married?

Shī Lǎoshī Is Teacher Shi married?

Nǐ Are you married?

6. Tā yǐjīng jiéhūn
le. She is already married.

Tā mèimei Her younger sister is already
married.

Tā didi		Her younger brother is already married.
Wǒ gēge		My older brother is already married.
Wǒ jiějie		My older sister is already married.
Kē Xiānsheng		Mr. Ke is already married.
Lín Tàitai		Mrs. Lin is already married.
Tā		She is already married.
7. Wǒ	hái jiéhūn	méi . I'm not married yet.
Shéi		? Who is not married yet?
Wáng Xiáojie		Miss Wang is not married yet.
Lǎo Chén		. Old Chen is not married yet.

Xiǎo Bái . Little Bai is not married yet.

Shī
Xiānsheng . Mr. Shi is not married yet.

Tā . She is not married yet.

Wǒ . I'm not married yet.

8. Tāmen yíge érzi, yíge nǚ'ér. They have one son and
yǒu one daughter.

liǎngge liǎngge . They have two sons and
two daughters.

sān'ge sān'ge . They have three sons
and three daughters.

sìge sìge . They have four sons and
four daughters.

jǐge jǐge ? How many sons and
daughters do they have?

yíge yíge . They have one son and
one daughter.

9. Nǐ zěmme zài zhèli
kéyi shuǐjiào ne? How can you sleep here?

zài zhèli
chīfàn How can you eat here?

zài zhèli
xiūxi How can you rest here?

chángcháng
táokè How can you frequently skip
class?

xǐhuan tā How can you like her?

shuō tā How can you say that he is
hǎokàn handsome?

zài zhèli
shuǐjiào How can you sleep here?

10. Tājié guo
liùcì hūn. She has married 6 times.

lí hūn. She has been divorced 6 times.

bān jiā. She has moved 6 times.

kāi mén. She has opened the door 6 times.

guān mén. She has closed the door 6 times.

huí guó. She has returned to her country 6 times.

huí jiā. She went home 6 times.

jié hūn. She has married 6 times.

11. Qǐng wèn, “pàng” shì shémmé yìsi? Excuse me, what is the meaning of pàng?

“lóu” Excuse me, what is the meaning of lóu?

“jīchǎng” Excuse me, what is the meaning of jīchǎng?

“yǔ” Excuse me, what is the meaning of yǔ?

“xīnxiān” Excuse me, what is the meaning of xīnxiān?

“fēng”	Excuse me, I don’t know what fēng means.
“màn”	Excuse me, I don’t know what màn means.
“pàng”	Excuse me, I don’t know what pàng means.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 6, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Wǒ nǚ’ér hái shàngxué. My daughter is not in school
méiyǒu yet.

jiéhūn. My daughter is not married yet.

xiàbān. My daughter is not off from
work yet.

gōngzuò. My daughter is not working
yet.

chīfàn. My daughter has not eaten yet.

shuìjiào. My daughter has not slept yet.

huíjiā. My daughter has not returned
home yet.

shàngxué. My daughter is not in school
yet.

2. Tāde érzi jiǔge yuè dà. Her son is 9 months old.

liùge yuè Her son is 6 months old.

liǎngge yuè Her son is 2 months old.

yíge yuè Her son is 1 month old.

yísuì Her son is a year old.

liǎngsuì Her son is 2 years old.

Táiběi
Měiguó
Xuéxiào

My aunt works at the Taipei
American School.

Měiguó Zài
Tái Xiéhuì

My aunt works at the
American Institute in
Taiwan.

Bái Táiběi
4. Lǎoshī Měiguó
zài Xuéxiào

jiāoshū. Instructor Bai teaches at
Taipei American School.

xiǎoxué

Instructor Bai teaches at the
elementary school.

chūzhōng

Instructor Bai teaches at the
junior middle school.

gāozhōng

Instructor Bai teaches at the
high school.

dàxué

Instructor Bai teaches at the
university.

Běidà

Instructor Bai teaches at
Peking University.

Nándà Instructor Bai teaches at
Nanjing University.

nǎr ? Where does Instructor Bai
teach?

Táiběi Instructor Bai teaches at
Měiguó Taipei American School.
Xuéxiào

Yīnwei háizitā zhǐ néng Because the child is still
5. hái xiǎo, gōngzuò young, she can only work
suóyi bàntiān. half-days.

hái méiyóu Because the child is still
shàngxué. young, he is not in school yet.

hái zài Because the child is still
shuìjiào. young, she is still sleeping.

bù néng Because the child is still
shàngxué. young, he cannot go to
school.

wǒmen bù Because the child is still
néng bānjiā. young, we cannot move.

tā zhǐ néng Because the child is still
gōngzuò young, she can only work
bàntiān. half-days.

Wǒ yīnwei
6. méiyǒu qián, bù néng dào Because I don't have any
suóyì Běijīng qù. money, I can't go to Beijing.

bù néng qù Because I don't have any
Zhōngguó. money, I can't go to China.

bù néng mǎi Because I don't have any
bēizi. money, I can't buy the cup.

bù néng xué Because I don't have any
Zhōngwén. money, I can't study
Chinese.

bù néng qù Because I don't have any
Fǎguó. money, I can't go to France.

bù néng dào Because I don't have any
Xiānggǎng money, I can't go to Hong
Kong.

děi gōngzuò. Because I don't have any
money, I have to work.

bù néng dào Because I don't have any
Běijīng qù. money, I can't go to Beijing.

7. Wǒ shūshu měitiān sidiǎn xiàbān. My uncle gets off from work
at 4:00 every day.

sidiǎn
bàn My uncle gets off from work
at 4:30 every day.

wūdiǎn My uncle gets off from work
at 5:00 every day.

wūdiǎn
yíkè My uncle gets off from work
at 5:15 every day.

wūdiǎn
sānkè My uncle gets off from work
at 5:45 every day.

liùdiǎn My uncle gets off from work
at 6:00 every day.

jǐdiǎn ? When does my uncle get off
from work every day?

sidiǎn My uncle gets off from work
at 4:00 every day.

8. Nǐ wèishemme máng? Why are you so busy?
zhèmmè
- lèi? Why are you so tired?
- kùn? Why are you so sleepy?
- xǐhuan tā? Why do you like him so much?
- xǐhuan shuǐjiào? Why do you like to sleep so much?
- xǐhuan qù Běijīng? Why do you like to go to Beijing so much?
- gāo? Why are you so tall?
- máng? Why are you so busy?
9. Tā wèishemme Zhōngwén Why does he say that Chinese is
shuō hěn nán xué? very difficult to learn?
- gōngzuò hěn Why does he say that the job is
róngyì? very easy?

Běijīng hěn Why does he say that Beijing is
yǒu yìsì? very interesting?

gōngzuò méi Why does he say that the job is
yìsì? not interesting?

lǎoshī hěn bù Why does he say that the
hǎo? instructor is very bad?

tā bù Why does he say that he's
gāoxìng? unhappy?

yǐzi hěn guì? Why does he say that the chair
is very expensive?

Zhōngwén Why does he say that Chinese is
hěn nán xué? very difficult to learn?

10. Tā Hángkōng
zài Xīběi Gōngsī jiāo. She teaches English at
Yīngwén Northwest Airlines.

Xī'nán She teaches English at
Southwest Airlines.

Dōngběi She teaches English at
Northeast Airlines.

Dōngnán She teaches English at
Southeast Airlines.

něijiā ? At which airline company
does she teach English?

Xībēi She teaches English at
Northwest Airlines.

Nǐ shuōde nèige 11. dìfang zài dōngběi. Zhōngguode The place you mentioned
is in northeastern China.

dōngbiān. The place you mentioned
is in eastern China.

nánbiān. The place you mentioned
is in southern China.

xībiān. The place you mentioned
is in western China.

běibiān. The place you mentioned
is in northern China.

dōngběi. The place you mentioned
is in northeastern China.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 6, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Nǐ yǒu xiōngdì
méiyǒu jiěmèi? Do you have any siblings?

xiōngdì? Do you have any brothers?

jiěmèi? Do you have any sisters?

gēge? Do you have any older
brothers?

dìdì? Do you have any younger
brothers?

jiějie? Do you have any older sisters?

mèimei? Do you have any younger sisters?

xiōngdi
jiěmèi? Do you have any siblings?

2. Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā dà. I'm the oldest in my family.
páiháng lǎo

èr. I'm the second oldest in my family.

sān. I'm the third oldest in my family.

sì. I'm the fourth oldest in my family.

wǔ. I'm the fifth oldest in my family.

dà. I'm the oldest in my family.

3. Nǐ fùmǔ yě zhùzai Do your parents also live in
Táiběi ma? Taipei?

zǔfù Does your paternal grandfather
also live in Taipei?

zǔmǔ Does your paternal grandmother
also live in Taipei?

wàizǔfù Does your maternal grandfather
also live in Taipei?

wàizǔmǔ Does your maternal grandmother
also live in Taipei?

fùqin Does your father also live in
Taipei?

mǔqin Does your mother also live in
Taipei?

fùmǔ Do your parents also live in
Taipei?

4. Wǒ xiǎomèi zài Yīngguo My youngest sister is studying in
liúxué. England.

	xiǎodi		My youngest brother is studying in England.
	dàgē		My oldest brother is studying in England.
	dàjiě		My oldest sister is studying in England.
	dà didi		My older younger brother is studying in England.
	dàmèi		My older younger sister is studying in England.
	xiǎomèi		My youngest sister is studying in England.
5.	Wǒ yímín	didi Àozhōu	le. My younger brother immigrated to Australia.
		Měiguó	My younger brother immigrated to America.
		Mǎláixīyà	My younger brother immigrated to Malaysia.

Yīngguo My younger brother immigrated to
England.

Jiā'nádà My younger brother immigrated to
Canada.

Riběn My younger brother immigrated to
Japan.

Déguo My younger brother immigrated to
Germany.

Fǎguo My younger brother immigrated to
France.

Àozhōu My younger brother immigrated to
Australia.

6. Wǒ zìwǒ jièshào le. I forgot to introduce myself.
wàngle

nǐde míngzi I forgot your name.

qù shítáng I forgot to go to the cafeteria
chīfàn to eat.

qù túshūguǎn I forgot to go to the library to
xuéxí study.

jièshào wǒde I forgot to introduce my
tóngwū roommate.

huí sùshè xiūxi I forgot to return to the
 dormitory to rest.

zìwǒ jièshào I forgot to introduce myself.

7. Tā màile chē le. She sold the car.

yǐzi She sold the chair.

zhuōzi She sold the table.

bēizi She sold the cup.

bēibāo She sold the backpack.

diànnǎo She sold the computer.

shūjià She sold the bookcase.

rén	I very much like to chat with people.
tóngxué	I very much like to chat with classmates.
tóngwū	I very much like to chat with my roommate.
tóngshì	I very much like to chat with colleagues.
Xiǎo Wáng	I very much like to chat with Little Wang.
Xiǎo Huáng	I very much like to chat with Little Huang.
nǐmen	I very much like to chat with you guys.
wǒ dìdi	I very much like to chat with my younger brother.
wǒ nǚpéngyou	I very much like to chat with my girlfriend.

péngyou

I very much like to chat
with friends.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 7, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Biǎojiě, nǐ hǎo a? (→ wa) Cousin, how are you?
- nǐmen jiā dōu yǒu shémmé rén (→ na) Cousin, who all is there in your family?
- nǐ zuìjìn (→ nga) Cousin, how have you been recently?
- nǐmen jiā zhùzai nǎr (→ ra) Cousin, where does your family live?
- nǐ wèishémmé bú qù (→ ya) Cousin, why don't you go?
- nǐ hǎo (→ wa) Cousin, how are you?

zhùzai wǒ jiā pángbiān. She used to live next to me.

zài Xīběi Hángkōng She used to work for
Gōngsī gōngzuò. Northwest Airlines.

chángcháng lái zhè She used to come here to
chīfàn. eat very often.

zài dàxué jiāo She used to teach Chinese
Zhōngwén. in college.

chángcháng chídào. She used to be late very
often.

zài yìjiā mào yì gōngsī She used to work at a
gōngzuò. trading company.

Wǒ
4. bàba shēnti bú, suóyì Since my father's health hasn't
yīnwei tài hǎo gǎihángle. been too good, he changed
jobs.

lǎobǎn Since his boss is no good, my
bù hǎo father changed jobs.

shàngbān
bù
róngyi

Since going to work wasn't
easy for my father, he

changed jobs.

huíjiā
hěn nán

Since it was very hard for my
father to come home, he
changed jobs.

gōngzuò
tài máng

Since my father's job was too
busy, he changed jobs.

mǎimài
bú tài
hǎo

Since my father's business
wasn't doing too well, he
changed jobs.

shēnti bú
tài hǎo

Since my father's health hasn't
been too good, he changed
jobs.

5. Tā zài Niūyuē zuò He used to do business in
cóngqián mǎimài. New York.

zài Wàijiāobù He used to serve in the
fúwù. foreign ministry.

zài yòu'éryuán He used to work at a
gōngzuò. kindergarten.

zài dàxué jiāoshū. He used to teach at a college.

zài túshūguǎn He used to work at a library.
gōngzuò.

hé wǒ zài gōngsī He used to work with me at a
gōngzuò. company.

shi Zhōngwén He used to be a Chinese
lǎoshī. teacher.

zài Niūyuē zuò He used to do business in
mǎimài. New York.

6. Tāmen jiā liǎng kǒu There are two people in their
yǒu rén family.

sān There are three people in their
family.

sì There are four people in their
family.

wǔ There are five people in their
· family.

liù There are six people in their
· family.

qī There are seven people in their
· family.

jǐ ? How many people are in their
· family?

liǎng There are two people in their
· family.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 7, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Nín huì shuō Zhōngguó huà ma? Do you speak Chinese?

Pǔtōnghuà Do you speak Mandarin?

Yīngyǔ Do you speak English?

Fǎyǔ Do you speak French?

Déyǔ Do you speak German?

Xībānyáyǔ Do you speak Spanish?

Rìyǔ Do you speak Japanese?

Zhōngguo huà Do you speak Chinese?

2. Nǐ huì bu shuō Do you know how to speak
huì Zhōngguo Chinese?
 huà?

xiě Zhōngguo Do you know how to write
zi? Chinese characters?

shuō Do you know how to speak
Yīngwén? English?

kāimén? Do you know how to open the
door?

guānmén? Do you know how to close the door?

shuō
Zhōngguó
huà? Do you know how to speak Chinese?

3. Nǐ shuō de bú cuò ma! You speak quite well!

xiě You write quite well!

zuò You do it quite well!

xué You learned quite well!

bàn You did it quite well!

cāi You guess quite well!

shuō You speak quite well!

4. Tā shuō de bú cuò. He speaks quite well.

hái hǎo. He speaks pretty well.

hái kéyi. He speaks pretty well.

bǐjiào hǎo. He speaks relatively well.

hěn hǎo. He speaks well.

tǐng hǎo. He speaks quite well.

tǐng hǎode. He speaks quite well.

tài hǎole. He speaks very well.

kě hǎo ne. He speaks really well.

zhēn hǎo. He speaks really well.

bú tài hǎo. He doesn't speak very well.

bù hǎo. He speaks badly.

hěn bù hǎo. He speaks very badly.

bú cuò. He speaks quite well.

5. Nǐ yào xué Zhōngwén ma? Are you going to continue to study Chinese?
jìxù

zài nàr gōngzuò Are you going to continue to work there?

jiāoshū Are you going to continue to teach?

shuìjiào Are you going to continue to sleep?

shàngxué Are you going to continue to attend school?

liáotiān Do you want to continue chatting?

xué Zhōngwén Are you going to continue to study Chinese?

6. Wǒ rènshi Zhōngguó jǐbǎige zì. I know several hundred Chinese characters.

Hànzi. I know several hundred Chinese characters.

tóngxué. I know several hundred classmates.

rén. I know several hundred people.

Zhōngguo rén. I know several hundred Chinese people.

Zhōngguo zì. I know several hundred Chinese characters.

7. Wǒ zhǐ yǒu jǐkuài qián. I have only a few dollars.

jǐfēn zhōng. I have only a few minutes.

jǐge péngyou. I have only a few friends.

jǐbǎ yǐzi. I have only a few chairs.

jǐzhāng zhuōzi. I have only a few tables.

jǐtái diànnǎo. I have only a few computers.

jǐmáo qián. I have only a few dimes.

jǐfēn qián. I have only a few cents.

jǐkuài qián. I have only a few dollars.

8. Yǒude wǒ huì, wǒ bú Some I can write, others I
xiě yǒude huì. can't.

wǒ wǒ bú Some I recognize, others I
rènshi rènshi. don't recognize.

láile méi lái. Some came, others didn't
come.

qùle méi qù. Some went, others didn't go.

hǎokàn bù Some are pretty, others
hǎokàn. aren't pretty.

hǎochī bù Some are delicious, others
hǎochī. aren't delicious.

wǒ wǒ bú Some I want, others I don't
yào yào. want.

wǒ wǒ méi Some I bought, others I
mǎile mǎi. didn't buy.

Rìyǔ	I used to know how to speak a little Japanese, but now I've forgotten all.
Hànyǔ	I used to know how to speak a little Chinese, but now I've forgotten all.
Xībānyáyǔ	I used to know how to speak a little Spanish, but now I've forgotten all.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 7, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Nǐ shì shémme Běijīng de? When did you arrive in
shíhou dào Beijing?

Táiběi When did you arrive in
Taipei?

	xuéxiào	When did you arrive at the school?
	jiā	When did you arrive at home?
	zhèr	When did you arrive here?
	nàr	When did you arrive there?
	Běijīng	When did you arrive in Beijing?
2. Wǒ shì	jīnnián yuèfen	èr dàode. I arrived in February of this year.
	jīnnián yuèfen	sān I arrived in March of this year.
	qùnián yuèfen	sān I arrived in March of last year.
	qùnián yuèfen	shíyī I arrived in November of last year.

qiánnián shíyī I arrived in November the year
yuèfen before last.

qiánnián èr I arrived in February the year
yuèfen before last.

jīnnián èr I arrived in February of this
yuèfen year.

3. Tā
shi yíge rén láide. She came alone.

hé tā àirén She came together with her
yìqǐ spouse.

gēn wǒ bàba . She came together with my father.
yìqǐ

shémme ? What time did she come?
shíhou

zuótiān . She came yesterday.

zuò shémme ? By what means of transportation
did she come?

zuò huǒchē . She came by train.

hé shéi yìqǐ ? With whom did she come together?

yíge rén . She came alone.

4. Nǐ shì shémme xuéde When did you learn
shíhou Zhōngwén? Chinese?

jiéde hūn? When did you get married?

líde hūn? When did you get divorced?

chīde wǎnfàn? When did you have dinner?

shuìde jiào? When did you go to sleep?

zuòde huǒchē? When did you take the train?

xiàde bān? When did you get off from work?

nǐde Hányǔ
6. Nánguài jiǎngde zhème No wonder you speak Chinese
hǎo! so well!

nǐde Rìyǔ jiǎngde No wonder you speak Japanese
zhème hǎo! so well!

nǐde Hànzì xiěde No wonder you write Chinese
nème hǎokàn! characters so beautifully!

nǐ nème bù No wonder you dislike her so
xǐhuan ta! much!

tā nème bù No wonder he dislikes you so
xǐhuan nǐ! much!

nǐ shuì zhème No wonder you sleep so much!
duō jiào!

nǐ zhème xǐhuan No wonder you like teaching
jiāoshū! so much!

nǐde Hányǔ
jiǎngde zhème No wonder you speak Chinese
hǎo! so well!

7. Yǒude tā huà jiǎngde tài Sometimes, she talks too
shíhou duō. much.

tā fàn chīde tài Sometimes, she eats too much.
duō.

tā fàn dōu bù chī. Sometimes, she doesn't even
eat.

tā lǐwù sòngde tài Sometimes, she gives too few
shǎo. gifts.

tā zì xiěde hěn bù Sometimes, she writes very
hǎokàn. ugly characters.

tā huà jiǎngde tài Sometimes, she talks too
duō. much.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 7, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Gāo Tàitai shì Tiānjīn lái de. Mrs. Gao is from
cóng Tianjin.

Běijīng Mrs. Gao is from
Beijing.

Táiběi Mrs. Gao is from Taipei.

Niūyuē Mrs. Gao is from New
York.

Xiānggǎng Mrs. Gao is from Hong
Kong.

Jiùjīnshān Mrs. Gao is from San
Fran-

cisco.

nǎr ? Where is Mrs. Gao
from?

Tiānjīn Mrs. Gao is from
Tianjin.

2. Nǐde	Zhōngguo huà	shuōde bàng!	tǐng	You speak Chinese very well!
	Pǔtōnghuà			You speak Mandarin very well!
	Hànyǔ			You speak Chinese very well!
	Fǎyǔ			You speak French very well!
	Déyǔ			You speak German very well!
	Yīngyǔ			You speak English very well!
	Riyǔ			You speak Japanese very well!
	Xībānyáyǔ			You speak Spanish very well!
	Zhōngguo huà			You speak Chinese very well!

Wǒ 3. jiā zài	Xī'ān	Nǐ tīngshuōguo ma?	My home is in Xian. Have you ever heard of it?
	Guǎngzhōu		My home is in Guangzhou. Have you ever heard of it?
	Guìyáng		My home is in Guiyang. Have you ever heard of it?
	Luòyáng		My home is in Luoyang. Have you ever heard of it?
	Kūnmíng		My home is in Kunming. Have you ever heard of it?
	Gāoxióng		My home is in Gaoxiong. Have you ever heard of it?
	Chéngdū		My home is in Chengdu. Have you ever heard of it?
	Xī'ān		My home is in Xian. Have you ever heard of it?

4. Wǒ Xiǎo Wáng
tīngshuō jiéhūnle. I heard Little Wang got married.

Xiǎo Chén
lìhūnle. I heard Little Chen got divorced.

Bái Xiānsheng
láile. I heard Mr. Bai came.

Zhāng
Xiānsheng I heard Mr. Zhang left.
zǒule.

Lǎo Chén jiāo I heard Old Chen is teaching
zhōngxué le. middle school now.

nǐ zǔmǔ xué I heard your grandmother is
diànnǎo le. learning how to use computers.

tā shēntì zuìjìn I heard his health has been very
hěn chà. bad recently.

Xiǎo Wáng
jiéhūnle. I heard Little Wang got married.

Lái zài shémme
5. Měiguó dānwèi Before coming to the U.S.,
zhīqián, nǐ gōngzuò? where did you work?

zài nǎr jiāoshū? Before coming to the U.S.,
where did you teach?

Yīngwén xuéle Before coming to the U.S., for
duō cháng how long had you studied
shíjiān? English?

zhùzai shémme Before coming to the U.S.,
dìfang? where did you live?

qùguo shémme Before coming to the U.S.,
dìfang? what places had you been to?

huì shuō Before coming to the U.S., did
Yīngyǔ ma? you know how to speak
English?

zài shémme Before coming to the U.S.,
dìfang xuéxí? where did you study?

zài shémme Before coming to the U.S.,
dānwèi where did you work?
gōngzuò?

Yíge
6. yuè wǒmen hái zài A month ago, we were still in
yǐqián, Zhōngguo. China.

tā hái méiyǒu lái. A month ago, he still hadn't
come.

tāmen hái bú huì A month ago, they didn't yet
shuō Hànyǔ. know how to speak Chinese.

wǒmen hái bú huì A month ago, we still couldn't
xiě Zhōngguo zì. write Chinese characters.

wǒmen hái zhùzài A month ago, we were still
Měiguó. living in the U.S.

tā hái méiyǒu A month ago, she didn't yet
gōngzuò. have a job.

wǒmen hái zài A month ago, we were still in
Zhōngguo. China.

7. Wǒ dàxuéjiāole jǐnián After graduating from college, I
bìyè yǐhòu, shū. taught for several years.

zài mào yì
gōng sī After graduating from college, I
gōng zuò. worked at a trading company.

zài Zhōngguó
zhù le After graduating from college, I
liǎng nián. lived in China for two years.

jì xù xué xí After graduating from college, I
Zhōngwén. continued to study Chinese.

bú yào After graduating from college, I
gōng zuò. don't want to work.

zài tú shū guǎn After graduating from college, I
gōng zuò. worked at a library.

jiāo le jǐ nián After graduating from college, I
shū. taught for several years.

Nǐ dà xué
8. bì yè xiǎng zuò After graduating from college,
zhī hòu shén me? what do you want to do?

yào jiāo shū After graduating from college, do
ma? you want to teach?

yào qù
Zhōngguo After graduating from college, do
ma? you want to go to China?

yǒu
gōngzuò After graduating from college, will
ma? you have a job?

jìxù xué
Zhōngwén After graduating from college, will
ma? you continue to study Chinese?

hái zhù zhèr After graduating from college, will
ma? you still live here?

xiǎng qù
nǎr? After graduating from college,
 where do you want to go?

xiǎng zuò
shémme? After graduating from college,
 what do you want to do?

Wǒ juédìng niàn I decided to apply to go to
9. shēnqǐng qù yánjiūshēng. graduate school in China.
Zhōngguo

liúxué. I decided to apply to go
 study in China.

gěi. Please give it like this.

jiāo. Please teach it this way.

xiě. Please write it this way.

11. Xiǎo Bái, nǐ bié shuō. Little Bai, don't say it that way.
nèiyangr

zuò. Little Bai, don't do it like that.

bàn. Little Bai, don't handle it that way.

chēnghu Little Bai, don't address her
tā. that way.

xuéxí. Little Bai, don't study that way.

mài. Little Bai, don't sell it that way.

xiǎng. Little Bai, don't think about it like that.

shuō. Little Bai, don't say it that way.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 8, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Láojià, Běijīng zǎome Excuse me, how do I get to
qù Fàndiàn zǒu? the Beijing Hotel?

Tiān'ānmén Excuse me, how do I get to
Tiananmen?

Rìběn Excuse me, how do I get to
Dàshǐguǎn the Japanese Embassy?

Táiběi Excuse me, how do I get to
Měiguó Taipei American School?
Xuéxiào

Cháng Chéng Excuse me, how do I get to
Fàndiàn the Great Wall Hotel?

Héping Dōng Excuse me, how do I get to
Lù Hoping East Road?

Běijīng Excuse me, how do I get to
Fàndiàn the Beijing Hotel?

2. Qǐng nín
yìzhí wàng qián zǒu. Please walk straight ahead.

dōng Please walk straight ahead towards
the east.

nán Please walk straight ahead towards
the south.

xī Please walk straight ahead towards
the west.

běi Please walk straight ahead towards
the north.

hòu Please walk straight ahead in the
opposite direction.

zuǒ Please walk straight ahead to the
left.

yòu Please walk straight ahead to the right.

qián Please walk straight ahead.

3. Guòle Tiān'ānmén jiù
dàole. It's right after Tiananmen.

Cháng Chéng It's right after the Great
Fàndiàn Wall Hotel.

Běijīng Fàndiàn It's right after the Beijing
Hotel.

màoyì gōngsī It's right after the trading
company.

Běidà It's right after Peking
University.

Déguo It's right after the German
Dàshǐguǎn Embassy.

píxié chǎng It's right after the shoe
factory.

Tiān'ānmén

It's right after Tiananmen.

Běijīng
4. Fàndiàn zhèr
lí

hěn
yuǎn
ma?

Is the Beijing Hotel very far
from here?

nǐ jiā

Is the Beijing Hotel very far
from your home?

nàr

Is the Beijing Hotel very far
from there?

nǐde gōngsī

Is the Beijing Hotel very far
from your company?

wǒmende
xuéxiào

Is the Beijing Hotel very far
from our school?

Měiguó
Dàshǐguǎn

Is the Beijing Hotel very far
from the American Embassy?

Tiān'ānmén

Is the Beijing Hotel very far
from Tiananmen?

zhèr

Is the Beijing Hotel very far
from here?

5. Tiān'ānmén lí zhèr yuǎn Is Tiananmen far from
 bu yuǎn? here?
- Běidà Is Peking University far
 from here?
- Táidà Is Taiwan University far
 from here?
- Nǐ jiā Is your home far from here?
- Nǐde sùshè Is your dormitory far from
 here?
- Shítáng Is the cafeteria far from
 here?
- Fǎguo Wénhuà Is the French Cultural
 Zhōngxīn Center far from here?
- Tiān'ānmén Is Tiananmen far from
 here?
6. Wǒ jiā lí hěn jìn. My home is very close to here.
 zhèr

bǐjiào jìn. My home is relatively close to here.

bú jìn. My home is not close to here.

bǐjiào yuǎn. My home is relatively far from here.

zhēn yuǎn. My home is really far from here.

tài yuǎnle. My home is too far from here.

bú tài yuǎn. My home is not too far from here.

shízài tài yuǎnle. My home is truly too far from here.

hěn jìn. My home is very close to here.

7. Zǒulùde huà, èrshífēn If you walk, it will probably take
dàgài yào zhōng. 20 minutes.

bàn'ge zhōngtóu. If you walk, it will probably take
half an hour.

yíge bàn If you walk, it will probably take
zhōngtóu. one and a half hours.

yìtiān. If you walk, it will probably take
one day.

liǎngtiān. If you walk, it will probably take
two days.

yíkè zhōng. If you walk, it will probably take
a quarter of an hour.

èrshífēn zhōng. If you walk, it will probably take
20 minutes.

8. Zǒulù de huà, dàgài yào liǎngge If you walk, it will
dào sān'ge zhōngtóu. probably take 2 to 3
hours.

Zuò huǒchē If you take a train, it will
probably take 2 to 3
hours.

Zuòchē If you take a bus, it will
probably take 2 to 3
hours.

Dǎdī		If you take a taxi, it will probably take 2 to 3 hours.
Zǒulù		If you walk, it will probably take 2 to 3 hours.
9. Wǒ děnglè	èrshífēn zhōng zuǒyòu.	I waited for about 20 minutes.
	liǎngge zhōngtóu	I waited for about two hours.
	sāntiān	I waited for about three days.
	yíge xīngqī	I waited for about a week.
	yíge zhōngtóu	I waited for about an hour.
	shífēn zhōng	I waited for about ten minutes.

èrshífēn zhōng

I waited for about 20
minutes.

10. Nín dǎ ge dī kuài. If you took a taxi, it would be faster.
gèng

hǎo. If you took a taxi, it would be better.

guì. If you took a taxi, it would be more
expensive.

piányi. If you took a taxi, it would be
cheaper.

méi yìsi. If you took a taxi, it would be even
less interesting.

yǒu yìsi. If you took a taxi, it would be more
interesting.

kuài. If you took a taxi, it would be faster.

Zuò
11. chēde wǔfēn jiù If you take a bus, you'll be there
huà, zhōng dàole. in 5 minutes.

Yīngguo dàshǐguǎn. I need a car to go to the British Embassy.

Shǒudū Jīchǎng. I need a car to go to Capital Airport.

2. Tāmen jīali yǒu yí liàng xīn qìchē. They have a new car at home.

liǎng. They have two new cars at home.

sān. They have three new cars at home.

sì. They have four new cars at home.

wǔ. They have five new cars at home.

liù. They have six new cars at home.

qī. They have seven new cars at home.

nǐ zhīdao Do you know his Chinese
ma? name?

shì shémmé. What is his Chinese name?

wǒ yǐjīng I already forgot his
wàngle. Chinese name.

5. Chēzi shífēn zhōng yǐhòu jiù The car will be here in 10
dào. minutes.

wǔfēn zhōng The car will be here in 5
minutes.

yíkè zhōng The car will be here in 15
minutes.

bàn'ge The car will be here in half
zhōngtóu an hour.

sānkè zhōng The car will be here in 45
minutes.

shífēn zhōng The car will be here in 10
minutes.

6. Nín zài zhuānjiā lóu ménkǒu děng ba. Why don't you wait at the entrance to the foreign experts' building.

túshūguǎn ménkǒu Why don't you wait at the entrance to the library.

túshūguǎn lǐtōu Why don't you wait inside the library.

sùshè Why don't you wait at the dormitory.

shítáng wàibiān Why don't you wait outside the cafeteria.

zhèr Why don't you wait here.

nàr Why don't you wait there.

zhuānjiā lóu ménkǒu Why don't you wait at the entrance to the foreign experts' building.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 8, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Qǐng nǐ Wáng dǎ Please give Mr. Wang a
gěi Xiānsheng diànhuà. call.

Bái Xiáojie Please give Miss Bai a
call.

Xiè Tàitai Please give Mrs. Xie a
call.

Chén Lǎoshī Please give Professor
Chen a call.

Lín Please give Principal Lin a
Xiàozhǎng call.

Lǎo Gāo Please give Old Gao a
call.

Xiǎo Mǎ Please give Little Ma a
call.

Wáng
Xiānsheng

Please give Mr. Wang a call.

2. Tā bàn'ge xiǎoshí dǎguo
yǐqián diànhuà.

She called half an hour ago.

yàoguò
yíliàng chē.

She asked for a car half an hour ago.

shuìguo jiào.

She slept half an hour ago.

chīguo fàn.

She ate half an hour ago.

dǎguo dī.

She took a taxi half an hour ago.

zuòguo
huǒchē.

She took a train half an hour ago.

dǎguo
diànhuà.

She called half an hour ago.

3. Tā zěmme dào méi lái a? How come he hasn't come
xiànzài hái yet?

bú huì How come he doesn't
know how yet?

bù
qǐchuáng How come he isn't up yet?

méi zǒu How come he hasn't left
yet?

méi qù How come he hasn't gone
yet?

bù shuō How come he hasn't said it
yet?

méi lái How come he hasn't come
yet?

4. Duìbuqǐ, qǐng nín Sorry, please wait a bit
zài děng yíhuìr. longer.

zuò Sorry, please sit a bit
longer.

kàn Sorry, please watch a bit
longer.

xiǎng Sorry, please think a bit longer.

xiūxi Sorry, please rest a bit longer.

děng Sorry, please wait a bit longer.

5. Wǒ xiǎng tā yìhuì dào. I think he will be here in a short
jiù huì while.

lái. I think he will come in a short while.

zǒu. I think he will leave in a short while.

qù. I think he will go in a short while.

shuō. I think he will say it in a short while.

wèn. I think he will ask in a short while.

gěi. I think he will give it in a short while.

dào. I think he will be here in a short while.

6. Máfán kuài , hǎo
nín yidianr ma? Please try to hurry, O.K.?

kāimén Please open the door, O.K.?

yìhuǐ guānmén Please close the door in a short while, O.K.?

pài yíliàng chē Please send a car, O.K.?

děng wǒ Please wait for me, O.K.?

qù sùshè Please go to the dormitory, O.K.?

kuài yidianr Please try to hurry, O.K.?

7. Wǒ kuài yào láibují le. I'm about to be late.

chídào I'm about to be late.

shàngkè I'm about to go to class.

chīfàn I'm about to eat.

xiàbān I'm about to get off from work.

juédìng I'm about to decide.

láibují I'm about to be late.

Wǒ mǎshàng
8. tōngzhī sījī gǎndào. I'll notify the driver immediately
jìnkùài to hurry there as fast as possible.

zǒu. I'll notify the driver immediately
to go as fast as possible.

qù nǐ I'll notify the driver immediately
nàr. to go to your place as fast as
possible.

qù. I'll notify the driver immediately
to go as fast as possible.

gǎndào. I'll notify the driver immediately
to hurry there as fast as possible.

9. Wǒ míngnián qù I decided to go to China to
juéding Zhōngguo liúxué. study next year.

jìxù xuéxí I decided to continue to study
Zhōngwén. Chinese.

bú qù nǐ jiā le. I decided not to go to your
home.

míngtiān qù I decided to go to the cafeteria
shítáng chīfàn. tomorrow to eat.

zhùzai sùshè. I decided to live in a dormitory.

yímin Měiguó. I decided to immigrate to
America.

míngtiān qù I decided to go to the library
túshūguǎn xuéxí. tomorrow to study.

nèijǐjiàn		Just those several pieces of luggage?
zhèijǐjiàn		Just this piece of luggage?
zhèiliǎngjiàn		Just these two pieces of luggage?
Cóng 2. zhèr dào	jīchǎng duōshǎo shíjiān?	xūyào How much time does it take to get from here to the airport?
nǐ jiā		How much time does it take to get from here to your home?
fàndiàn		How much time does it take to get from here to the hotel?
nàr		How much time does it take to get from here to there?
túshūguǎn		How much time does it take to get from here to the library?

shítáng How much time does it take
to get from here to the
cafeteria?

sùshè How much time does it take
to get from here to the
dormitory?

jīchǎng How much time does it take
to get from here to the
airport?

3. Wǒmen huàn tiáo We have no choice but to change to a
zhǐhǎo biéde lù. different route.

míngtiān We have no choice but to come back
zài lái. tomorrow.

jìnkuaì We have no choice but to rush there as
gǎndào. fast as possible.

mǎshàng We have no choice but to leave
zǒu. immediately.

hòutiān zài We have no choice but to go there
qù. again the day after tomorrow.

dǎdī qù. We have no choice but to go by taxi.

zuò huǒchē. We have no choice but to take the train.

huàn tiáo biéde lù. We have no choice but to change to a different route.

4. Zhèitiáo lù dǔchēle . There is a traffic jam on this road.

Nèitiáo . There is a traffic jam on that road.

Zhèiliǎngtiáo . There are traffic jams on these two roads.

Nèiliǎngtiáo . There are traffic jams on those two roads.

Nèitiáo ? On which road are there traffic jams?

Zhèitiáo . There is a traffic jam on this road.

5. Nín zhǎo wǒ èrshikuài jiù hǎole. Just give me twenty dollars in change.

sānshikuài Just give me thirty dollars in change.

wǔkuài Just give me five dollars in change.

shíqīkuài Just give me seventeen dollars in change.

liǎngmáo Just give me twenty cents in change.

shíkuài Just give me ten dollars in change.

èrshikuài Just give me twenty dollars in change.

Wǒ děng nǐ 6. děngle hǎo jiǔ, zǒu le. I waited for you for a very long time; finally, I left.
zuihòu wǒ

qù
chīfàn I waited for you for a very
long time; finally, I went to
eat.

bù
děng I waited for you for a very
long time; finally, I stopped
waiting.

huíjiā I waited for you for a very
long time; finally, I went
home.

huí
sùshè I waited for you for a very
long time; finally, I returned to
my dorm.

dǎ
diànhuà I waited for you for a very
long time; finally, I called.

zǒu I waited for you for a very
long time; finally, I left.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 9, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Wǒ bú shì, wǒ yě bú I'm not from here, I'm not very
běndì rén tài qīngchu. clear about it either.

Wǒ shì dìyíci lái zhè	This is my first time here, I'm not very clear about it either.
---------------------------------------	--

Wǒ shì wàiguó rén	I'm a foreigner, I'm not very clear about it either.
---------------------------	---

Wǒ bú shì jiāotōngjǐng	I'm not a traffic policeman, I'm not very clear about it either.
---------------------------	---

Nǐ bú tài qīngchu	You're not very clear about it, I'm not very clear about it either.
----------------------	--

Wǒ bú shì běndì rén	I'm not a local, I'm not very clear about it either.
------------------------	---

Nàr , nín qù There is a traffic policeman
2. yǒu jiāotōngjǐng wèn tā over there, why don't you go
yíwèi ba. ask him.

jǐngchá There is a policeman over there,
why don't you go ask her.

xiǎoxué There's an elementary school
xiàozhǎng principal over there, why don't
you go ask her.

wàijiāoguān There is a diplomat over there,
why don't you go ask him.

běndì rén There is a local resident over
there, why don't you go ask her.

zhōngxué There is a high school teacher
lǎoshī over there, why don't you go
ask her.

jiāotōngjǐng There is a traffic policeman
over there, why don't you go
ask him.

3. Guòle di'èrge běi guāi. After passing the second
hónglǜdēng, wàng traffic light, turn north.

nán After passing the second traffic light, turn south.

zuǒ After passing the second traffic light, turn left.

yòu After passing the second traffic light, turn right.

běi After passing the second traffic light, turn north.

4. Zài xiàyíge lùkǒu wàng zuǒ zhuǎn. Turn left at the next intersection.

yòu Turn right at the next intersection.

dōng Turn east at the next intersection.

xī Turn west at the next intersection.

zuǒ Turn left at the next intersection.

hēi Excuse me, do you have
black ones?

bái Excuse me, do you have
white ones?

huáng Excuse me, do you have
yellow ones?

hóng Excuse me, do you have red
ones?

7. Wǒ xǐhuan kāfēisè de. I like brown-colored ones.

zǐsè I like purple-colored ones.

zōngsè I like brown-colored ones.

huīsè I like gray-colored ones.

júhóngsè I like orange-colored ones.

kāfēisè I like brown-colored ones.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 9, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

Qǐng
1. wèn, Yíhéyuán zuò
qù jǐlù
chē? Excuse me, what bus do I take
to go to the Summer Palace?

Tiān'ānmén Excuse me, what bus do I take
to go to Tiananmen?

Cháng
Chéng Excuse me, what bus do I take
Fàndiàn to go to the Great Wall Hotel?

Běijīng Excuse me, what bus do I take
Fàndiàn to go to the Beijing Hotel?

dòngwùyuán Excuse me, what bus do I take
to go to the zoo?

jīchǎng Excuse me, what bus do I take
to go to the airport?

Yíhéyuán

Excuse me, what bus do I take
to go to the Summer Palace?

Nǐ xiān zuò huàn
2. gōnggòng qìchē, diànchē. You take a bus first, then
ránhòu change to a trolley.

zuò huǒchē. You take a bus first, then
take a train.

zǒulù. You take a bus first, then
walk.

zuò chūzū qìchē. You take a bus first, then
take a taxi.

huàn diànchē. You take a bus first, then
change to a trolley.

3. Tā yīngdāng zhōngdiǎn
zuòdao zhàn. She should take it to the last
stop.

xiàyízhàn. She should take it to the next
stop.

Dòngwùyuán. She should take it to Zoo.

Tiān'ānmén. She should take it to
Tiananmen.

Běijīng Fàndiàn. She should take it to the
Beijing Hotel.

Yíhéyuán. She should take it to the
Summer Palace.

Běijīng Dàxué. She should take it to Peking
University.

nǎr? Where should she get off?

zhōngdiǎn zhàn. She should take it to the last
stop.

Shíjiān hái dào It's still early, for now you don't
4. zǎo, nǐ xiānménkǒur need to wait at the entrance.
bù bì děng.

qǐchuáng. It's still early, for now you don't
need to get out of bed.

zhèmmè It's still early, for now you don't
zǎo qù. need to go so early.

shuō It's still early, for now you don't
láibují. need to say you're not going to
make it.

qù nàr It's still early, for now you don't
děng. need to go there to wait.

dào It's still early, for now you don't
ménkǒur need to wait at the entrance.
děng.

5. Tāmen jiā yǎngle yìzhī māo. They keep a cat in their home.

liǎngzhī gǒu. They keep two dogs in their
home.

jǐzhī xiǎo niǎo. They keep several little birds in
their home.

jǐtiáo yú. They keep several fish in their
home.

shémme What animals do they keep in
dòngwù? their home?

yìzhī māo. They keep a cat in their home.

Diànchē wǒ méi
6. zuòguo, kěshi wǒ huōchē. I've never taken a tram,
zuòguo but I have taken a train.

gōnggòng I've never taken a tram,
qìchē. but I have taken the bus.

qìchē. I've never taken a tram,
but I have taken a car.

chūzū I've never taken a tram,
qìchē. but I have taken a taxi.

huōchē. I've never taken a tram,
but I have taken a train.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 9, Part 3: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with

the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Yi zhāng piào duōshǎo How much for a ticket?
qián?

Liǎng How much for two tickets?

Sān How much for three tickets?

Sì How much for four tickets?

Wǔ How much for five tickets?

Yì How much for a ticket?

2. Yìzhāng Dòngwùyuán de. One ticket to Zoo.
dào

Yìhéyuán One ticket to Summer Palace.

Běijīng Fàndiàn One ticket to Beijing Hotel.

Cháng Chéng One ticket to the Great
Fàndiàn Wall Hotel.

jīchǎng One ticket to the airport
stop.

Dòngwùyuánr One ticket to Zoo.

3. Wǒ
shi gāng shàngde. I just got on.

gānggāng I just got on.

wǔfēn zhōng I got on five minutes
yǐqián ago.

shífēn zhōng I got on ten minutes
yǐqián ago.

shàng yízhàn I got on at the last stop.

gāng I just got on.

bù Not only are the things they sell
hǎokàn. expensive, they are also ugly.

hěnn
chà. Not only are the things they sell
expensive, they are also very low
in quality.

hěnn
xiǎo. Not only are the things they sell
expensive, they are also very
small.

zuòde
bù hǎo. Not only are the things they sell
expensive, they are also poorly
made.

6. Nǐ zěmme a? How come you are so
nèmmè bèn stupid?

máng How come you are so busy?

kùn How come you are so
sleepy?

lèi How come you are so tired?

zāng How come you are so dirty?

cōngmíng How come you are so smart?

yònggōng How come you are so diligent?

bèn How come you are so stupid?

7. Nǐde fángjiān shízài luàn le! Your room is really too messy!
tài

zāng Your room is really too dirty!

gānjìng Your room is really too clean!

zhěngqí Your room is really too neat!

xiǎo Your room is really too small!

luàn Your room is really too messy!

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 9, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Zǎozhe ne. It's still early. There are still four
Hái yǒu sìzhàn. stops.

shífēn It's still early. There are still ten
zhōng. minutes.

rén méi It's still early. There are still people
lái. who haven't come.

shíjiān. It's still early. There is still time.

jǐzhàn. It's still early. There are still several
stops.

sìzhàn. It's still early. There are still four
stops.

2. Dào When the time comes, I'll call
shíhou wǒ jiào nín. you.

wǒ qù zhǎo nǐ. When the time comes, I'll go find you.

nǐ jiù zhīdaole. When the time comes, you'll know.

wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà. When the time comes, I'll give you a phone call.

tā huì jiào nín. When the time comes, she'll call you.

wǒ jiào nín. When the time comes, I'll call you.

3. Nín gāi zhǔnbèi xiàchē le. You should prepare to get off the bus.

shàngkè You should prepare to go to class.

huíjiā You should prepare to go home.

jiǎnghuà You should get ready to speak.

zǒu You should prepare to leave.

chīfàn	You should get ready to eat.
shuǐjiào	You should get ready to sleep.
bānjiā	You should get ready to move.
gǎiháng	You should get ready to change your line of work.
huíguó	You should get ready to return to your country.
jiéhūn	You should prepare to get married.
qǐchuáng	You should prepare to get up.
shàngbānr	You should prepare to go to work.
shēnqǐng	You should get ready to apply.
shàngchē	You should prepare to get on the bus.

xiàchē You should prepare to get off the
bus.

4. Wǒde piào zhǎobuzháole! I can't find my ticket!

chēpiào I can't find my bus ticket!

yuèpiào I can't find my monthly
ticket!

gǒu I can't find my dog!

māo I can't find my cat!

dōngxi I can't find my things!

qián I can't find my money!

dàizi I can't find my bag!

bēibāo I can't find my back pack!

xíngli I can't find my luggage!

míngpiàn I can't find my name cards!

piào I can't find my ticket!

5. Nǐ zhǎo de dào ma? Can you find it?

mǎi Can you buy one?

tīng Can you hear?

kàn Can you see?

zhǎo Can you find it?

6. Nǐ zhǎo de dào zhǎo bu dào? Can you find it or not?

mǎi mǎi Can you buy one or not?

tīng tīng Can you hear or not?

kàn kàn Can you see or not?

zhǎo zhǎo Can you find it or not?

7. Hái hǎo, wǒ zhǎo dào le. At least I found it.

mǎi At least I bought one.

tīng At least I heard it.

kàn At least I saw it.

zhǎo At least I found it.

8. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ zhǎo budào. Sorry, I really can't find it.
zhēnde

mǎi Sorry, I really can't buy
one.

tīng Sorry, I really can't hear.

kàn Sorry, I really can't see.

zhǎo Sorry, I really can't find it.

9. Wǒ jìde mǎiguó piào le. I remember you bought a ticket.
nín

yǐqián lái guo. I remember you came here
before.

gāng shàng chē. I remember you just got on.

hái yào qù Měiguó. I remember you still want to go
to America.

jiào shémméi míngzi. I remember what your name is.

shì shéi. I remember who you are.

yào qù dòngwùyuán. I remember you want to go to the
zoo.

mǎi guo piào le. I remember you bought a ticket.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 10, Part 1: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Tiānqì yùbào xià yǔ. The weather forecast calls for
shuō huì rain.

dǎ léi. The weather forecast calls for
thunder.

biàn chéng yīn tiān. The weather forecast says it will
become overcast.

biàn chéng qíng tiān. The weather forecast says it will
become clear.

yuè lái yuè rè. The weather forecast says it will
get hotter and hotter.

yuè lái yuè hǎo. The weather forecast says it will
get better and better.

xià yǔ. The weather forecast calls for
rain.

Shàng wǔ shì huì qíng tiān, biàn chéng xià wǔ yīn tiān. In the morning it will be clear, but
2. qíng tiān, biàn chéng xià wǔ yīn tiān. it will turn overcast in the
xià wǔ afternoon.

huì xiàyǔ. In the morning it will be clear, but
it will rain in the afternoon.

huì dǎléi. In the morning it will be clear, but
it will thunder in the afternoon.

huì yuè lái yuè rè. In the morning it will be clear, but
it will get hotter and hotter in the
afternoon.

jiù bú shì qíngtiān. In the morning it will be clear, but
it will no longer be clear in the
le. afternoon.

huì biànchéng yīntiān. In the morning it will be clear, but
it will turn overcast in the
afternoon.

3. Kěnéng huì biànchéng yīntiān. It's possible it will turn overcast.

huì biànchéng qíngtiān. It's possible it will turn clear.

huì xiàyǔ. It's possible it will rain.

huì dǎléi. It's possible there will be thunder.

wǒ jiù bú què. It's possible I won't go then.

tā bù xiǎng lái. It's possible she doesn't want to
 come anymore.

nǐ wàngle ba. Maybe you forgot.

huì biànréng It's possible it will turn overcast.
yīntiān.

4. Cóng míngtiān yuè lái yuè Starting tomorrow, it will get
 kāishǐ huì hotter and hotter.
 rè.

 Starting the day after
hòutiān tomorrow, it will get hotter and
 hotter.

xiàge Starting next week, it will get
xīngqī hotter and hotter.

xià Starting next week, it will get
xīngqī hotter and hotter.

xiàge
lǐbài Starting next week, it will get
hotter and hotter.

xià lǐbài Starting next week, it will get
hotter and hotter.

xiàge
yuè Starting next month, it will get
hotter and hotter.

siyuè
shíhào Starting April 10th, it will get
hotter and hotter.

míngtiān Starting tomorrow, it will get
hotter and hotter.

Nǐde Zhōngguo
5. zì xiěde yuè lái hǎo
yuè le. You're writing your Chinese
characters better and better.

hǎokàn You're writing your Chinese
characters so they look nicer
and nicer.

chà You're writing your Chinese
characters worse and worse.

luàn You're writing your Chinese characters messier and messier.

zhěngqí You're writing your Chinese characters neater and neater.

xiǎo You're writing your Chinese characters smaller and smaller.

dà You're writing your Chinese characters bigger and bigger.

hǎo You're writing your Chinese characters better and better.

6. Wǒ yuè lái yuè bù xǐhuan tā. I'm increasingly disliking him.

bù xiǎng qùle. I'm increasingly not wanting to go.

xiǎng chīfàn. I more and more want to eat.

bù xǐhuan shítáng. I more and more dislike the cafeteria.

xiǎng qù I want to go to the zoo more
dòngwùyuán. and more.

bù xǐhuan ta. I'm increasingly disliking
 him.

7. Nèige tóngxué That classmate is the best.
 zuì hǎo.

chà. That classmate is the worst.

cōngmíng. That classmate is the smartest.

bèn. That classmate is the stupidest.

yònggōng. That classmate is the
 hardest-working.

lǎn. That classmate is the laziest.

kuài. That classmate is the fastest.

màn. That classmate is the slowest.

gāo. That classmate is the tallest.

ǎi. That classmate is the shortest.

zāng. That classmate is the dirtiest.

gānjìng. That classmate is the cleanest.

pàng. That classmate is the fattest.

shòu. That classmate is the thinnest.

qīng. That classmate is the lightest.

zhòng. That classmate is the heaviest.

yǒu yìsi. That classmate is the most interesting.

yǒu nàixīn. That classmate has the most patience.

hǎo. That classmate is the best.

Jīntiān dù, zuì dī The highest
8. zuì èrshíbā wēndù èrshì dù. temperature today is
gāo shì

	wēndù shì		28°, the lowest temperature is 24°.
shíwǔ		shí	The highest temperature today is 15°, the lowest temperature is 10°.
sānshí		èrshiwǔ	The highest temperature today is 30°, the lowest temperature is 25°.
liùshí		wǔshí	The highest temperature today is 60°, the lowest temperature is 50°.
qīshiqī		qīshí	The highest temperature today is 77°, the lowest temperature is 70°.
yībǎi		bāshiwǔ	The highest temperature today is 100°, the lowest temperature is 85°.

èrshíbā èrshì The highest
temperature today is
28°, the lowest
temperature is 24°.

Shì
9. bu yào xià yǔ le? Is it going to rain?
shì

yào dǎ léi le? Is there going to be thunder?

yào biàn chéng Is it going to turn clear?
qíng tiān le?

yào biàn chéng Is it going to become overcast?
yīn tiān le?

nǐ yào zǒu le? Are you going to leave?

tā bù Did he get mad?
gāo xìng le?

wǒ méi gēi nǐ Did I not call you?
dǎ diàn huà?

nǐ yǒu shì yào Do you have something you wanted
zhǎo wǒ? to find me to talk about?

yào xià yǔ le? Is it going to rain?

10. Suóyǐ tiānqì yùbào bù Therefore, weather forecasts are
shuō, yíding zhǔn. not necessarily accurate.

tā jiǎngde huà bù Therefore, what she says is not
yíding duì. necessarily correct.

tā bú shì yíge Therefore, he is not a good
hǎo rén. person.

wǒ míngtiān jiù Therefore, I won't be coming
bù láile. tomorrow.

qíngtiān gèng Therefore, clear days are better.
hǎo.

nèijiā fàndiàn bù Therefore, that hotel is not very
zěmmeyàng. good.

tiānqì yùbào bù Therefore, weather forecasts are
yíding zhǔn. not necessarily accurate.

11. Zhè shì zhǐ tiānqì yùbào éryǐ. This is only a weather forecast.

yíge wánxiào This is only a joke.

yíge xiàohuà This is only a joke.

wǒ cāide This is only what I'm guessing.

wǒde xīwàng This is only my hope.

tiānqì yùbào This is only a weather forecast.

12. Wǒ zhǐ yíkuài qián éryǐ. I only have a dollar.

yí máo qián I only have ten cents.

shí fēn zhōng I only have 10 minutes.

yí ge zhōngtóu I only have an hour.

yíge péngyou I only have one friend.

zhèiyíge hái'izi I only have this one child.

nèiyíge
gōngshìbāo I only have that one
briefcase.

yíkuài qián I only have a dollar.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 10, Part 2: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

1. Běijīngde tiānqì bú cuò ma! The weather in Beijing is not
bad, you know!

Nǐde Zhōngguó zì You write Chinese very well,
xiěde bú cuò you know!

Nǐde Zhōngguó huà You speak Chinese very well,
jiǎngde hěn hǎo you know!

Tā méi xué He didn't learn any, you know!

Xuéxí Zhōngwén hěn Learning Chinese is very
yǒu yìsi interesting, you know!

Běijīngde tiānqi bù cuò The weather in Beijing is not
 bad, you know!

2. Bù/Bú lěng yě bù/bú rè. Neither cold nor hot.

duō shǎo. Neither many nor few.

guì piányi. Neither expensive nor cheap.

gāo ǎi. Neither tall nor short.

pàng shòu. Neither fat nor thin.

dà xiǎo. Neither big nor small.

nán róngyi. Neither difficult nor easy.

lěng rè. Neither cold nor hot.

3. Yě jiù hái
 shì qiūtiān kéyi. It's the fall that's fairly good.
- dōngtiān It's the winter that's fairly good.
- chūntiān It's the spring that's fairly good.
- xiàtiān It's the summer that's fairly good.
- Xiǎo Wáng It's Little Wang who's doing O.K.
- jīnnián It's this year that's fairly good.
- qùnián It was last year that was fairly good.
- qiūtiān It's the fall that's fairly good.
4. Zuìjìn rē de yào
 rē sī. Recently, it's been incredibly hot.
- lěng Recently, it's been incredibly cold.

gān	Recently, it's been incredibly dry.
máng	Recently, I've been incredibly busy.
lèi	Recently, I've been incredibly tired.
kùn	Recently, I've been incredibly sleepy.
lǎn	Recently, I've been incredibly lazy.
zāng	Recently, it's been incredibly dirty.
luàn	Recently, it's been incredibly messy.
jǐnzhāng	Recently, I've been incredibly nervous.
rè	Recently, it's been incredibly hot.

5. Zhède tiānqì gān yòu lěng. The weather here is both dry
yòu and cold.

gān rè. The weather here is both dry
and hot.

gān lěng. The weather here is both dry
and cold.

Zhède
6. shēnghuó máng yòu jǐnzhāng. Life here is both busy
yòu and intense.

máng lèi. Life here is both busy
and tiring.

nán máng. Life here is both hard
and busy.

jǐnzhāng bù hǎo. Life here is both
intense and bad.

méi yìsi máng. Life here is both
uninteresting and busy.

kàndedào In this place you seldom see
qìchē. cars.

xiàxuě. It seldom snows in this
place.

8. bú shì... If there weren't so much wind
Rúguǒ fēngshā tài jiù and sand, it would be all right.
dà tài hǎole.

shì qíngtiān If it were clear, it would be all
right.

piányi yìdiǎn If it were a bit cheaper, then it
would be good.

bú xiàyǔ If it didn't rain, it would be all
right.

bú xiàxuě If it didn't snow, it would be all
right.

nǐ yě néng lái If you also could come, it
would be all right.

tā bù lái If he doesn't come, it would be
all right.

nǐ néng dǎ If you can call, it would be all
diànhuà right.

néng yǒu
gèng duōde
qián If we could have more money,
it would be all right.

bú shì
fēngshā tài
dà If there weren't so much wind
and sand, it would be all right.

9. Zhèmmè wǒ lái de zhèng Then I came at just the right
shuō, shí shíhou le! time!

wǒ lái de tài
zǎole! Then I came too early!

tā yǐhòu bù lái le! Then he won't come again in
the future!

tā yǐhòu bù gēn nǐ Then she won't play with you
wánr le! again in the future!

nǐ míngtiān bù Then you won't be able to
néng lái! come tomorrow!

nǐmen shì hǎo Then you all are good friends!
péngyou a!

chūntiān zuì Then spring is the most
shūfu! comfortable!

nǐ bù xǐhuan wǒ Then you don't like me
le! anymore!

wǒ lái de zhèng Then I came at just the right
shí shíhou le! time!

10. Tā zuì xǐhuande chūntiān. The season she likes most is
jìjié shì spring.

xiàtiān. The season she likes most is
summer.

qiūtiān. The season she likes most is
autumn.

dōngtiān. The season she likes most is
winter.

nǐmen shì hǎo péngyou It seems you are good friends.

wù shì cóng shāchuāng piāojiànlái It seems the fog floated in through the window screen.

2. Zhèige dìfang dōngtiān zhèiyangzi. Winter here is often like this.
chángcháng shì

nèiyangzi. Winter here is often like that.

zhèiyangr. Winter here is often like this.

nèiyangr. Winter here is often like that.

zhèiyangzi. Winter here is often like this.

3. Qíshí, xiànzài jiù xiàyǔ. Actually, it's raining now.
zài

xià. Actually, it's raining now.

xiàxuě. Actually, it's snowing
now.

xià
máomáoyǔ. Actually, it's drizzling
now.

dǎléi. Actually, it's thundering
now.

xiàyǔ. Actually, it's raining now.

4. Xiàozhǎng
zài chīfàn. The school principal is eating.

shuōhuà. The school principal is speaking.

jiǎnghuà. The school principal is speaking.

dǎ
diànhuà. The school principal is on the
phone.

xiězì. The school principal is writing.

zǒulù. The school principal is walking.

- kāichē. The school principal is driving.
- shuìjiào. The school principal is sleeping.
- shàngkè. The school principal is in class.
- jiāoshū. The school principal is teaching.
- xiūxi. The school principal is resting.
- xuéxí. The school principal is studying.
- liáotiān. The school principal is chatting.
- qǐchuáng. The school principal is getting up from bed.
- zuò mǎimài. The school principal is doing business.
- shuō xiàohua. The school principal is telling a joke.
- chīfàn. The school principal is eating.

5. Zhècì lái, xià yǔ. This time I came, it's been
tiāntiān dōu raining every day.

xià xuě. This time I came, it's been
snowing every day.

chū This time I came, the sun has
tài yáng. been out every day.

hěn lèi. This time I came, I've been tired
every day.

hěn máng. This time I came, I've been busy
every day.

hěn kùn. This time I came, I've been
sleepy every day.

xiūxi bù This time I came, I haven't rested
hǎo. well every day.

xià yǔ. This time I came, it's been
raining every day.

6. Lǎo tiāntiān dōu dào Old Huang goes to Tianjin
Huáng Tiānjīn qù. every day.

yuèyuè Old Huang goes to Tianjin
every month.

niánnián Old Huang goes to Tianjin
every year.

tiāntiān Old Huang goes to Tianjin
every day.

7. Rénrén dōu zhīdao. Everybody knows.

huì. Everybody knows how.

shuō. Everybody says it.

wèn. Everybody asks.

mǎi. Everybody buys them.

chī. Everybody eats it.

dǒng. Everybody understands.

shēnqǐng. Everybody applies.

huì sǐ. Everybody will die.

yǒu xīwàng. Everybody has hope.

wánr. Everybody has fun.

xiǎng. Everybody wants to.

xǐhuan. Everybody likes it.

xūyào. Everybody needs it.

yǒu. Everybody has one.

dài. Everybody carries them.

zhīdao. Everybody knows.

8. Jīntiān
bànfǎ méi chūmén. There is no way to go out today.

kāichē. There is no way to drive today.

zuò huǒchē. There is no way to take the train today.

shuǐjiào. There is no way to sleep today.

xuéxí. There is no way to study today.

xiūxi. There is no way to rest today.

bānjiā. There is no way to move today.

huíjiā. There is no way to get home today.

shàngbān. There is no way to go to work today.

shàngxué. There is no way to attend school today.

táokè. There is no way to skip class today.

chūmén. There is no way to go out today.

9. Wǒ méi bànfǎ There is absolutely no way I can
gēnběn chūmén. go out.

méi fázi gēn nǐ There is absolutely no way I can
shuō. tell you.

méiyǒu qián. I have absolutely no money.

méiyǒu péngyou. I have absolutely no friends.

bù zhīdào nǐ zài I don't have the slightest idea
shuō shémméi. what you are saying.

bù zhīdào nǐ zài I don't have the slightest idea
shuō shéi. whom you are talking about.

bù xiǎng zài nàr I absolutely don't want to eat
chīfàn. there.

méiyǒu shíjiān I don't have any time at all to go
qù wánr. have fun.

méi bànfǎ There is absolutely no way I can
chūmén. go out.

10. Kǒngpà Xiǎo chūlái le. I'm afraid that Little Zheng has
Zhèng yǐjīng chūlái le. already come out.
- chūqu I'm afraid that Little Zheng has
already gone out.
- jìnlái I'm afraid that Little Zheng has
already come in.
- jìnqu I'm afraid that Little Zheng has
already gone in.
- chūlái I'm afraid that Little Zheng has
already come out.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 10, Part 4: Substitution Drills

Listen to the audio; after each prompt, say the new sentence using that substitution. Do each drill at least twice: first with the book open, then with the book closed. Each drill starts with a model sentence for you to repeat.

- Wǒ xiǎng qù I want to go visit the west
1. gēn tóngxué xī'àn wánr. coast with my classmates.
dào

dōngàn	I want to go visit the east coast with my classmates.
Xībānyá	I want to go visit Spain with my classmates.
Xīnjiāpō	I want to go visit Singapore with my classmates.
Àodàliyà	I want to go visit Australia with my classmates.
Niūyuē	I want to go visit New York with my classmates.
Jiùjīnshān	I want to go visit San Francisco with my classmates.
Yíhéyuán	I want to go visit the Summer Palace with my classmates.
Xiāng Shān	I want to go visit Fragrant Hills with my classmates.

Yángmíng
Shān I want to go visit Yangming
 Mountain with my
 classmates.

Xī'ān I want to go visit (the city
 of) Xian with my
 classmates.

xī'àn I want to go visit the west
 coast with my classmates.

2. Nàrde qìhòu hěn gānzào. The climate there is dry.

cháoshī. The climate there is humid.

bù hǎo. The climate there is bad.

shūfu. The climate there is comfortable.

gānzào. The climate there is dry.

3. Zhèige bǐ
nèige hǎo. This one is better than that one.

zāng. This one is dirtier than that one.

dà. This one is bigger than that one.

xiǎo. This one is smaller than that one.

xīn. This one is newer than that one.

jiù. This one is older than that one.

cháng. This one is longer than that one.

héshì. This one is more appropriate than that one.

hóng. This one is redder than that one.

luàn. This one is messier than that one.

hǎo. This one is better than that one.

4. Xiǎo Lǐ bǐ
Xiǎo Zhāng gāo. Little Li is taller than Little Zhang.

ǎi. Little Li is shorter than Little Zhang.

jǐnzhāng. Little Li is more nervous than
Little Zhang.

niánqīng. Little Li is younger than Little
Zhang.

dà. Little Li is older than Little Zhang.

yǒu nàixīn. Little Li is more patient than Little
Zhang.

xǐhuan chī táng. Little Li likes to eat candy more
than Little Zhang.

xǐhuan liáotiān. Little Li likes to chat more than
Little Zhang.

ài shuìjiào. Little Li likes to sleep more than
Little Zhang.

ài gānjìng. Little Li likes cleanliness more
than Little Zhang.

huì wánr. Little Li is better at having a good
time than Little Zhang.

gāo. Little Li is taller than Little Zhang.

5. Wǒmen zhède nuǎnhuo. Winter here is warmer than
dōngtiān bǐ Běijīng in Beijing.

gānzào. Winter here is drier than in
Beijing.

cháoshī. Winter here is more humid
than in Beijing.

shūfu. Winter here is more
comfortable than in Beijing.

lěng. Winter here is colder than in
Beijing.

cháng. Winter here is longer than in
Beijing.

nuǎnhuo. Winter here is warmer than
in Beijing.

6. Zhèige méiyou hǎo. This one is not as good as that
nèige nèmme one.

guì. This one is not as expensive as that one.

piányi. This one is not as cheap as that one.

nán. This one is not as difficult as that one.

róngyi. This one is not as easy as that one.

xiāng. This one doesn't smell as good as that one.

dà. This one is not as big as that one.

hǎo. This one is not as good as that one.

7. Lǎo Sūn méiyǒu cōngmíng. Old Sun is not as smart as
Xiǎo Lǐ nème Little Li.

bèn. Old Sun is not as stupid as Little Li.

kě'ài. Old Sun is not as cute as
Little Li.

yònggōng. Old Sun is not as diligent as
Little Li.

lǎn. Old Sun is not as lazy as
Little Li.

xiǎoxīn. Old Sun is not as careful as
Little Li.

nánguò. Old Sun is not as sad as Little
Li.

xǐhuan xuéxí. Old Sun does not like to
study as much as Little Li.

ài wánr. Old Sun does not like to have
fun as much as Little Li.

cōngmíng. Old Sun is not as smart as
Little Li.

8. Měiguode dōngàn gānzào. The U.S. east coast is not
méiyou zhèr zhème as dry as here.

cháoshī. The U.S. east coast is not
as humid as here.

rè. The U.S. east coast is not
as hot as here.

lěng. The U.S. east coast is not
as cold as here.

shūfu. The U.S. east coast is not
as comfortable as here.

nuǎnhuo. The U.S. east coast is not
as warm as here.

liángkuai. The U.S. east coast is not
as cool as here.

gānzào. The U.S. east coast is not
as dry as here.

9. Nǐ xiànzài Běijīngde le I suppose you're used to
yǐjīng xíguàn qìhòu ba? Beijing's climate now?

dàxuéde I suppose you're used to
shēnghuó college life now?

shítángde fàn I suppose you're used to cafeteria food now?

zhèrde tiānqì I suppose you're used to the weather here now?

tiāntiān shàngkè I suppose you're used to going to class every day now?

hěn wǎn shuìjiào I suppose you're used to sleeping very late now?

Běijīngde qìhòu I suppose you're used to Beijing's climate now?

10. Wǒ gāngbú tài Wǒ lái de shíhòu shìyàng. When I first came, I wasn't very well adjusted.

bù xǐhuan Wǒ lái de shíhòu shìyàng. When I first came, I didn't like it here.

méiyǒu péngyou Wǒ lái de shíhòu shìyàng. When I first came, I didn't have any friends.

bú huì shuō Yīngyǔ Wǒ lái de shíhòu shìyàng. When I first came, I didn't speak English.

hěn bù When I first came, I wasn't
xíguàn. used to things at all.

bú tài When I first came, I wasn't
shìyìng. very well adjusted.

11. Wǒ de shíhou, I was still very young when my
bàba sǐ wǒ hái hěn father died.
xiǎo.

bāndao I was still very young when my
Měiguó father moved to America.

dào I was still very young when my
Jiā'nádà father went abroad to study in
liúxué Canada.

gēn wǒ I was still very young when my
māma mom and dad got divorced.
lìhūn

dàxué I was still very young when my
bìyè father graduated from college.

zài nàr I was still very young when my
gōngzuò father worked there.

zài nàr
jiāoshū

I was still very young when my
father taught there.

sǐ

I was still very young when my
father died.

12. Xī'ànde
fēngjǐng hěn

měi!

The scenery on the west coast is
beautiful!

bàng!

The scenery on the west coast is
great!

hǎokàn!

The scenery on the west coast is
very pretty!

bú cuò!

The scenery on the west coast is
not bad at all!

bù hǎo!

The scenery on the west coast is
very bad!

chà!

The scenery on the west coast is
lacking!

měi!

The scenery on the west coast is
beautiful!

13. Jīntiān
zěmme yòu xià yǔ? How come it's raining again today?
- dǎ léi? How come there is thunder again today?
- yǒu wù? How come there's fog again today?
- yǒu fēng shā? How come there's blowing sand again today?
- xià xuě? How come it's snowing again today?
- shì yīn tiān? How come it's cloudy again today?
- xià yǔ? How come it's raining again today?

3. Transformation and Response Drills

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 1, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Add the final particle a to the following greetings and questions to make them softer and more colloquial.

Nǐ hǎo!

Nǐ hǎo a?

“How are you?”

“How are you?”

Wāng Jīngshēng, nǐ hǎo!

Wāng Jīngshēng, nǐ hǎo a!

“Wang Jingsheng, how are you?”

“Wang Jingsheng, how are you?”

Nǐ dào nǎ qù?

Nǐ dào nǎ qù a?

“Where are you going?”

“Where are you going?”

Kē Léi'ēn dào nǎ qù bàn shì?

Kē Léi'ēn dào nǎ qù bàn shì a?

“Where is Ke Leien going to take care of things?” “Where is Ke Leien going to take care of things?”

2. Use ne to abbreviate the question about the second person.

Wǒ huí sùshè. Nǐ dào nǎr qù? Wǒ huí sùshè. Nǐ ne?

“I’m going back to the dormitory. Where are you going?” “I’m going back to the dormitory. How about you?”

Wǒ qù bàn yidiǎnr shì. Nǐ dào nǎr qù? Wǒ qù bàn yidiǎnr shì. Nǐ ne?

“I’m going to go take care of some stuff. Where are you going?” “I’m going to go take care of some stuff. And you?”

Wǒ qù shítáng. Nǐ dào nǎr qù? Wǒ qù shítáng. Nǐ ne?

“I’m going to the cafeteria. Where are you going?” “I’m going to the cafeteria. And how about you?”

Wǒ qù túshūguǎn. Nǐ dào nǎr qù? Wǒ qù túshūguǎn. Nǐ ne?

“I’m going to the library. Where are you going?” “I’m going to the library. And you?”

3. You will hear a statement about somebody who is going to do something. Repeat the statement and, using the adverb yě “also, too,” add a comment to the effect that you are going to do the same thing as the person being talked about.

Kē Léi’ēn huí Kē Léi’ēn huí sùshè, wǒ yě huí sùshè.
sùshè.

“Ke Leien is returning to the dormitory.” “Ke Leien is returning to the dormitory, and I’m returning to the dormitory, too.”

Wāng Jīngshēng qù Wāng Jīngshēng qù shítáng, wǒ yě qù shítáng.
shítáng.

“Wang Jingsheng is going to the cafeteria.” “Wang Jingsheng is going to the cafeteria, and I’m going to the cafeteria, too.”

Nǐ qù túshūguǎn. Nǐ qù túshūguǎn, wǒ yě qù túshūguǎn.

“You’re going to the library.” “You’re going to the library, and I’m going to the library, too.”

Nǐ qù bàn yidiǎnr Nǐ qù bàn yidiǎnr shì, wǒ yě qù bàn shì.
yidiǎnr shì.

“You’re going to go take care of some things, and I’m going to go take care of some things.”
“You’re going to go take care of some things, and I’m going to go take care of some things, too.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 1, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Add dōu to each sentence.

Wǒ bàba, māma hěn máng. Wǒ bàba, māma dōu hěn máng.

“My father and mother are busy.” “My father and mother are both busy.”

Wǒ àirén, hái zi qù Wǒ àirén, hái zi dōu qù túshūguǎn.
túshūguǎn.

“My spouse and children go to the library.” “My spouse and children all go to the library.”

Tāmen xiān zǒule. Tāmen dōu xiān zǒule.

“They left early.” “They all left early.”

Nǐ bàba, māma hěn lèi.

Nǐ bàba, māma dōu hěn lèi.

“Your father and mother are tired.”

“Your father and mother are both tired.”

2. Change the following statements into questions by adding the question particle ma.

Tāmen hěn máng.

Tāmen hěn máng ma?

“They are busy.”

“Are they very busy?”

Nǐ lèile.

Nǐ lèile ma?

“You’ve gotten tired.”

“Have you gotten tired?”

Tāmen qù túshūguǎn.

Tāmen qù túshūguǎn ma?

“They’re going to the library.”

“Are they going to the library?”

Tā huí sùshè.

Tā huí sùshè ma?

“She’s going back to the dormitory.”

“Is she going back to the dormitory?”

Wǒ àirén xiān zǒule.

Wǒ àirén xiān zǒule ma?

“My spouse left already.”

“Did my spouse leave already?”

Tā hái hǎo.

Tā hái hǎo ma?

“He’s O.K.”

“Is he O.K.?”

3. Create stative verb sentences with hěn using the subjects and stative verbs given you.

Nǐmen, lèi.

Nǐmen hěn lèi.

“You (plural), tired.” “You are very tired.”

Tā, máng.

Tā hěn máng.

“She, busy.”

“She is very busy.”

Wǒ, hǎo.

Wǒ hěn hǎo.

“I, good.”

“I am doing very well.”

Nǐ, máng.

Nǐ hěn máng.

“You, busy.” “You are very busy.”

Tāmen, lèi. Tāmen hěn lèi.

“They, tired.” “They are very tired.”

4. Change the pronoun subject tā to the plural by adding -men.

Tā qù túshūguǎn. Tāmen qù túshūguǎn.

“He’s going to the library.” “They’re going to the library.”

Tā huí sùshè. Tāmen huí sùshè.

“She’s going back to the dormitory.” “They’re going back to the dormitory.”

Tā hěn máng. Tāmen hěn máng.

“He is very busy.” “They are very busy.”

Tā xiān zǒule. Tāmen xiān zǒule.

“She left earlier.” “They left earlier.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 1, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Change the following from the pattern NOUN + STATIVE VERB to the pattern STATIVE VERB USED AS AN ADJECTIVE + NOUN.

Gōngzuò hǎo. Hǎo gōngzuò

“The job is good.” “good job”

Háizi xiǎo. xiǎo háizi

“The child is little.” “little child”

Bàba hǎo. hǎo bàba

“Father is good.” “good father”

Shítáng hǎo. hǎo shítáng

“The cafeteria is good.” “good cafeteria”

Shìr xiǎo. xiǎo shìr

“The matter is small.” “small matter”

Yàngzi lǎo. lǎo yàngzi

“The appearance is old.” “old appearance, old way”

2. Transform the following verbs to the negative with bù. Remember that before syllables in Tone Four, bù changes from Tone Four to Tone Two to become bú.

máng bù máng

“busy” “not busy”

jǐnzhāng bù jǐnzhāng

“nervous” “not nervous”

lèi bú lèi

“tired” “not tired”

xiǎo bù xiǎo

“little” “not little”

lǎo bù lǎo

“old” “not old”

kùn bú kùn

“sleepy” “not sleepy”

nán bù nán

“hard” “not hard”

róngyi bù róngyi

“easy” “not easy”

qù bú qù

“go” “not go”

3. Change the following sentences into the negative by adding
bù or bú.

Wǒ huí sùshè.

Wǒ bù huí sùshè.

“I’m going back to the dormitory.” “I’m not going back to the dormitory.”

Tāmen hǎo ma? Tāmen bù hǎo ma?

“Are they well?” “Are they not well?”

Nǐ hái zi lèi ma? Nǐ hái zi bú lèi ma?

“Is your child tired?” “Is your child not tired?”

Nǐ men hěn máng. Nǐ men bù hěn máng.

“You are very busy.” “You are not very busy.”

Bà ba qù gōng zuò. Bà ba bú qù gōng zuò.

“Father goes to work.” “Father does not go to work.”

Xué xí Zhōng wén nán ma? Xué xí Zhōng wén bù nán ma?

“Is learning Chinese hard?” “Is learning Chinese not hard?”

4. Change the following statements into questions by using the positive-negative question pattern.

Tā qù.

Tā qù bu qù?

“She is going.”

“Is she going or not?”

Nǐ hěn kùn.

Nǐ kùn bu kùn?

“You are sleepy.”

“Are you sleepy or not?”

Tāmen hěn máng.

Tāmen máng bu máng?

“They are busy.”

“Are they busy or not?”

Bàba hěn lèi.

Bàba lèi bu lèi?

“Dad is tired.”

“Is Dad tired or not?”

Māma hěn gāo.

Māma gāo bu gāo?

“Mom is tall.”

“Is Mom tall or not?”

Tā hěn hǎo.

Tā hǎo bu hǎo?

“He is good.”

“Is he good or not?”

Zhōngwén hěn nán. Zhōngwén nán bu nán?

“Chinese is hard.” “Is Chinese hard or not?”

5. Convert the following ma questions into positive-negative questions.

Nǐ zuìjìn hǎo ma?

Nǐ zuìjìn hǎo bu hǎo?

“Have you been well recently?” “Have you been well recently or not?”

Tā qù túshūguǎn ma?

Tā qù bu qù túshūguǎn?

“Does he go to the library?” “Does he go to the library or not?”

Zhōngwén róngyi ma?

Zhōngwén róngyi bu róngyi?

“Is Chinese easy?”

“Is Chinese easy or not?”

Nǐ gōngzuò jǐnzhāng ma?

Nǐ gōngzuò jǐnzhāng bu jǐnzhāng?

“Is your work intense?”

“Is your work intense or not?”

Tā àirén āi ma?

Tā àirén āi bu āi?

“Is her spouse short?”

“Is her spouse short or not?”

Nǐmen qù shítáng ma?

Nǐmen qù bu qù shítáng?

“Do you go to the cafeteria?”

“Do you go to the cafeteria or not?”

6. First listen to each comment about Xiǎo Wáng, then make a comment about yourself using bú tài.

Xiǎo Wáng hěn kùn.

Wǒ bú tài kùn.

“Little Wang is very sleepy.”

“I am not too sleepy.”

Xiǎo Wáng hěn lèi.

Wǒ bú tài lèi.

“Little Wang is very tired.”

“I am not too tired.”

Xiǎo Wáng hěn gāo.

Wǒ bú tài gāo.

“Little Wang is very tall.”

“I am not too tall.”

Xiǎo Wáng zuìjìn hěn hǎo.

Wǒ zuìjìn bú tài hǎo.

“Little Wang has been very well.” “I have not been too well recently.”

Xiǎo Wáng hěn lǎo. Wǒ bú tài lǎo.

“Little Wang is very old.” “I am not too old.”

Xiǎo Wáng gōngzuò hěn jǐnzhāng. Wǒ gōngzuò bú tài jǐnzhāng.

“Little Wang is very nervous at work.” “I am not too nervous at work.”

7. Transform the following sentences from the hěn + STATIVE VERB pattern to the tǐng...-de pattern.

Tā hěn kùn. Tā tǐng kùnde.

“He is very sleepy.” “He is quite sleepy.”

Zhōngwén hěn nán. Zhōngwén tǐng nánde.

“Chinese is very hard.” “Chinese is quite hard.”

Wǒ māma hěn máng. Wǒ māma tǐng mángde.

“My mother is very busy.” “My mother is quite busy.”

Nǐ àirén hěn ǎi. Nǐ àirén tǐng ǎide.

“Your spouse is very short.” “Your spouse is quite short.”

Tā bàba hěn lǎo. Tā bàba tǐng lǎode.

“Her father is very old.” “Her father is quite old.”

Nǐ yàngzi hěn jǐnzhāng. Nǐ yàngzi tǐng jǐnzhāngde.

“You look like you’re very nervous.” “You look like you’re quite nervous.”

Tā zuìjìn gōngzuò hěn lèi. Tā zuìjìn gōngzuò tǐng lèide.

“He is very tired from work lately.” “He is quite tired from work lately.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 1, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Add the surname and title of the wife to the husband’s surname and title.

Zhào Xiānsheng Zhào Xiānsheng, Zhào Tàitai.

“Mr. Zhao” “Mr. and Mrs. Zhao”

Gāo Xiānsheng Gāo Xiānsheng, Gāo Tàitai.

“Mr. Gao” “Mr. and Mrs. Gao”

Wáng Xiānsheng Wáng Xiānsheng, Wáng Tàitai

“Mr. Wang” “Mr. and Mrs. Wang”

Kē Xiānsheng Kē Xiānsheng, Kē Tàitai

“Mr. Ke” “Mr. and Mrs. Ke”

Lín Xiānsheng Lín Xiānsheng, Lín Tàitai

“Mr. Lin” “Mr. and Mrs. Lin”

Xiè Xiānsheng Xiè Xiānsheng, Xiè Tàitai

“Mr. Xie” “Mr. and Mrs. Xie”

2. Add the title Xiáojie to each of the following surnames.

Wáng Wáng Xiáojie

“Wang” “Miss/Ms. Wang”

Lín Lín Xiáojie

“Lin” “Miss/Ms. Lin”

Hé Hé Xiáojie

“He” “Miss/Ms. He”

Xiè Xiè Xiáojie

“Xie” “Miss/Ms. Xie”

Gāo Gāo Xiáojie

“Gao” “Miss/Ms. Gao”

Zhào Zhào Xiáojie

“Zhao” “Miss/Ms. Zhao”

3. Add the title Lǎoshī to each of the following surnames.

Lín Lín Lǎoshī

“Lin” “Teacher Lin”

Xiè Xiè Lǎoshī

“Xie” “Teacher Xie”

Gāo Gāo Lǎoshī

“Gao” “Teacher Gao”

Zhào Zhào Lǎoshī

“Zhao” “Teacher Zhao”

Hé Hé Lǎoshī

“He” “Teacher He”

Wáng Wáng Lǎoshī

“Wang” “Teacher Wang”

4. Add qǐng to the following sentences to create polite imperatives.

Nǐ qù shítáng.

Qǐng nǐ qù shítáng.

“You go to the cafeteria.”

“Please go to the cafeteria.”

Nǐ qù gōngzuò.

Qǐng nǐ qù gōngzuò.

“You go work.”

“Please go work.”

Tā huí sùshè.

Qǐng tā huí sùshè.

“He goes back to the dormitory.”

“Ask him to please go back to the dormitory.”

Nǐmen qù túshūguǎn yìdiǎnr shì.

Qǐng nǐmen qù túshūguǎn bàn yìdiǎnr shì.

“You go to the library and take care of some stuff.”

“Please go to the library and take care of some stuff.”

Tāmen xiān zǒu.

Qǐng tāmen xiān zǒu.

“They leave earlier.”

“Ask them to please leave earlier.”

5. Add changed status le to the following sentences.

Wǒ děi qù gōngzuò.

Wǒ děi qù gōngzuòle.

“I have to go to work.”

“I have to go to work now.”

Tā zěmmeyàng?

Tā zěmmeyàng le?

“How is he?”

“What happened to him?”

Tā xiān zǒu.

Tā xiān zǒule.

“She leaves earlier.”

“She left earlier already.”

Xiǎo Lín qù shítáng.

Xiǎo Lín qù shítáng le.

“Little Lin goes to the cafeteria.”

“Little Lin went to the cafeteria.”

Shéi bú qù?

Shéi bú qùle?

“Who is not going?”

“Who is not going now?”

Tāmen huí sùshè.

Tāmen huí sùshè le.

“They go back to the dormitory.” “They went back to the dormitory.”

6. Add changed status le to the following questions ending in ma.

Tā māma hǎo ma? Tā māma hǎole ma?

“Is her mother well?” “Has her mother gotten well?”

Nǐ jǐnzhāng ma? Nǐ jǐnzhāng le ma?

“Are you nervous?” “Have you gotten nervous?”

Wǒmen kéyì huí sùshè ma? Wǒmen kéyì huí sùshè le ma?

“Can we go back to the dormitory?” “Can we go back to the dormitory now?”

Tā qù túshūguǎn bàn shì ma? Tā qù túshūguǎn bàn shì le ma?

“Is he going to the library to take care of some stuff?” “Has he gone to the library to take care of some stuff?”

Háizi kùn ma?

Háizi kùnle ma?

“Are the kids sleepy?”

“Have the kids gotten sleepy?”

Nǐmen qù shítáng ma?

Nǐmen qù shítáng le ma?

“Are you going to the
cafeteria?”

“Have you gone to the
cafeteria?”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 2, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Respond to the following questions with an equative verb sentence beginning with shì.

Tā shì Měiguó rén ma? Shì, tā shì Měiguó rén.

“Is she American?” “Yes, she is American.”

Tā shì Zhōngguó rén ma? Shì, tā shì Zhōngguó rén.

“Is he Chinese?” “Yes, he is Chinese.”

Tā shì Wáng Lǎoshī ma? Shì, tā shì Wáng Lǎoshī.

“Is she Teacher Wang?” “Yes, she is Teacher Wang.”

Tā shì nǐ àirén ma? Shì, tā shì wǒ àirén.

“Is he your spouse?” “Yes, he is my spouse.”

Nǐ shì tā bàba ma? Shì, wǒ shì tā bàba.

“Are you her father?” “Yes, I am her father.”

Nǐ shì tā māma ma? Shì, wǒ shì tā māma.

“Are you his mother?” “Yes, I am his mother.”

2. Respond to the following questions with a negative equative verb sentence beginning with *bú shì*.

Nǐ shì Zhōngwén lǎoshī ma? *Bú shì*, wǒ *bú shì* Zhōngwén lǎoshī.

“Are you a Chinese teacher?” “No, I am not a Chinese teacher.”

Nǐ shì Lín Xiǎojie ma? *Bú shì*, wǒ *bú shì* Lín Xiǎojie.

“Are you Ms. Lin?”

“No, I am not Ms. Lin.”

Nǐmen shì Jiā'nádà rén Bú shì, wǒmen bú shì Jiā'nádà
ma? rén.

“Are you all Canadian?”

“No, we're not Canadian.”

Tā shì Wáng Xiānsheng Bú shì, tā bú shì Wáng
ma? Xiānsheng.

“Is he Mr. Wang?”

“No, he's not Mr. Wang.”

3. Respond to the following questions either with an equative verb sentence beginning with Shì or with a negative equative verb sentence beginning with Bú shì, depending on the cue provided.

Tā shì nǐ bàba ma? (Shì.)

Shì, tā shì wǒ bàba.

“Is he your dad?” (“Yes.”)

“Yes, he is my dad.”

Tā shì nǐ māma ma? (Bú shì.)

Bú shì, tā bú shì wǒ māma.

“Is she your mom?” (“No.”)

“No, she's not my mom.”

Qǐng wèn, nǐ shì Bái Lǎoshī Bú shì, wǒ bú shì Bái
ma? (Bú shì.) Lǎoshī.

“Excuse me, are you Teacher Bai?” “No, I’m not Teacher Bai.”
Bai?” (“No.”)

Tā shì Huáyì Měiguó rén ma? Shì, tā shì Huáyì Měiguó
(Shì.) rén.

“Is he an American of Chinese descent?” “Yes, he’s an American of
descent?” (“Yes.”) Chinese descent.”

Nǐmen shì Táiwān rén ma? (Bú Bú shì, wǒmen bú shì
shì.) Táiwān rén.

“Are you Taiwanese?” (“No.”) “No, we’re not Taiwanese.”

4. Transform the following statements into questions using
shì bu shì.

Tā shì Rìběn rén. Tā shì bu shì Rìběn rén?

“He is Japanese.” “Is he Japanese?”

Nǐ shì tā àirén. Nǐ shì bu shì tā àirén?

“You are her spouse.” “Are you her spouse?”

Nǐmen shì Xībānyá rén. Nǐmen shì bu shì Xībānyá rén?

“You are Spanish.” “Are you Spanish?”

Tā shì Wáng Xiáojie. Tā shì bu shì Wáng Xiáojie?

“She is Miss Wang.” “Is she Miss Wang?”

Nǐ zuìjìn hěn máng. Nǐ zuìjìn shì bu shì hěn máng?

“You have been very busy recently.” “Have you been very busy lately?”

Tā dào túshūguǎn qù. Tā shì bu shì dào túshūguǎn qù?

“He is going to the library.” “Is it the case that he’s going to the library?”

5. Answer the following questions about nationality using the cues provided.

Tā shì něiguó rén? (Jiā’nádà rén) Tā shì Jiā’nádà rén.

“What nationality is he?” “He’s Canadian.”
 (“Canadian”)

Nǐ àirén shì nǚguó rén? (Rìběn rén) Tā shì Rìběn rén.

“What nationality is your spouse?” “She’s Japanese.”
 (“Japanese”)

Nín shì nǚguó rén? (Měiguó rén) Wǒ shì Měiguó rén.

“What nationality are you?” “I’m American.”
 (“American”)

Mǎ Xiǎojié shì nǚguó rén? (Zhōngguó Mǎ Xiǎojié shì
rén) Zhōngguó rén.

“What nationality is Ms. Ma?” “Ms. Ma is Chinese.”

Xiǎo Lín shì nǚguó rén? (Mǎláixīyà Xiǎo Lín shì
rén) Mǎláixīyà rén.

“What nationality is Little Lin?” “Little Lin is
 (“Malaysian”) Malaysian.”

Nǐ lǎoshī shì nǚguó rén? (Xīnjiāpō Wǒ lǎoshī shì
rén) Xīnjiāpō rén.

“What nationality is your teacher?” “My teacher is
 (“Singaporean”) Singaporean.”

6. Respond to the following questions about someone’s name using the cues provided.

Tā jiào shémme míngzi? (Hé Tā jiào Hé Zhìwén.
Zhìwén)

“What is his name?” “He is called He Zhiwen.”

Nǐ àirén jiào shémme míngzi? Wǒ àirén jiào Wáng
(Wáng Dàmíng) Dàmíng.

“What is your spouse’s name?” “My spouse is called
Wang Daming.”

Nǐ māma jiào shémme míngzi? Wǒ māma jiào Xiè
(Xiè Wéntíng) Wéntíng.

“What is your mom’s name?” “My mom’s name is Xie
Wenting.”

Nǐ bàba jiào shémme míngzi? Wǒ bàba jiào Zhào Guóli.
(Zhào Guóli)

“What is your dad’s name?” “My dad’s name is Zhao Guoli.”

Nǐ jiào shémmé míngzi? (give your own name) Wǒ jiào...

“What is your name?” “My name is...”

7. Negate the following sentences by placing a *bù* before the *dōu*.

Tāmen dōu shì Zhōngguó rén. Tāmen bù dōu shì Zhōngguó rén.

“They are all Chinese.” “They are not all Chinese.”

Tāmen dōu hěn kùn. Tāmen bù dōu hěn kùn.

“They are all very sleepy.” “They are not all very sleepy.”

Wǒmen dōu huí sùshè. Wǒmen bù dōu huí sùshè.

“We are all going back to the dorm.” “We are not all going back to the dorm.”

Wōmen dōu shì Huáyì Wōmen bù dōu shì Huáyì
Měiguó rén. Měiguó rén.

“We are all Chinese-Americans.” “We are not all Chinese-Americans.”

Nǐmen dōu shì hǎo hái zi! Nǐmen bù dōu shì hǎo hái zi!

“You are all good children!” “You are not all good children!”

Dōu shì xiǎo shì. Bù dōu shì xiǎo shì.

“They are all small matters.” “They are not all small matters.”

8. Disagree with your interlocutor. Answer “It’s not THIS person, it’s THAT person!” etc.

Shì zhèige rén ma? Bú shì zhèige rén, shì nèige rén!

“Is it this person?” “It’s not this person, it’s that person!”

Shì zhèige hái zi ma? Bú shì zhèige hái zi, shì nèige hái zi!

“Was it this kid?” “It wasn’t this kid, it was that kid!”

Shì zhèiwèi lǎoshī ma? Bú shì zhèiwèi lǎoshī, shì nèiwèi lǎoshī!

“Is it this teacher?” “It isn’t this teacher, it’s that teacher!”

Shì zhèiwèi tóngxué ma? Bú shì zhèiwèi tóngxué, shì nèiwèi tóngxué!

“Is it this classmate?” “It isn’t this classmate, it’s that classmate!”

Shì zhèige míngzi ma? Bú shì zhèige míngzi, shì nèige míngzi!

“Was it this name?” “It wasn’t this name, it was that name!”

Shì zhèige sùshè ma? Bú shì zhèige sùshè, shì nèige sùshè!

“Was it this dormitory?” “It wasn’t this dormitory, it was that dormitory!”

9. Respond to the questions with *něi*- “which?” by using *nèi*- “that.”

Shì něige rén?

Shì nège rén!

“Which person was it?”

“It was that person!”

Shì něige hái?zi?

Shì nège hái?zi!

“Which child was it?”

“It was that child!”

Shì něiwèi lǎoshī?

Shì nèiwèi lǎoshī!

“Which teacher is it?”

“It’s that teacher!”

Shì něiwèi tóngxué?

Shì nèiwèi tóngxué!

“Which classmate is it?”

“It’s that classmate!”

Shì něige gōngzuò?

Shì nège gōngzuò!

“Which job was it?”

“It was that job!”

Shì něige shítáng?

Shì nège shítáng!

“Which dining hall was it?” “It was that dining hall!”

10. Confirm the truth of what your interlocutor says about the first person by repeating it, but add the new and different information about the other person that is given in the cue by using kěshi.

Lǎo Wáng shì Měiguó rén. Lǎo Wáng shì Měiguó rén, kěshi
(Xiǎo Lín, Mǎláixīyà rén) Xiǎo Lín shì Mǎláixīyà rén.

“Old Wang is American.” “Old Wang is American, but
 (“Little Lin, Malaysian”) Little Lin is Malaysian.”

Lǎo Bái shì Měiguó rén. Lǎo Bái shì Měiguó rén, kěshi
(Xiǎo Hé, Xībānyá rén) Xiǎo Hé shì Xībānyá rén.

“Old Bai is American.” “Old Bai is American, but Little
 (“Little He, Spanish”) He is Spanish.”

Lǎo Gāo shì Zhōngguó rén. Lǎo Gāo shì Zhōngguó rén,
(Xiǎo Zhào, Rìběn rén) kěshi Xiǎo Zhào shì Rìběn rén.

“Old Gao is Chinese.” “Old Gao is Chinese, but Little
 (“Little Zhao, Japanese”) Zhao is Japanese.”

Lǎo Lǐ shì Táiwān rén. Lǎo Lǐ shì Táiwān rén, kěshi
(Xiǎo Kē, Xīnjiāpō rén) Xiǎo Kē shì Xīnjiāpō rén.

“Old Li is Taiwanese.” “Old Li is Taiwanese, but Little
 (“Little Ke, Singaporean”) Ke is Singaporean.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 2, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Combine the first noun or pronoun with the noun that follows by adding -de.

wǒ, àirén

wǒde àirén

“I, spouse”

“my spouse”

Lǎo Chén, tóngxué

Lǎo Chénde tóngxué

“Old Chen, classmate”

“Old Chen’s classmate”

tā, bàba

tāde bàba

“he/she, father”

“his/her father”

nǐmen, sùshè

nǐmende sùshè

“you all, dormitory”

“your dormitory”

tāmen, māma

tāmende māma

“they, mother”

“their mother”

Zhào tóngxué, tóngwū

Zhào tóngxuéde tóngwū

“classmate Zhao, roommate” “classmate Zhao’s roommate”

2. Transform the sentences with lái or qù followed directly by a place word to the dào...lái or dào...qù pattern.

Hěn gāoxìng nǐ lái Běijīng!

Hěn gāoxìng nǐ dào Běijīng lái!

“I’m glad you’ve come to Beijing!”

to “I’m glad you’ve come to Beijing!”

Huānyíng nǐ lái Táiwān!

Huānyíng nǐ dào Táiwān lái!

“Welcome to Taiwan!”

“Welcome to Taiwan!”

Qǐng nǐ qù wǒde sùshè.

Qǐng nǐ dào wǒde sùshè qù.

“Please go to my dormitory.” “Please go to my dormitory.”

Búyào qù túshūguǎn!

Búyào dào túshūguǎn qù!

“Don’t go to the library!”

“Don’t go to the library!”

Tā qù Rìběn le.

Tā dào Rìběn qùle.

“He went to Japan.”

“He has gone to Japan.”

Nǐ yīnggāi lái wǒde gōngsī.

Nǐ yīnggāi dào wǒde gōngsī lái.

“You should come to my company.”

“You should come to my company.”

3. Change the following imperative sentences to negative imperatives by using bié.

Qǐng nǐ qù gōngzuò.

Qǐng nǐ bié qù gōngzuò.

“Please go to work.”

“Please don’t go to work.”

Qǐng tāmen lái Táiwān.

Qǐng tāmen bié lái Táiwān.

“Ask them to come to Taiwan.”

“Ask them not to come to Taiwan.”

Chén Xiáojie, qǐng zuò. Chén Xiáojie, qǐng bié zuò.

“Miss Chen, please sit.” “Miss Chen, please don’t sit.”

Bàba, qǐng zǒu. Bàba, qǐng bié zǒu.

“Father, please go.” “Father, please don’t go.”

Qǐng nǐmen jiào wǒ Lǎo Chén. Qǐng nǐmen bié jiào wǒ Lǎo Chén.

“You all please call me Old Chen.” “You all please don’t call me Old Chen.”

4. Change the following negative imperative sentences with búyào to positive imperatives by deleting the búyào.

Qǐng nǐ búyào qù túshūguǎn. Qǐng nǐ qù túshūguǎn.

“Please don’t go to the library.” “Please go to the library.”

Qǐng nǐ búyào huí sùshè. Qǐng nǐ huí sùshè.

“Please don’t go back to the dormitory.” “Please go back to the dormitory.”

Qǐng tāmen búyào lái Měiguó. Qǐng tāmen lái Měiguó.

“Ask them not to come to the States.” “Ask them to come to the States.”

Qǐng nǐmen búyào qù Zhōngguó. Qǐng nǐmen qù Zhōngguó.

“Please don’t go to China.” “Please go to China.”

Qǐng nǐ búyào zème chēnghu wǒ. Qǐng nǐ zème chēnghu wǒ.

“Please don’t address me in this way.” “Please address me in this way.”

Qǐng nǐmen búyào qù gōngzuò. Qǐng nǐmen qù gōngzuò.

“Please don’t go to work.” “Please go to work.”

5. Respond to each question using the cue provided.

Zhè shì shéide lǎoshī? (wǒde) Zhè shì wǒde lǎoshī.

“This is whose teacher?” (“my”) “This is my teacher.”

Zhè shì shéide hái? (nǐde)

Zhè shì nǐde hái.

“Whose kid is this?” (“your”)

“This is your kid.”

Zhè shì shéide bàba? (tāmende)

Zhè shì tāmende bàba.

“Whose father is this?” (“their”)

“This is their father.”

Nà shì shéide àirén? (wǒde)

Nà shì wǒde àirén.

“Whose spouse is that?” (“my”)

“That is my spouse.”

Nà shì shéide māma? (tāmende)

Nà shì tāmende māma.

“Whose mother is that?” (“their”)

“That is their mother.”

Zhè shì shéide tóngxué? (nǐmende) Zhè shì nǐmende tóngxué.

“Whose classmate is this?”
 (“your”)

“This is your classmate.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 2, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Transform the polite questions with guìxìng to more ordinary questions with xìng shémme. Remember also to change polite nín to ordinary nǐ.

Nín guìxìng?

Nǐ xìng shémme?

“What’s your last name?”

“What’s your last name?”

Nèiwèi nǚshì guìxìng?

Nèiwèi nǚshì xìng shémme?

“What’s that lady’s last name?”

“What’s that lady’s last name?”

Nèiwèi lǎoshī guìxìng?

Nèiwèi lǎoshī xìng shémme?

“What’s that teacher’s last name?”

“What’s that teacher’s last name?”

Qǐng wèn, xiáojie, nín guìxìng?

Qǐng wèn, xiáojie, nǐ xìng shémme?

“Excuse me, Miss, what’s your last name?”

“Excuse me, Miss, what’s your last name?”

Zhèiwèi dàxué xiàozhǎng guìxìng?

Zhèiwèi dàxué xiàozhǎng xìng shémme?

“What’s this college president’s last name?” “What’s this college president’s last name?”

2. Explain that, by golly, your roommate, classmate, colleague, etc. has the same surname as the speaker’s!

Wǒde tóngwū xìng Gāo. Wǒde tóngwū yě xìng Gāo!

“My roommate’s last name is Gao.” “My roommate’s last name is also Gao!”

Wǒde tóngxué xìng Lín. Wǒde tóngxué yě xìng Lín!

“My classmate’s last name is Lin.” “My classmate’s last name is also Lin!”

Wǒde tóngshì xìng Chén. Wǒde tóngshì yě xìng Chén!

“My colleague’s last name is Chen.” “My colleague’s last name is also Chen!”

Wǒde Zhōngwén lǎoshī xìng Wú. Wǒde Zhōngwén lǎoshī yě xìng Wú!

“My Chinese teacher’s last name is Wu.” “My Chinese teacher’s last name is also Wu!”

Wǒ māma xìng Mǎ.

Wǒ māma yě xìng Mǎ!

“My mom’s last name is Ma.” “My mom’s last name is also Ma!”

Wǒmēnde xiàozhǎng xìng Hé. Wǒmēnde xiàozhǎng yě xìng Hé!

“Our college president’s surname is He.” “Our college president’s surname is also He!”

3. Add ba to the following sentences to indicate that you think what you said is probably so.

Nǐ yě shì lǎoshī.

Nǐ yě shì lǎoshī ba?

“You are a teacher, too.” “You are a teacher too, I guess?”

Tā shì nǐde tóngshì.

Tā shì nǐde tóngshì ba?

“She is your co-worker.” “She is your co-worker, I suppose?”

Xiǎo Zhào bú shì Zhōngguó rén. Xiǎo Zhào bú shì Zhōngguó rén ba?

“Little Zhao is not Chinese.” “I suppose Little Zhao is not Chinese?”

Nǐ zài Wàijiāobù gōngzuò. Nǐ zài Wàijiāobù gōngzuò ba?

“You work at the Foreign Ministry.” “I guess you work at the Foreign Ministry?”

Chén Xiáojie shì Mǎláixīyà rén. Chén Xiáojie shì Mǎláixīyà rén ba?

“Miss Chen is Malaysian.” “Miss Chen is Malaysian, I guess?”

Tāmen bú rènshi nǐ. Tāmen bú rènshi nǐ ba?

“They are not acquainted with you.” “They are not acquainted with you, I assume?”

4. Respond to the following questions using the cue provided.

Nǐ zài nǎr gōngzuò a? (shítáng) Wǒ zài shítáng gōngzuò.

“Where do you work?” “I work at the cafeteria.”
 (“cafeteria”)

Nǐmen zài nǎr gōngzuò a? Wǒmen zài dàshǐguǎn
(dàshǐguǎn) gōngzuò.

“Where do you all work?” “We work at the embassy.”
 (“embassy”)

Tā zài nǎr gōngzuò a? (dàxué) Tā zài dàxué gōngzuò.

“Where does she work?” “She works at the
 (“university”) university.”

Tāmen zài nǎr gōngzuò a? Tāmen zài túshūguǎn
(túshūguǎn) gōngzuò.

“Where do they work?” “They work at the library.”
 (“library”)

Xiǎo Chén zài nǎr gōngzuò a? Xiǎo Chén zài gōngsī
(gōngsī) gōngzuò.

“Where does Little Chen work?” “Little Chen works at the
 (“company”) company.”

Lǎo Zhào zài nǎr gōngzuò a? Lǎo Zhào zài Wàijiāobù
(Wàijiāobù) gōngzuò.

“Where does Old Zhao work?” “Old Zhao works at the
 (“Foreign Ministry”) Foreign Ministry.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 2, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Transform the following sentences from *bù* to past negative with *méi*.

Wǒ bù lái.

Wǒ méi lái.

“I’m not coming.”

“I didn’t come.”

Wǒ bù zǒu.

Wǒ méi zǒu.

“I’m not leaving.”

“I didn’t leave.”

Wǒ bú dài míngpiàn.

Wǒ méi dài míngpiàn.

“I don’t carry name cards.”

“I didn’t carry name cards.”

Tā bú qù Zhōngguo.

Tā méi qù Zhōngguo.

“She’s not going to China.”

“She didn’t go to China.”

Nǐ yě bú wèn zěmme qù.

Nǐ yě méi wèn zěmme qù.

“And you don’t ask how to go.” “And you didn’t ask how to go.”

Nǐmen bù huí sùshè ma?

Nǐmen méi huí sùshè ma?

“You’re not going back to the dorm?” “You didn’t go back to the dorm?”

Nǐmen bú qù gōngsī ma?

Nǐmen méi qù gōngsī ma?

“You’re not going to the company?” “You didn’t go to the company?”

2. Transform the following sentences with the coverb *zài* describing where someone works to noun phrases with *-de* that indicate a person’s affiliation.

Nèiwèi Shī Xiáojie zài Zhōng-Měi Mào yì Gōngsī de Zhōng-Měi Mào yì Gōngsī nèiwèi Shī Xiáojie gōngzuò.

“That Miss Shi works at that Miss Shi from the Sino-American Sino-American trading company” Trading Company.”

Nèiwèi Mǎ Xiǎojié zài Měiguó Dàshìguǎn nèiwèi Mǎ
Měiguó Dàshìguǎn Xiǎojié
gōngzuò.

“That Ms. Ma works at the “that Ms. Ma from the American
American Embassy.” Embassy”

Nèiwèi Hé Lǎoshī zài Táiwān Dàxuéde nèiwèi Hé
Táiwān Dàxué gōngzuò. Lǎoshī

“That Prof. He works at “that Prof. He from Taiwan
Taiwan University.” University”

Nèiwèi Wú Xiǎojié zài wàijiāobùde nèiwèi Wú Xiǎojié
Wàijiāobù gōngzuò. Wàiji

“That Miss Wu works at “that Miss Wu from the Foreign
the Foreign Ministry.” Ministry”

3. Transform the sentences with *bù dōu* to *dōu bù*.

Tāmen *bù dōu* shì Rìběn rén. Tāmen *dōu bù* shì Rìběn rén.

“They are not all Japanese.” “They all are not Japanese.”

Wǒmen bù dōu zài Wàijiāobù Wǒmen dōu bú zài Wàijiāobù
gōngzuò. gōngzuò.

“We don’t all work at the Foreign Ministry.” “We all don’t work at the
Foreign Ministry.”

Tāmen bù dōu rènshì Wáng Tāmen dōu bú rènshì Wáng
Xiáojie. Xiáojie.

“They don’t all know Ms. Wang.” “None of them knows Ms.
Wang.”

Wǒmen bù dōu xuéxí Wǒmen dōu bù xuéxí
Zhōngwén. Zhōngwén.

“We don’t all learn Chinese.” “None of us is learning
Chinese.”

Tāmen bù dōu huānyíng wǒ Tāmen dōu bù huānyíng wǒ
dào Běijīng qù. dào Běijīng qù.

“Not all of them welcome me to go to Beijing.” “None of them welcomes me
to go to Beijing.”

4. Transform the expressions with zhèi- to nèi- and also add yě.

Zhèiwèi xiānsheng xìng Wáng. Nèiwèi xiānsheng yě xìng Wáng.

“This gentleman’s last name is Wang.” “That gentleman’s last name is also Wang.”

Zhèiwèi tàitai xìng Bái. Nèiwèi tàitai yě xìng Bái.

“This lady’s last name is Bai.” “That lady’s last name is also Bai.”

Zhèiwèi xiáojie xìng Lín. Nèiwèi xiáojie yě xìng Lín.

“This young lady’s name is Lin.” “That young lady’s last name is also Lin.”

Zhèige háizi hěn lèi. Nèige háizi yě hěn lèi.

“This child is very tired.” “That child is also very tired.”

Zhèiwèi jīnglǐ hěn gāoxìng. Nèiwèi jīnglǐ yě hěn gāoxìng.

“This manager is very happy.” “That manager is also very happy.”

wǒmen (tāmen)

wǒmen gēn tāmen

“we” (“they”)

“we and they”

Lǎo Lǐ (Xiǎo Bái)

Lǎo Lǐ gēn Xiǎo Bái

“Old Li” (“Little Bai”)

“Old Li and Little Bai”

àirén (háizi)

àirén gēn háizi

“spouse” (“child”)

“spouse and child”

xiānsheng (tàitai)

xiānsheng gēn tàitai

“husband” (“wife”)

“husband and wife”

Zhōngguo (Táiwān)

Zhōngguo gēn Táiwān

“Mainland China” (“Taiwan”) “Mainland China and Taiwan”

Zhōngguo rén (Měiguó rén)

Zhōngguo rén gēn Měiguó rén

“Chinese” (“Americans”)

“Chinese and Americans”

6. Transform each phrase or sentence that you hear into a politer equivalent.

Nǐ hǎo!

Nín hǎo!

“How are you?”

“How do you do?”

Nǐ xìng shémme?

Nín guìxìng?

“What’s your name?”

last “What is your honorable surname?”

zhèige xiānsheng

zhèiwèi xiānsheng

“this man”

“this gentleman”

nèige tàitai

nèiwèi tàitai

“that lady”

“that lady”

Něige xiáojie?

Něiwèi xiáojie?

“Which young woman?” “Which young lady?”

zhèige xiàozhǎng

zhèiwèi xiàozhǎng

“this school principal”

“this school principal”

nèige zōngjīnglǐ

nèiwèi zōngjīnglǐ

“that general manager”

“that general manager”

Nèige nǚshì?

Nèiwèi nǚshì?

“Which lady?”

“Which lady?”

yíge lǎoshī

yíwèi lǎoshī

“a teacher”

“a teacher”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 3, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Say the number that comes after the number you hear.

liù qī

“six” “seven”

jiǔ shí

“nine” “ten”

yī èr

“one” “two”

sì wǔ

“four” “five”

qī bā

“seven” “eight”

èr sān

“two” “three”

bā jiǔ

“eight” “nine”

sān sì

“three” “four”

wǔ liù

“five” “six”

2. Say the number that comes before the number you hear.

qī liù

“seven” “six”

shí jiǔ

“ten” “nine”

èr yī

“two” “one”

jiǔ bā

“nine” “eight”

wǔ sì

“five” “four”

sān èr

“three” “two”

liù wǔ

“six” “five”

bā qī

“eight” “seven”

sì sān

“four” “three”

3. Comment that, in each case, you have one more student in your class than the speaker does.

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu jiǔge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu shíge
tóngxué. tóngxué.

“Our class has nine classmates.” “Our class has ten classmates.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu liǎngge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu sān’ge
tóngxué. tóngxué.

“Our class has two classmates.” “Our class has three classmates.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu liùge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu qíge
tóngxué. tóngxué.

“Our class has six classmates.” “Our class has seven classmates.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu sìge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu wǔge
tóngxué. tóngxué.

“Our class has four” “Our class has five
classmates.” classmates.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu sān’ge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu sìge
tóngxué. tóngxué.

“Our class has three” “Our class has four
classmates.” classmates.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu qíge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu bāge
tóngxué. tóngxué.

“Our class has seven” “Our class has eight
classmates.” classmates.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu wǔge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu liùge
tóngxué. tóngxué.

“Our class has five” “Our class has six
classmates.” classmates.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu bāge Wǒmen bānshang yǒu jiǔge
tóngxué. tóngxué.

“Our class has eight classmates.” “Our class has nine classmates.”

4. Comment that, in each case, the ratio of male students to female students in your class is the exact reverse of the speaker’s class.

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu liǎngge nánshēng, yíge nǚshēng. Wǒmen bānshang yǒu yíge nánshēng, liǎngge nǚshēng.

“Our class has two guys, one girl.” “Our class has one guy, two girls.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu sān’ge nánshēng, sìge nǚshēng. Wǒmen bānshang yǒu sìge nánshēng, sān’ge nǚshēng.

“Our class has three guys, four girls.” “Our class has four guys, three girls.”

Wǒmen bānshang yǒu wǔge nánshēng, liùge nǚshēng. Wǒmen bānshang yǒu liùge nánshēng, wǔge nǚshēng.

“Our class has five guys, six girls.” “Our class has six guys, five girls.”

Wōmen bānshang yǒu qíge Wōmen bānshang yǒu bāge
nánshēng, bāge nǚshēng. nánshēng, qíge nǚshēng.

“Our class has seven guys, “Our class has eight guys,
eight girls.” seven girls.”

Wōmen bānshang yǒu jiǔge Wōmen bānshang yǒu shíge
nánshēng, shíge nǚshēng. nánshēng, jiǔge nǚshēng.

“Our class has nine guys, ten “Our class has ten guys, nine
girls.” girls.”

5. Use the conjunction *nà* and the final particle *ne* to introduce the new topic indicated.

Tāmen bānshang yǒu shíge tóngxué. *Nà*, nǐmen bānshang
(nǐmen bānshang) *ne*?

“Their class has ten classmates.” “And how about your
 (“your class”) class?”

Tā yǒu sānwèi Zhōngwén lǎoshī. (nǐ) *Nà*, nǐ *ne*?

“He has three Chinese teachers.” “And what about
 (“you”) you?”

Wǒmende gōngsī yǒu liǎngwèi jīnglǐ. Nà, nǐde gōngsī ne?
(nǐde gōngsī)

“Our company has two managers.” “And what about your
 (“your company”) company?”

Tāde lǎoshī dōu shì nánde. (nǐde Nà, nǐde lǎoshī ne?
lǎoshī)

“Her teachers are all male.” (“your “And what about your
 teachers”) teachers?”

Tā xìng Chén. (nǐ) Nà, nǐ ne?

“Her last name is Chen.” (“you”) “And what about
 you?”

6. Convert the following Beijing-style pronunciations to non-Beijing-style pronunciations.

yìdiǎnr yìdiǎn

“a little bit” “a little bit”

shìr shì

“matter”

“matter”

yíxià

yíxià

“(softens the verb)”“(softens the verb)”

tóngwū

tóngwū

“roommate”

“roommate”

yíbàn

yíbàn

“half”

“half”

yíbàn yíbàn

yíbàn yíbàn

“half and half”

“half and half”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 3, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. In answering the question, comment that you are, in each case, three years older than your interlocutor.

Wǒ jīnnián shíliùsùì. Nǐ ne? Wǒ jīnnián shíjiǔsùì.

“I am sixteen this year. And you?” “I am nineteen this year.”

Wǒ jīnnián èrshiyīsùì. Nǐ ne? Wǒ jīnnián èrshísùì.

“I am twenty-one this year. And you?” “I am twenty-four this year.”

Wǒ jīnnián sānshíbāsùì. Nǐ ne? Wǒ jīnnián sìshiyīsùì.

“I am thirty-eight this year. And you?” “I am forty-one this year.”

Wǒ jīnnián sìshiwūsùì. Nǐ ne? Wǒ jīnnián sìshíbāsùì.

“I am forty-five this year. And you?” “I am forty-eight this year.”

Wǒ jīnnián wǔshiqīsùì. Nǐ ne? Wǒ jīnnián liùshísùì.

“I am fifty-seven this year. And you?” “I am sixty this year.”

Wǒ jīnnián liùshiliùsùì. Nǐ ne? Wǒ jīnnián liùshíjiǔsùì.

“I am sixty-six this year. And “I am sixty-nine this
you?” year.”

2. In responding, comment that your mother is, in each case,
six years younger than your interlocutor’s mother.

Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián sìshíbāsùì le. Nǐ Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián
mǔqīn ne? sìshí’èrsùì le.

“My mother is 48 this year. And “My mother is 42 this
your mother?” year.”

Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián sānshiliùsùì le. Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián
Nǐ mǔqīn ne? sānshisùì le.

“My mother is 36 this year. And “My mother is 30 this
your mother?” year.”

Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián wǔshiqīsùì le. Nǐ Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián
mǔqīn ne? wǔshiyīsùì le.

“My mother is 57 this year. And “My mother is 51 this
your mother?” year.”

Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián bāshiliùsùì le. Nǐ Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián
mǔqīn ne? bāshisùì le.

“My mother is 86 this year. And “My mother is 80 this
your mother?” year.”

Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián qīshiwūsui le. Nǐ Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián
mǔqīn ne? liùshíjiūsui le.

“My mother is 75 this year. And “My mother is 69 this
your mother?” year.”

Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián liùshísānsui le. Wǒ mǔqīn jīnnián
Nǐ mǔqīn ne? wǔshíqīsui le.

“My mother is 63 this year. And “My mother is 57 this
your mother?” year.”

3. Reduplicate each single-syllable verb and add kàn.

Nǐ zuò. Nǐ zuòzuo kàn.

“You sit.” “Try and sit on it.”

Nǐ shuō. Nǐ shuōshuo kàn.

“You say.” “Try and say it.”

Nǐ tīng. Nǐ tīngting kàn.

“You listen.” “Try and listen to it.”

Nǐ xiǎng. Nǐ xiǎngxiang kàn.

“You think.” “Try and think of it/something.”

Nǐ wèn. Nǐ wènwen kàn.

“You ask.” “Try and ask.”

Nǐ cāi. Nǐ cāicai kàn.

“You guess.” “Try and guess.”

4. Replace the final *ba* that indicates supposition with the tag question *duì bu duì*.

Zhè shì nǐ mèimei *ba*? Zhè shì nǐ mèimei, *duì bu duì*?

“This is your sister, I suppose?” I. “This is your sister, right?”

Tā hěn ài tā xiānsheng ba? Tā hěn ài tā xiānsheng, duì bu duì?

“She loves her husband, I suppose?” “She loves her husband, right?”

Nǐmen dōu shì Rìběn rén ba? Nǐmen dōu shì Rìběn rén, duì bu duì?

“You are all Japanese, I suppose?” “You are all Japanese, right?”

Tāmende fùqin wūshisuì le ba? Tāmende fùqin wūshisuì le, duì bu duì?

“Their father is fifty, I suppose?” “Their father is fifty, right?”

Nèiwèi xiáojie shì Lín Xiáojie ba? Nèiwèi xiáojie shì Lín Xiáojie, duì bu duì?

“That young lady is Ms. Lin, I suppose?” “That young lady is Ms. Lin, right?”

Zhèiwèi shì nǐ gēge ba? Zhèiwèi shì nǐ gēge, duì bu duì?

“This is your brother, I suppose?” “This is your brother, right?”

5. Replace the final *ba* that indicates supposition with the tag question *shì bu shì*.

Tā shì nǐ fùqīn ba? Tā shì nǐ fùqīn, shì bu shì?

“He’s your father, I suppose?” “He’s your father, isn’t he?”

Wǒmen hěn kě’ài ba? Wǒmen hěn kě’ài, shì bu shì?

“We’re very cute, I suppose?” “We’re very cute, aren’t we?”

Wáng Jīnglǐ sìshìsuì le ba? Wáng Jīnglǐ sìshìsuì le, shì bu shì?

“Manager Wang is forty years old, I suppose?” “Manager Wang is forty years old, isn’t he?”

Tā xiǎng qù Zhōngguó ba? Tā xiǎng qù Zhōngguó, shì bu shì?

“He wants to go to China, I suppose?” “He wants to go to China, doesn’t he?”

Nǐmen lèile ba?

Nǐmen lèile, shì bu shì?

“You’re tired, I suppose?”

“You’re tired, aren’t you?”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 3, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Answer each nǐge question with nège.

Nǐge shítáng? Nège shítáng!

“Which cafeteria?” “That cafeteria!”

Nǐge túshūguǎn? Nège túshūguǎn!

“Which library?” “That library!”

Nǐge dàshǐguǎn? Nège dàshǐguǎn!

“Which embassy?” “That embassy!”

Nǐge gōngshìbāo? Nège gōngshìbāo!

“Which briefcase?” “That briefcase!”

Něige dàizi? Nèige dàizi!

“Which bag?” “That bag!”

Něige bēizi? Nèige bēizi!

“Which cup?” “That cup!”

2. Now answer each něige question with zhèige.

Něige dānwèi? Zhèige dānwèi.

“Which unit?” “This unit.”

Něige míngzi? Zhèige míngzi.

“Which name?” “This name.”

Něige bēibāo? Zhèige bēibāo.

“Which backpack?” “This backpack.”

Něige dàxué? Zhèige dàxué.

“Which college?” “This college.”

Něige sùshè? Zhèige sùshè.

“Which dormitory?” “This dormitory.”

Něige bān? Zhèige bān.

“Which class?” “This class.”

3. Add le after each instance of tài + STATIVE VERB.

tài guì Tài guile.

“too expensive” “It’s too expensive.”

tài piányi Tài piányile.

“too cheap” “It’s too cheap.”

tài kě’ài Tài kě’àile.

“too cute” “It’s too cute.”

tài gāoxìng Tài gāoxingle.

“too happy” “She’s too happy.”

tài xiǎo Tài xiǎole.

“too small” “It’s too small.”

tài lèi Tài lèile.

“too tired” “I’m too tired.”

tài nán Tài nánle.

“too hard” “It was too hard.”

tài yǒu yìsi Tài yǒu yìsi le.

“too interesting” “It’s too interesting.”

tài méi yìsi Tài méi yìsi le.

“too uninteresting” “It’s too uninteresting.”

4. Reduplicate the following single-syllable verbs.

kàn kànkān

“look” “take a look”

shuō shuōshuō

“say” “say something”

tīng tīngtīng

“listen” “listen”

zuò zuòzuò

“sit” “take a seat”

cāi cāicāi

“guess” “take a guess”

wèn wènwen

“ask” “ask”

5. Add ba to the following sentences to create suggestions.

Nǐ qù.

Nǐ qù ba.

“You go.”

“Why don’t you go.”

Nǐ mǎi liǎngge.

Nǐ mǎi liǎngge ba.

“You buy two.”

“Why don’t you buy two?”

Wǒmen zǒu.

Wǒmen zǒu ba.

“We go.”

“Let’s go.”

Nǐmen huí sùshè.

Nǐmen huí sùshè ba.

“You go back to the dormitory.”

“Why don’t you go back to the dormitory.”

Xiǎo Wáng, nǐ bēizi gěi wǒ.

Xiǎo Wáng, nǐ bēizi gěi wǒ ba.

“Little Wang, give me your cup.”

“Little Wang, why don’t you give me your cup.”

Wǒmen qù shítáng.

Wǒmen qù shítáng ba.

“We go to the cafeteria.” “Let’s go to the cafeteria.”

6. In each case, answer in the negative and state that you have 100 items more than the speaker thinks.

Nǐ yǒu yībǎige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu liǎngbǎige.

“Do you have a hundred?” “No, I have two hundred.”

Nǐ yǒu liǎngbǎige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu sānbǎige.

“Do you have two hundred?” “No, I have three hundred.”

Nǐ yǒu sānbǎige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu sìbǎige.

“Do you have three hundred?” “No, I have four hundred.”

Nǐ yǒu sìbǎige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu wǔbǎige.

“Do you have four hundred?” “No, I have five hundred.”

Nǐ yǒu wǔbǎige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu liùbǎige.

“Do you have five hundred?” “No, I have six hundred.”

Nǐ yǒu liùbǎige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu qībǎige.

“Do you have six hundred?” “No, I have seven hundred.”

Nǐ yǒu qībǎige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu bābǎige.

“Do you have seven hundred?” “No, I have eight hundred.”

Nǐ yǒu bābǎige ma? Bú shì, wǒ yǒu jiǔbǎige.

“Do you have eight hundred?” “No, I have nine hundred.”

7. In each case, using zhǐ, answer in the negative and state that you have \$1000 less than the speaker thinks.

Nǐ yǒu jiǔqiāнкуài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu bāqiāнкуài.

“Do you have nine thousand dollars?” “No, I only have eight thousand dollars.”

Nǐ yǒu bāqiāнкуài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu qīqiāнкуài.

“Do you have eight thousand dollars?” “No, I only have seven thousand dollars.”

Nǐ yǒu qīqiāнкуài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu liùqiāнкуài.

“Do you have seven thousand dollars?” “No, I only have six thousand dollars.”

Nǐ yǒu liùqiāнкуài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu wǔqiāнкуài.

“Do you have six thousand dollars?” “No, I only have five thousand dollars.”

Nǐ yǒu wǔqiāнкуài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu sìqiāнкуài.

“Do you have five thousand dollars?” “No, I only have four thousand dollars.”

Nǐ yǒu sìqiāнкуài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu sānqiāнкуài.

“Do you have four thousand dollars?” “No, I only have three thousand dollars.”

Nǐ yǒu sānqiāнкуài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu liǎngqiāнкуài.

“Do you have three thousand dollars?” “No, I only have two thousand dollars.”

Nǐ yǒu liǎngqiānkuài ma? Bú shì, wǒ zhǐ yǒu yìqiānkuài.

“Do you have two thousand dollars?” “No, I only have one thousand dollars.”

8. You will be asked if you and your colleagues at a second hand store buy a certain type of item. Explain that you don't buy this type of item, but you do sell them.

Nǐmen mǎi bēizi Wǒmen bù mǎi bēizi, kěshi wǒmen mài ma? bēizi.

“Do you buy cups?” “We don't buy cups, but we do sell cups.”

Nǐmen mǎi bēibāo Wǒmen bù mǎi bēibāo, kěshi wǒmen mài ma? bēibāo.

“Do you buy backpacks?” “We don't buy backpacks, but we do sell backpacks.”

Nǐmen mǎi gōngshìbāo Wǒmen bù mǎi gōngshìbāo, kěshi gōngshìbāo ma? wǒmen mài gōngshìbāo.

“Do you buy briefcases?” “We don’t buy briefcases, but we do sell briefcases.”

Nǐmen mǎi dài zi Wǒmen bù mǎi dài zi, kěshi wǒmen mài ma? dài zi.

“Do you buy bags?” “We don’t buy bags, but we do sell bags.”

Nǐmen mǎi míng piàn Wǒmen bù mǎi míng piàn, kěshi wǒmen mài míng piàn ma? mài míng piàn.

“Do you buy name cards?” “We don’t buy name cards, but we do sell name cards.”

9. Add or subtract as requested.

Yī jiā yī shì duōshǎo? Yī jiā yī shì èr.

“1 + 1 is how much?” “1 + 1 is 2.”

Èr jiǎn yī shì duōshǎo? Èr jiǎn yī shì yī.

“2 - 1 is how much?” “2 - 1 is 1.”

Qīshí jiā shí shì duōshǎo? Qīshí jiā shí shì bāshí.

“70 + 10 is how much?” “70 + 10 is 80.”

Liùshí jiǎn shí shì duōshǎo? Liùshí jiǎn shí shì wǔshí.

“60 – 10 is how much?” “60 – 10 is 50.”

Sìshí sān jiā wǔshíwǔ shì Sìshí sān jiā wǔshíwǔ shì
duōshǎo? jiǔshí bā.

“43 + 55 is how much?” “43 + 55 is 98.”

Sānshíqī jiǎn shí'èr shì Sānshíqī jiǎn shí'èr shì èrshíwǔ.
duōshǎo?

“37 – 12 is how much?” “37 – 12 is 25.”

Sìqiān jiā liǎngqiān shì Sìqiān jiā liǎngqiān shì liùqiān.
duōshǎo?

“4,000 + 2,000 is how much?” “4,000 + 2,000 is 6,000.”

“It’s now four o’clock, right?” “No, it’s already five.”

Xiànzài wǔdiǎn zhōng ba? Bú shì, yǐjīng liùdiǎn le.

“It’s now five o’clock, right?” “No, it’s already six.”

Xiànzài liùdiǎn zhōng ba? Bú shì, yǐjīng qīdiǎn le.

“It’s now six o’clock, right?” “No, it’s already seven.”

Xiànzài qīdiǎn zhōng ba? Bú shì, yǐjīng bādiǎn le.

“It’s now seven o’clock, right?” “No, it’s already eight.”

Xiànzài bādiǎn zhōng ba? Bú shì, yǐjīng jiǔdiǎn le.

“It’s now eight o’clock, right?” “No, it’s already nine.”

Xiànzài jiǔdiǎn zhōng ba? Bú shì, yǐjīng shídiǎn le.

“It’s now nine o’clock, right?” “No, it’s already ten.”

Xiànzài shídiǎn zhōng ba? Bú shì, yǐjīng shíyīdiǎn le.

“It’s now ten o’clock, right?” “No, it’s already eleven.”

Xiànzài shíyīdiǎn zhōng ba? Bú shì, yǐjīng shí’èrdiǎn le.

“It’s now eleven o’clock, right?” “No, it’s already twelve.”

2. In each case, indicate that the correct time is two minutes earlier than the speaker says.

Xiànzài jiǔdiǎn sìshíbāfēn, duì Bú duì. Xiànzài jiǔdiǎn
bu duì? sìshíliùfēn.

“It’s now 9:48, right?” “No, it’s 9:46.”

Xiànzài liǎngdiǎn sānshí’èrfēn, Bú duì. Xiànzài liǎngdiǎn
duì bu duì? sānshífēn.

“It’s now 2:32, right?” “No, it’s 2:30.”

Xiànzài sìdiǎn wūshíliùfēn, duì Bú duì. Xiànzài sìdiǎn
bu duì? wūshísìfēn.

“It’s now 4:56, right?” “No, it’s 4:54.”

Xiànzài liùdiǎn líng sānfēn, duì Bú duì. Xiànzài liùdiǎn líng
bu duì? yīfēn.

“It’s now 6:03, right?” “No, it’s 6:01.”

Xiànzài shídiǎn èrshí’èrfēn, duì Bú duì. Xiànzài shídiǎn
bu duì? èrshífēn.

“It’s now 10:22, right?” “No, it’s 10:20.”

Xiànzài shí’èrdiǎn shíyīfēn, duì Bú duì. Xiànzài shí’èrdiǎn
bu duì? líng jiǔfēn.

“It’s now 12:11, right?” “No, it’s now 12:09.”

3. Answer the following questions in the negative, using
kǒngpà and adding a changed status le at the end.

Xiǎo Wáng lái bu lái? Kǒngpà tā bù lái.

“Is Little Wang coming?” “I’m afraid he’s not coming.”

Nǐ qù bu qù? Kǒngpà wǒ bú qù.

“Are you going?” “I’m afraid I’m not going.”

Tāmen mǎi bu mǎi? Kǒngpà tāmen bù mǎile.

“Are they going to buy it?” “I’m afraid they’re not going to buy it.”

Lín Lǎoshī yào bu yào? Kǒngpà tā bú yào.

“Does Prof. Lin want it?” “I’m afraid she doesn’t want it.”

Wǒ mèimei kéyǐ bu kéyǐ lái? Kǒngpà tā bù kéyǐ lái.
láí?

“Can my sister come?” “I’m afraid your sister can’t come.”

4. Drop the nouns from the following phrases to create nominal phrases ending in -de.

shídiǎnbànde huōchē shídiǎnbànde

“the 10:30 train” “the 10:30 one”

wǒ mǎide gōngshìbāo wǒ mǎide

“the briefcase that I bought” “the one I bought”

wǒ mèimeide dàizi

wǒ mèimeide

“my younger sister’s bag”

“my younger sister’s”

bānshangde nǚshēng

bānshangde

“the girls in the class”

“the ones in the class”

liǎngdiǎn zhōngde huǒchē

liǎngdiǎn zhōngde

“the 2:00 train”

“the 2:00 one”

nǐ màide bēibāo

nǐ màide

“the backpack that you sold” “the one that you sold”

lǎoshīde míngzi

lǎoshīde

“the teacher’s name”

“the teacher’s”

5. When asked how many hours it will take, explain that you’re afraid it will take one hour more than the speaker says.

Yào bu yào yíge zhōngtóu? Kǒngpà yào liǎngge zhōngtóu!

“Will it take one hour?” “I’m afraid it will take two hours!”

Yào bu yào liǎngge Kǒngpà yào sān’ge zhōngtóu!
zhōngtóu?

“Will it take two hours?” “I’m afraid it will take three hours!”

Yào bu yào sān’ge Kǒngpà yào sìge zhōngtóu!
zhōngtóu?

“Will it take three hours?” “I’m afraid it will take four hours!”

Yào bu yào sìge zhōngtóu? Kǒngpà yào wǔge zhōngtóu!

“Will it take four hours?” “I’m afraid it will take five hours!”

Yào bu yào wǔge Kǒngpà yào liùge zhōngtóu!
zhōngtóu?

“Will it take five hours?” “I’m afraid it will take six hours!”

Yào bu yào liùge zhōngtóu? Kǒngpà yào qīge zhōngtóu!

“Will it take six hours?” “I’m afraid it will take seven hours!”

6. When asked how many hours it will take, explain that you think it will probably take an hour less than the speaker says.

Yào wǔge bàn zhōngtóu ma? Wǒ xiǎng zhǐ yào sìge bàn zhōngtóu ba.

“Will it take five and a half hours?” “I think it will only take four and a half hours.”

Yào liǎngge zhōngtóu ma? Wǒ xiǎng zhǐ yào yíge zhōngtóu ba.

“Will it take two hours?” “I think it will only take one hour.”

Yào liùge zhōngtóu ma? Wǒ xiǎng zhǐ yào wǔge zhōngtóu ba.

“Will it take six hours?” “I think it will only take five hours.”

Yào jiǔge bàn zhōngtóu Wǒ xiǎng zhǐ yào bāge bàn
ma? zhōngtóu ba.

“Will it take nine and a half hours?” “I think it will only take eight
and a half hours.”

Yào qīge zhōngtóu Wǒ xiǎng zhǐ yào liùge zhōngtóu
shíwǔfēn ma? shíwǔfēn ba.

“Will it take seven hours and fifteen minutes?” “I think it will only take six
hours and fifteen minutes.”

Yào shíge zhōngtóu ma? Wǒ xiǎng zhǐ yào jiǔge zhōngtóu
ba.

“Will it take ten hours?” “I think it will only take nine
hours.”

7. Convert the 24-hour clock times, as commonly employed in mainland China and Taiwan, to 12-hour clock times. Add xiàwǔ or wǎnshang as appropriate.

Xià yítàng dào Tiānjīnde Xià yítàng dào Tiānjīnde
huǒchē shísāndiǎn èrshífēn huǒchē xiàwǔ yīdiǎn èrshífēn
kāi. kāi.

“The next train to Tianjin
departs at 13:20.”

“The next train to Tianjin
departs at 1:20 in the after-
noon.”

Xiàiyítàng dào Běijīngde
huǒchē èrshidiǎn shífēn kāi.

Xiàiyítàng dào Běijīngde
huǒchē wǎnshang bādiǎn shífēn
kāi.

“The next train to Beijing
departs at 20:10.”

“The next train to Beijing
departs at 8:10 in the eve-
ning.”

Xiàiyítàng dào Xīnjiāpōde
huǒchē shíwūdiǎn wūshífēn
kāi.

Xiàiyítàng dào Xīnjiāpōde
huǒchē xiàwǔ sāndiǎn
Wūshífēn kāi.

“The next train to Singapore
departs at 15:50.”

“The next train to Singapore
departs at 3:50 in the
afternoon.”

Xiàiyítàng dào Jiā'nádàde
huǒchē èrshí'èrdiǎn
sānshiwǔfēn kāi.

Xiàiyítàng dào Jiā'nádàde
huǒchē wǎnshang shídiǎn
sānshiwǔfēn kāi.

“The next train to Canada
departs at 22:35.”

“The next train to Canada
departs at 10:35 in the
evening.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 4, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Explain to the questioner that you are actually going two days later than he thinks.

Nǐ xīngqīyī qù ma?

Bú shì, wǒ xīngqīsān qù.

“Are you going on Monday?” “No, I’m going on Wednesday.”

Nǐ xīngqī’èr qù ma?

Bú shì, wǒ xīngqīsì qù.

“Are you going on Tuesday?” “No, I’m going on Thursday.”

Nǐ xīngqīsān qù ma?

Bú shì, wǒ xīngqīwǔ qù.

“Are you going on Wednesday?” “No, I’m going on Friday.”

Nǐ xīngqīsì qù ma?

Bú shì, wǒ xīngqīliù qù.

“Are you going on Thursday?” “No, I’m going on Saturday.”

Nǐ xīngqīwǔ qù ma?

Bú shì, wǒ xīngqītiān qù.

“Are you going on Friday?” “No, I’m going on Sunday.”

Nǐ xīngqīliù qù ma? Bú shì, wǒ xīngqīyī qù.

“Are you going on Saturday?” “No, I’m going on Monday.”

Nǐ xīngqītiān qù ma? Bú shì, wǒ xīngqī’èr qù.

“Are you going on Sunday?” “No, I’m going on Tuesday.”

2. Explain to the questioner that Old Bai is actually arriving one day earlier than the speaker thinks.

Lǎo Bái lǐbàitiān dào ma? Bú shì, Lǎo Bái lǐbàiliù dào.

“Is Old Bai arriving on Sunday?” “No, Old Bai is arriving on Saturday.”

Lǎo Bái lǐbàiliù dào ma? Bú shì, Lǎo Bái lǐbàiwǔ dào.

“Is Old Bai arriving on Saturday?” “No, Old Bai is arriving on Friday.”

Lǎo Bái lǐbàiwǔ dào ma? Bú shì, Lǎo Bái lǐbàisì dào.

“Is Old Bai arriving on Friday?” on “No, Old Bai is arriving on Thursday.”

Lǎo Bái lǐbàisì dào ma? Bú shì, Lǎo Bái lǐbàisān dào.

“Is Old Bai arriving on Thursday?” on “No, Old Bai is arriving on Wednesday.”

Lǎo Bái lǐbàisān dào ma? Bú shì, Lǎo Bái lǐbài’èr dào.

“Is Old Bai arriving on Wednesday?” on “No, Old Bai is arriving on Tuesday.”

Lǎo Bái lǐbài’èr dào ma? Bú shì, Lǎo Bái lǐbài’yī dào.

“Is Old Bai arriving on Tuesday?” on “No, Old Bai is arriving on Monday.”

Lǎo Bái lǐbài’yī dào ma? Bú shì, Lǎo Bái lǐbàitiān dào.

“Is Old Bai arriving on Monday?” on “No, Old Bai is arriving on Sunday.”

3. Comment that you sleep two hours longer than your interlocutor.

Wǒ měitiān shuì wǔge zhōngtóu. Wǒ měitiān shuì qíge
Nǐ ne? zhōngtóu.

“I sleep five hours every day. “I sleep seven hours every
And you?” day.”

Wǒ měitiān shuì liùge zhōngtóu. Wǒ měitiān shuì bāge
Nǐ ne? zhōngtóu.

“I sleep six hours every day. And “I sleep eight hours every
you?” day.”

Wǒ měitiān shuì qíge zhōngtóu. Wǒ měitiān shuì jiǔge
Nǐ ne? zhōngtóu.

“I sleep seven hours every day. “I sleep nine hours every
And you?” day.”

Wǒ měitiān shuì bāge zhōngtóu. Wǒ měitiān shuì shíge
Nǐ ne? zhōngtóu.

“I sleep eight hours every day. “I sleep ten hours every
And you?” day.”

Wǒ měitiān shuì jiǔge zhōngtóu. Wǒ měitiān shuì shíyíge
Nǐ ne? zhōngtóu.

“I sleep nine hours every day. “I sleep eleven hours every
And you?” day.”

Wǒ měitiān shuì shíge zhōngtóu. Wǒ měitiān shuì shí'èrge
Nǐ ne? zhōngtóu.

“I sleep ten hours every day. “I sleep twelve hours every
And you?” day.”

4. Comment that normally you get up one hour earlier than
the speaker.

Wǒ píngcháng zǎoshang Wǒ píngcháng zǎoshang
wǔdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng. sìdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng!

“I usually get up at 5:00 “I usually get up at 4:00
A.M.” A.M.!”

Wǒ píngcháng zǎoshang Wǒ píngcháng zǎoshang
liùdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng. wǔdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng!

“I usually get up at 6:00 “I usually get up at 5:00
A.M.” A.M.!”

Wǒ píngcháng zǎoshang Wǒ píngcháng zǎoshang
qīdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng. liùdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng!

“I usually get up at 7:00 A.M.” “I usually get up at 6:00 A.M.!”

Wǒ píngcháng zǎoshang bādiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng. Wǒ píngcháng zǎoshang qīdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng!

“I usually get up at 8 A.M.” “I usually get up at 7:00 A.M.!”

Wǒ píngcháng zǎoshang jiǔdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng. Wǒ píngcháng zǎoshang bādiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng!

“I usually get up at 9:00 A.M.” “I usually get up at 8:00 A.M.!”

Wǒ píngcháng zǎoshang shídiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng. Wǒ píngcháng zǎoshang jiǔdiǎn zhōng qǐchuáng!

“I usually get up at 10:00 A.M.” “I usually get up at 9:00 A.M.!”

5. Comment that you go to sleep three hours later than your interlocutor.

Wǒ píngcháng wǎnshang qīdiǎn shuǐjiào. Wǒ píngcháng wǎnshang shídiǎn shuǐjiào.

“I usually go to sleep at 7:00 in the evening.” “I usually go to sleep at 10:00 in the evening.”

Wǒ píngcháng wǎnshang bādiǎn shuìjiào. Wǒ píngcháng wǎnshang shíyīdiǎn shuìjiào.

“I usually go to sleep at 8:00 in the evening.” “I usually go to sleep at 11:00 in the evening.”

Wǒ píngcháng jiǔdiǎn shuìjiào. Wǒ píngcháng shí'èrdiǎn shuìjiào.

“I usually go to sleep at 9:00.” “I usually go to sleep at 12:00.”

Wǒ píngcháng shídiǎn shuìjiào. Wǒ píngcháng yīdiǎn shuìjiào.

“I usually go to sleep at 10:00.” “I usually go to sleep at 1:00.”

Wǒ píngcháng shíyīdiǎn shuìjiào. Wǒ píngcháng liǎngdiǎn shuìjiào.

“I usually go to sleep at 11:00.” “I usually go to sleep at 2:00.”

Wǒ píngcháng shí'èrdiǎn Wǒ píngcháng sāndiǎn
shuìjiào. shuìjiào.

“I usually go to sleep at 12:00.” “I usually go to sleep at 3:00.”

6. Translate the English phrases into Chinese. Consider carefully whether or not you should add the measure ge.

“one month” yíge yuè

“one hour” yíge zhōngtóu

“one day” yìtiān

“one week” yíge xīngqī

“two hours” liǎngge zhōngtóu

“two days” liǎngtiān

“two weeks” liǎngge xīngqī

“two months” liǎngge yuè

“I was born in 1978. What year were you born?” “I was born in 1977.”

Wǒ shì yī-jiǔ-wǔ-líng-nián Wǒ shì
chūshēngde. Nǐ shì něinián yī-jiǔ-sì-jiǔ-nián
chūshēngde? chūshēngde.

“I was born in 1950. What year were you born?” “I was born in 1949.”

Wǒ shì yī-jiǔ-jiǔ-bā-nián chūshēngde. Wǒ shì
Nǐ shì něinián chūshēngde? yī-jiǔ-jiǔ-qī-nián
chūshēngde.

“I was born in 1998. What year were you born?” “I was born in 1997.”

Wǒ shì èr-líng-líng-líng-nián Wǒ shì
chūshēngde. Nǐ shì něinián yī-jiǔ-jiǔ-jiǔ-nián
chūshēngde? chūshēngde.

“I was born in 2000. What year were you born?” “I was born in 1999.”

Wǒ shì yī-jiǔ-jiǔ-sì-nián chūshēngde. Wǒ shì
Nǐ shì něinián chūshēngde? yī-jiǔ-jiǔ-sān-nián
chūshēngde.

“I was born in 1994. What year were you born?” “I was born in 1993.”

2. Your birthday is two months and five days later than the speaker.

Wǒde shēngrì shì wǔyuè shíhào. Nǐde Wǒde shēngrì shì
shēngrì shì jǐyuè jǐhào? qīyuè shíwǔhào.

“My birthday is May 10th. When is your birthday?” “My birthday is July 15th.”

Wǒde shēngrì shì èryuè shísānhào. Wǒde shēngrì shì
Nǐde shēngrì shì jǐyuè jǐhào? sìyuè shíbāhào.

“My birthday is Feb. 13. When is your birthday?” “My birthday is April 18th.”

Wǒde shēngrì shì liùyuè èrshíhào. Wǒde shēngrì shì
Nǐde shēngrì shì jǐyuè jǐhào? bāyuè èrshíwǔhào.

“My birthday is June 20th. When is your birthday?” “My birthday is Aug. 25th.”

Wǒde shēngrì shì bāyuè bāhào. Nǐde Wǒde shēngrì shì
shēngrì shì jǐyuè jǐhào? shíyuè shísānhào.

“My birthday is Aug. 8. When is your birthday?” “My birthday is Oct. 13th.”

Wǒde shēngrì shì jiǔyuè èrshí'èrhào. Wǒde shēngrì shì
Nǐde shēngrì shì jǐyuè jǐhào? shíyīyuè èrshíqīhào.

“My birthday is Sept. 22nd. When is your birthday?” “My birthday is Nov. 27th.”

3. In each case, reply that it's a year later than your interlocutor thinks.

Shì qùnián ma? Bú shì qùnián, shì jīnnián.

“Was it last year?” “It wasn't last year, it's this year.”

Shì jīnnián ma? Bú shì jīnnián, shì míngnián.

“Is it this year?” “It isn't this year, it's next year.”

Shì yī-jiǔ-bā-liù-nián ma? Bú shì yī-jiǔ-bā-liù-nián, shì
yī-jiǔ-bā-qī-nián.

“Was it 1986?” “It wasn't 1986, it was 1987.”

Shì èr-líng-líng-liù-nián ma? Bú shì èr-líng-líng-liù-nián, shì èr-líng-líng-qī-nián.

“Was it 2006?” “It wasn’t 2006, it was 2007.”

Shì èr-líng-sì-èr-nián ma? Bú shì èr-líng-sì-èr-nián, shì èr-líng-sì-sān-nián.

“Is it 2042?” “It isn’t 2042, it’s 2043.”

Shì yī-jiǔ-wǔ-liù-nián ma? Bú shì yī-jiǔ-wǔ-liù-nián, shì yī-jiǔ-wǔ-qī-nián.

“Was it 1956?” “It wasn’t 1956, it was 1957.”

4. In each case, reply that it’s a day earlier than your interlocutor thinks.

Shì míngtiān ma? Bú shì míngtiān, shì jīntiān!

“Is it tomorrow?” “It’s not tomorrow, it’s today!”

Shì jīntiān ma? Bú shì jīntiān, shì zuótiān!

“Is it today?” “It’s not today, it was yesterday!”

Shì sānyuè jiǔhào Bú shì sānyuè jiǔhào, shì sānyuè
ma? bāhào!

“Is it March 9?” “It’s not March 9, it’s March 8!”

Shì wǔyuè èrshihào Bú shì wǔyuè èrshihào, shì wǔyuè
ma? shíjiǔhào!

“Is it May 20?” “It’s not May 20, it’s May 19!”

Shì liùyuè sānshihào Bú shì liùyuè sānshihào, shì liùyuè
ma? èrshíjiǔhào!

“Is it June 30?” “It’s not June 30, it’s June 29!”

Shì shíyuè Bú shì shíyuè èrshiliùhào, shì shíyuè
èrshiliùhào ma? èrshíwǔhào!

“Is it October 26?” “It’s not October 26, it’s October 25!”

5. You live four floors higher up than the other person thinks.

Jǐlóu? Shì bu shì yīlóu? Bú shì yīlóu, shì wǔlóu!

“Which floor? Is it the first floor?” “It’s not the first floor, it’s the fifth floor!”

Jǐlóu? Shì bu shì èrlóu? Bú shì èrlóu, shì liùlóu!

“Which floor? Is it the second floor?” “It’s not the second floor, it’s the sixth floor!”

Jǐlóu? Shì bu shì wǔlóu? Bú shì wǔlóu, shì jiǔlóu!

“Which floor? Is it the fifth floor?” “It’s not the fifth floor, it’s the ninth floor!”

Jǐlóu? Shì bu shì bālóu? Bú shì bālóu, shì shí’èrlóu!

“Which floor? Is it the eighth floor?” “It’s not the eighth floor, it’s the twelfth floor!”

Jǐlóu? Shì bu shì shíwǔlóu? Bú shì shíwǔlóu, shì shíjiǔlóu!

“Which floor? Is it the fifteenth floor?” “It’s not the fifteenth floor, it’s the nineteenth!”

Jǐlóu? Shì bu shì jiǔlóu? Bú shì jiǔlóu, shì shí sān lóu!

“every day”	měitiān
“every month”	měige yuè
“every week”	měige xīngqī
“every hour”	měige zhōngtóu
“every year”	měinián

“How many months?” Jǐge yuè?

“How many days?” Jǐtiān?

“How many years?” Jǐnián?

“How many weeks?” Jǐge xīngqī?

“How many hours?” Jǐge zhōngtóu?

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 4, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Comment that you’ve been in China twice as many times as your interlocutor thinks.

Zhè shì nǐ dìyí cì dào Zhōngguó lái ma? Bú shì, zhè shì dì'èr cì!

“Is this the first time you came to China?” “No, this is the second time!”

Zhè shì nǐ dì'èr cì dào Zhōngguó lái ma? Bú shì, zhè shì dìsān cì!

“Is this the second time you came to China?” “No, this is the fourth time!”

Zhè shì nǐ dìsān cì dào Zhōngguó lái ma? Bú shì, zhè shì dìliù cì!

“Is this the third time you came to China?” “No, this is the sixth time!”

Zhè shì nǐ dìsì cì dào Zhōngguó lái ma? Bú shì, zhè shì dìbā cì!

“Is this the fourth time you came to China?” “No, this is the eighth time!”

Zhè shì nǐ dìwǔ cì dào Zhōngguó lái ma? Bú shì, zhè shì dìshí cì!

“Is this the fifth time you came to China?” “No, this is the tenth time!”

2. Respond that you haven't ever done what the speaker asks.

Nǐ kànguó ma? Wǒ méi kànguó.

“Have you ever seen one?” “I've never seen one.”

Nǐ gōngzuòguó ma? Wǒ méi gōngzuòguó.

“Have you ever worked?” “I've never worked.”

Nǐ qùguó Mǎláixīyà ma? Wǒ méi qùguó Mǎláixīyà.

“Have you ever been to Malaysia?” “I've never been to Malaysia.”

Nǐ dàoquó Tiānjīn ma? Wǒ méi dàoquó Tiānjīn.

“Have you ever been to Tianjin?” “I've never been to Tianjin.”

Nǐ màiquó zhōng ma? Wǒ méi màiquó zhōng.

“Have you ever sold clocks?” “I’ve never sold clocks.”

Nǐ xuéxíguo Zhōngwén ma? Wǒ méi xuéxíguo
Zhōngwén.

“Have you ever studied Chinese?” “I’ve never studied Chinese.”

3. Explain that you have done what your interlocutor has never done before, and that you have done it many times.

Wǒ méi xiǎngguo. Nǐ ne? Wǒ xiǎngguo, xiǎngguo hěn
duō cì!

“I’ve never thought about it. How about you?” “I have, I’ve thought about it many times!”

Wǒ méi mǎiguo. Nǐ ne? Wǒ mǎiguo, mǎiguo hěn duō
cì!

“I’ve never bought any. And you?” “I have, I’ve bought them many times!”

Wǒ méi wènguo tā. Nǐ ne? Wǒ wènguo tā, wènguo tā
hěn duō cì!

“I’ve never asked her. Have you?” “I have, I’ve asked her many times!”

Wǒ méi qùguo Táiwān. Nǐ ne? Wǒ qùguo. Qùguo hěn duō cì!

“I’ve never been to Taiwan. Have you?” “I have. I’ve been many times!”

Wǒ méi zuòguo huǒchē. Nǐ ne? Wǒ zuòguo, zuòguo hěn duō cì!

“I’ve never been on a train. Have you?” “I have, I’ve been on them many times!”

4. Comment that the date mentioned is one day later than the speaker thinks.

Èryuè liùhào shì bu shi? Bú shi. Èryuè liùhào shì qiántiān? zuótiān.

“Was February 6 the day before yesterday?” “No, February 6 was yesterday.”

Bāyuè jiǔhào shì bu shi? Bú shi. Bāyuè jiǔhào shì zuótiān? jīntiān.

“one, day”

“one day”

yī, nián

yìnián

“one, year”

“one year”

yī, kuài

yíkuài

“one, dollar”

“one dollar”

yī, ge

yíge

“one, (general measure)”

“one (of some item)”

yī, diǎn

yìdiǎn

“one, dot”

“a little”

yī, bàn

yíbàn

“one, half”

“one half”

yī, -bǎi

yìbǎi

“one, hundred”

“one hundred”

yī, -qiān

yìqiān

“one, thousand”

“one thousand”

yī, máo

yìmáo

“one, dime”

“one dime”

yī, fēn

yìfēn

“one, minute OR penny”

“one minute OR one penny”

yī, kè, zhōng

yìkè zhōng

“one, quarter, hour”

“one quarter of an hour”

yī, tàng

yítàng

“one, run of a train or bus”

“one run of a train or bus”

yī, jiā, gōngsī

yìjiā gōngsī

“one, (measure), company”

“one company”

yī, wèi, xiānsheng

yíwèi xiānsheng

“one, polite
gentleman”

measure, “one gentleman”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 4, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Add *hǎoxiàng* to the following sentences so as to be less direct and avoid committing yourself.

Tā bù lái.

Tā *hǎoxiàng* bù lái.

“He’s not coming.”

“It seems that he’s not coming.”

Tāmen hái méi qù.

Tāmen *hǎoxiàng* hái méi qù.

“They haven’t gone yet.”

“It seems that they haven’t gone yet.”

Xiànzài shì wǔdiǎn.

Xiànzài *hǎoxiàng* shì wǔdiǎn.

“It’s five o’clock now.” “It seems that it’s five o’clock now.”

Zhōngwén hěn róngyi. Zhōngwén hǎoxiàng hěn róngyi.

“Chinese is very easy.” “It seems that Chinese is very easy.”

Xiǎo Zhāng zhù Héping Dōng Lù. Xiǎo Zhāng hǎoxiàng zhù Héping Dōng Lù.

“Little Zhang lives on Heping East Road.” “It seems that Little Zhang lives on Heping East Road.”

2. Explain that “they” pay over ten thousand dollars more each year than the speaker thinks (bù zhǐ means “not only” or “not just that” or “more”).

Tāmen yìnián gěi duōshǎo qián? Yǒu méiyǒu liǎngwànkùài? Bù zhǐ. Hǎoxiàng tāmen yìnián gěi sānwànduō.

“How much do they pay each year? Twenty thousand dollars?” “More. It seems they pay more than thirty thousand per year.”

Tāmen yinián gěi duōshǎo qián? Yǒu méiyǒu Bù zhǐ. Hǎoxiàng tāmen yinián gěi sìwànduō.
sānwàнкуài?

“How much do they pay each year? Thirty thousand dollars?”
“More. It seems they pay more than forty thousand per year.”

Tāmen yinián gěi duōshǎo qián? Yǒu méiyǒu Bù zhǐ. Hǎoxiàng tāmen yinián gěi qīwànduō.
liùwàнкуài?

“How much do they pay each year? Sixty thousand dollars?”
“More. It seems they pay more than seventy thousand per year.”

Tāmen yinián gěi duōshǎo qián? Yǒu méiyǒu Bù zhǐ. Hǎoxiàng tāmen yinián gěi shíyīwànduō.
shíwàнкуài?

“How much do they pay each year? A hundred thousand dollars?”
“More. It seems they pay more than a hundred and ten thousand per year.”

Tāmen yinián gěi duōshǎo qián? Yǒu méiyǒu Bù zhǐ. Hǎoxiàng tāmen yinián gěi shíliùwànduō.
shíwǔwàнкуài?

“How much do they pay each year? A hundred and fifty thousand dollars?”
“More. It appears they pay more than a hundred and sixty thousand per year.”

3. Comment that the population in the place mentioned is actually a million less than the speaker believes.

Nánjīngde rénkǒu yǒu méiyǒu Méiyǒu, hǎoxiàng zhǐ yǒu
bābǎiwàn? qībǎiwàn.

“Is the population of Nanjing eight million?”
“No, it seems it’s only seven million.”

Xī’ānde rénkǒu yǒu méiyǒu Méiyǒu, hǎoxiàng zhǐ yǒu
jiǔbǎiwàn? bābǎiwàn.

“Is the population of Xian nine million?”
“No, it seems it’s only eight million.”

Guǎngzhōude rénkǒu yǒu méiyǒu Méiyǒu, hǎoxiàng zhǐ yǒu
méiyǒu yìqiānwàn? jiǔbǎiwàn.

“Is the population of Guangzhou ten million?”
“No, it seems it’s only nine million.”

Xiānggāngde rénkǒu yǒu Méiyǒu, hǎoxiàng zhǐ yǒu
méiyǒu bābǎiwàn? qībǎiwàn.

“Is the population of Hong Kong eight million?”
“No, it seems it’s only seven million.”

Xīnjiāpōde rénkǒu yǒu méiyǒu Méiyǒu, hǎoxiàng zhǐ yǒu
liùbǎiwàn? wǔbǎiwàn.

“Is the population of Singapore six million?”
“No, it seems it’s only five million.”

Tiānjīnde rénkǒu yǒu méiyǒu Méiyǒu, hǎoxiàng zhǐ yǒu
yìqiān sānbǎiduōwàn? yìqiān liǎngbǎiduōwàn.

“Is the population of Tianjin thirteen million?”
“No, it seems it’s only twelve million.”

4. Explain that Little Li has been late to class one time less than Little Gao.

Xiǎo Gāo chídàoguo shícì! Xiǎo Lǐ zhǐ chídàoguo jiǔcì.

“Little Gao has been late ten times!”
“Little Li has only been late nine times.”

Xiǎo Gāo chídàoɡuo èrshìcì! Xiǎo Lǐ zhǐ chídàoɡuo shíjiǔcì.

“Little Gao has been late twenty times!” “Little Li has only been late nineteen times.”

Xiǎo Gāo chídàoɡuo wǔcì! Xiǎo Lǐ zhǐ chídàoɡuo sìcì.

“Little Gao has been late five times!” “Little Li has only been late four times.”

Xiǎo Gāo chídàoɡuo yícì! Xiǎo Lǐ méiyǒu chídàoɡuo.

“Little Gao has been late once!” “Little Li has never been late.”

Xiǎo Gāo chídàoɡuo bācì! Xiǎo Lǐ zhǐ chídàoɡuo qīcì.

“Little Gao has been late eight times!” “Little Li has only been late seven times.”

Xiǎo Gāo chídàoɡuo shíwǔcì! Xiǎo Lǐ zhǐ chídàoɡuo shísi cì.

“Little Gao has been late fifteen times!” “Little Li has only been late fourteen times.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 5, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. You know what few others do: Little Ke comes in to the office only on Tuesdays, Thursdays, and Saturdays. Based on this information, respond to the questions below.

Jīntiān shì lǐbàiyī. Xiǎo Kē zài Tā jīntiān bú zài.
bàngōngshì ma?

“Today is Monday. Is Little Ke in the office?” “He’s not there today.”

Jīntiān shì lǐbài’èr. Xiǎo Kē zài Tā jīntiān zài.
bàngōngshì ma?

“Today is Tuesday. Is Little Ke in the office?” “He’s there today.”

Jīntiān shì lǐbàisān. Xiǎo Kē zài Tā jīntiān bú zài.
bàngōngshì ma?

“Today is Wednesday. Is Little Ke in the office?” “He’s not there today.”

Jīntiān shì lǐbàisì. Xiǎo Kē zài Tā jīntiān zài.
bàngōngshì ma?

“Today is Thursday. Is Little Ke in the office?” “He’s there today.”

Jīntiān shì lǐbàiwǔ. Xiǎo Kē zài bàngōngshì ma? Tā jīntiān bú zài.

“Today is Friday. Is Little Ke in the office?” “He’s not there today.”

Jīntiān shì lǐbàiliù. Xiǎo Kē zài bàngōngshì ma? Tā jīntiān zài.

“Today is Saturday. Is Little Ke in the office?” “He’s there today.”

Jīntiān shì lǐbàitiān. Xiǎo Kē zài bàngōngshì ma? Tā jīntiān bú zài.

“Today is Sunday. Is Little Ke in the office?” “He’s not there today.”

2. Transform the sentences with zǎoshang qù...le into sentences with xiànzài zài.

Xiǎo Zhāng zǎoshang qù gōngsī Xiǎo Zhāng xiànzài zài le. gōngsī.

“Little Zhang went to the company this morning.” the “Little Zhang is now at the company.”

Lín Tàitai zǎoshang qù dàshǐguǎn Lín Tàitai xiànzài zài dàshǐguǎn.
le.

“Mrs. Lin went to the embassy this morning.” “Mrs. Lin is now at the embassy.”

Wáng Lǎoshī zǎoshang qù Wáng Lǎoshī xiànzài zài túshūguǎn le.
túshūguǎn.

“Prof. Wang went to the library this morning.” “Prof. Wang is now at the library.”

Hé Xiáojie zǎoshang qù Hé Xiáojie xiànzài zài Xiānggǎng le.
Xiānggǎng.

“Miss He went to Hong Kong this morning.” “Miss He is now in Hong Kong.”

Zōngjīnglǐ zǎoshang qù yǔyán Zōngjīnglǐ xiànzài zài zhōngxīn le.
yǔyán zhōngxīn.

“The general manager went to the language center this morning.” “The general manager is at the language center now.”

3. Add Nǐ zhīdao...ma? to the basic question.

Tā xìng shémme? Nǐ zhīdao tā xìng shémme ma?

“What’s her last name?” “Do you know what her last name is?”

Tā shì něiguó rén? Nǐ zhīdao tā shì něiguó rén ma?

“What nationality is she?” “Do you know what nationality she is?”

Shíyànshì zài nǎr? Nǐ zhīdao shíyànshì zài nǎr ma?

“Where is the laboratory?” “Do you know where the laboratory is?”

Jīntiān shì xīngqījǐ? Nǐ zhīdao jīntiān shì xīngqījǐ ma?

“What day is it today?” “Do you know what day it is today?”

Wàijiāobù jǐdiǎn kāimén? Nǐ zhīdao Wàijiāobù jǐdiǎn kāimén ma?

“What time does the Foreign Ministry open?” “Do you know what time the Foreign Ministry opens?”

Wǒmen zuò jǐdiǎnde huǒchē? Nǐ zhīdao wǒmen zuò jǐdiǎnde huǒchē ma?

“What time is our train?” “Do you know what time our train is?”

Zhèizhāng zhuōzi duōshǎo qián? Nǐ zhīdao zhèizhāng zhuōzi duōshǎo qián ma?

“How much is this table?” “Do you know how much this table is?”

4. Respond to each question with zhīdao in the negative.

Nǐ zhīdao jīntiān jīhào ma? Wǒ bù zhīdao jīntiān jīhào.

“Do you know what today’s date is?” “I don’t know what today’s date is.”

Nǐ zhīdao tā yào shémme ma? Wǒ bù zhīdao tā yào shémme.

“Do you know what she “I don’t know what she
wants?” wants.”

Nǐ zhīdao zěmme bàn ma? Wǒ bù zhīdào zěmme bàn.

“Do you know what should be “I don’t know what should be
done?” done.”

Nǐ zhīdao nàrde rénkǒu yǒu Wǒ bù zhīdào nàrde rénkǒu
duōshǎo ma? yǒu duōshǎo.

“Do you know what the “I don’t know what the
population there is?” population there is.”

Nǐ zhīdao zěmme chēnghu Wǒ bù zhīdào zěmme
nèiwèi xiānsheng ma? chēnghu nèiwèi xiānsheng.

“Do you know how to address “I don’t know how to address
that gentleman?” that gentleman.”

Nǐ zhīdao wénhuà zhōngxīn Wǒ bù zhīdào wénhuà
jǐdiǎn kāi ma? zhōngxīn jǐdiǎn kāi.

“Do you know what time the “I don’t know what time the
cultural center opens?” cultural center opens.”

Nǐ zhīdao nèibā yīzi duōshǎo Wǒ bù zhīdao nèibā yīzi
qián ma? duōshǎo qián.

“Do you know how much that chair costs?”
“I don’t know how much that chair costs.”

5. Convert the long form of the affirmative-negative verb construction to the short form.

Māma, wǒ kéyi bu kéyi qù? Māma, wǒ kě bu kéyi qù?

“Mom, can I go?” “Mom, can I go?”

Nǐ zhīdao bu zhīdao? Nǐ zhī bu zhīdao?

“Do you know?” “Do you know?”

Tāmen gāoxìng bu gāoxìng? Tāmen gāo bu gāoxìng?

“Are they happy?” “Are they happy?”

Nǐ jǐnzhāng bu jǐnzhāng? Nǐ jǐn bu jǐnzhāng?

“Are you nervous?” “Are you nervous?”

Wǒmen yīnggāi bu yīnggāi Wǒmen yīng bu yīnggāi qù?
qù?

“Should we go?”

“Should we go?”

Nǐ jīntiān huíjiā bu huíjiā? Nǐ jīntiān huí bu huíjiā?

“Are you going home today?” “Are you going home today?”

6. Be contrary! Always choose the opposite of what the speaker chooses. If the speaker says “here,” you say “there”; if the speaker says “that,” you say “this,” etc.

Nǐ yào zhèige ma? Wǒ bú yào zhèige, wǒ yào nèige.

“Do you want this one?” “I don’t want this one, I want that one.”

Nǐ yào nèige ma? Wǒ bú yào nèige, wǒ yào zhèige.

“Do you want that one?” “I don’t want that one, I want this one.”

Tā zài zhèr ma? Tā bú zài zhèr, tā zài nàr.

“Is he here?” “He’s not here, he’s there.”

Tā zài nàr ma? Tā bú zài nàr, tā zài zhèr.

“Is he there?” “He’s not there, he’s here.”

Nǐ xǐhuan zhèizhāng Wǒ bù xǐhuan zhèizhāng zhuōzi, wǒ
zhuōzi ma? xǐhuan nèizhāng zhuōzi.

“Do you like this table?” “I don’t like this table, I like that table.”

Nǐ xǐhuan nèibǎ yǐzi Wǒ bù xǐhuan nèibǎ yǐzi, wǒ xǐhuan
ma? zhèibǎ yǐzi.

“Do you like that chair?” “I don’t like that chair, I like this chair.”

7. Combine the two shorter sentences into one longer sentence by using búguò.

Wǒ hěn máng. Wǒ hái shì Wǒ hěn máng, búguò wǒ hái shì
qùle. qùle.

“I was busy. I still went.” “I was busy; however, I still went.”

Tā chídào le. Tā hái shì Tā chídào le, búguò tā hái shì lái le.

“He was late. He still came.” “He was late; however, he still came.”

Zhōngwén hěn nán. Wǒ hái shì Zhōngwén hěn nán, búguò wǒ shì yào xué.

“Chinese is hard. I still want to learn it.” “Chinese is hard; however, I still want to learn it.”

Wǒ tǐng kùn de. Wǒ hái shì Wǒ tǐng kùn de, búguò wǒ hái shì qù shàng kè le.

“I was quite tired. I still went to class.” “I was quite tired; however, I still went to class.”

Nèige gōngshì bāo tǐng guǐ de, Wǒ hái shì mǎi le. Nèige gōngshì bāo tǐng guǐ de, búguò wǒ hái shì mǎi le.

“That attache case was expensive. I still bought it.” “That attache case was expensive; however, I still bought it.”

Wǒ zhīdao wǒ bù yīnggāi Wǒ zhīdao wǒ bù yīnggāi qù,
qù. Wǒ hái shì qùle. búguò wǒ hái shì qùle.

“I knew I shouldn’t go. I “I knew I shouldn’t go; however,
still went.” I still went.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 5, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. In each case, respond to the question in the negative.

Nǐ zài píxié chǎng gōngzuò ma? Wǒ bú zài píxié chǎng
gōngzuò.

“Do you work at the shoe factory?” “I don’t work at the shoe
factory.”

Nǐ cháng zài shítáng chīfàn ba? Wǒ bù cháng zài shítáng
chīfàn.

“I suppose you often eat in the dining hall?” “I don’t often eat in the
dining hall.”

Nǐ cháng zài túshūguǎn xuéxí ma? Wǒ bù cháng zài túshūguǎn
xuéxí.

“Do you often study at the library?” “I don’t often study at the
library.”

Tā zài màoyì gōngsī gōngzuò ba? Tā bú zài màoyì gōngsī
gōngzuò.

“I suppose she’s working at a trade company?” “She’s not working at a trade company.”

Tāmen zài Zhōngguo xuéxí Hanyǔ ba? Tāmen bú zài Zhōngguo xuéxí Hanyǔ.

“I suppose they’re studying Chinese in China?” “They’re not studying Chinese in China.”

2. Be disagreeable! Say the opposite of what your interlocutor says.

Wǒ shì dàxuéshēng. Wǒ bú shì dàxuéshēng!

“Are you a college student?” “I’m not a college student!”

Wǒ jiā zài Táiběi. Wǒ jiā bú zài Táiběi!

“My home is in Taipei.” “My home is not in Taipei!”

Wǒ yào qù chī zhōngfàn. Wǒ bú yào qù chī zhōngfàn!

“I want to go eat lunch.” “I don’t want to go eat lunch!”

Wōde lǎobǎn shì Xībānyá Wōde lǎobǎn bú shì Xībānyá
rén. rén!

“My boss is Spanish.” “My boss is not Spanish!”

Nǐ kéyì lái wǒ jiā chī Nǐ bù kéyì lái wǒ jiā chī
wǎnfàn. wǎnfàn!

“You may come to my house for dinner.” “You may not come to my
house for dinner!”

Zhèige wèizi yǒu rén zuò. Zhèige wèizi méiyǒu rén zuò!

“There is someone sitting here.” “There is no one sitting here!”

Zhōngguó wénhuà hěn yǒu yìsi. Zhōngguó wénhuà hěn méi
yìsi!

“Chinese culture is very interesting.” “Chinese culture is very
uninteresting!”

3. Tell Old Wang that soon it will be an hour later than he
thinks.

Yǐjīng yīdiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài liǎngdiǎn le!

“It’s already one o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost right?” two!”

Yǐjīng liǎngdiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài sāndiǎn le!

“It’s already two o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost right?” three!”

Yǐjīng sāndiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài sìdiǎn le!

“It’s already three o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost right?” four!”

Yǐjīng sìdiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài wǔdiǎn le!

“It’s already four o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost right?” five!”

Yǐjīng wǔdiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài liùdiǎn le!

“It’s already five o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost right?” six!”

Yǐjīng liùdiǎn le ba?

Lǎo Wáng, kuài qīdiǎn le!

“It’s already six o’clock, right?” “Old Wang, it’s almost seven!”

Yǐjīng qīdiǎn le ba?

Lǎo Wáng, kuài bādiǎn le!

“It’s already seven o’clock, right?” “Old Wang, it’s almost eight!”

Yǐjīng bādiǎn le ba?

Lǎo Wáng, kuài jiǔdiǎn le!

“It’s already eight o’clock, right?” “Old Wang, it’s almost nine!”

Yǐjīng jiǔdiǎn le ba?

Lǎo Wáng, kuài shídiǎn le!

“It’s already nine o’clock, right?” “Old Wang, it’s almost ten!”

Yǐjīng shídiǎn le ba?

Lǎo Wáng, kuài shíyīdiǎn le!

“It’s already ten o’clock, right?” “Old Wang, it’s almost eleven!”

Yǐjīng shíyīdiǎn le ba? Lǎo Wáng, kuài shí'èrdiǎn le!

“It’s already eleven o’clock, “Old Wang, it’s almost right?” twelve!”

4. Convert the four-syllable names of the following universities into the corresponding two-syllable abbreviations.

Běijīng Dàxué Běidà

“Peking University” “Peking University”

Táiwān Dàxué Táidà

“Taiwan University” “Taiwan University”

Zhōngshān Dàxué Zhōngdà

“Zhongshan University” “Zhongshan University”

Shīfàn Dàxué Shīdà

“(National Taiwan) Normal University” “(National Taiwan) Normal University”

Zhèngzhì Dàxué

Zhèngdà

“Cheng-chih University”

“Cheng-chih University”

Rénmín Dàxué

Réndà

“People’s University”

“People’s University”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 5, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Respond positively to each question with Dùi,... followed by the STATIVE VERB + yidian(r) pattern.

Tā bǐjiào gāo ma?

Dùi, tā gāo yidianr.

“Is he taller?”

“Yes, he is a bit taller.”

Nǐ zuìjìn bǐjiào máng ma?

Dùi, wǒ zuìjìn máng yidianr.

“Are you busier these days?”

“Yes, I am a little busier these days.”

Yīngwén bǐjiào róngyi ma?

Dùi, Yīngwén róngyi yidianr.

“Is English easier?” “Yes, English is a bit easier.”

Xiǎo Wáng bǐjiào pàng ma? Duì, Xiǎo Wáng pàng yidianr.

“Is Little Wang fatter?” “Yes, Little Wang is a bit fatter.”

Nàrde dōngxi bǐjiào guì ma? Duì, nàrde dōngxi guì yidianr.

“Are things there a little more expensive?” “Yes, things there are a little more expensive.”

Cháng Chéng Fàndiànde Duì, Cháng Chéng Fàndiànde wǔfàn bǐjiào hǎochī ma? wǔfàn hǎochī yidianr.

“Is lunch at the Great Wall Hotel better?” “Yes, lunch at the Great Wall Hotel is better.”

2. In each case, respond that you don't know the answer to the question asked.

Xiǎo Hé zhùzai nǎr? Wǒ bù zhīdào Xiǎo Hé zhùzai nǎr.

“Where does Little He live?” “I don't know where Little He lives.”

Nǐ yào zuòdao nǎr? Wǒ bù zhīdào wǒ yào zuòdao nǎr.

“Where are you riding to?” “I don’t know where I’m riding (i.e., on a bus or tram) to.”

Tāmen bāndao nǎr le? Wǒ bù zhīdào tāmen bāndao nǎr le.

“Where did they move to?” “I don’t know where they moved to.”

Tāmen zhùdao xīngqījǐ? Wǒ bù zhīdào tāmen zhùdao xīngqījǐ.

“Until which day of the week are they staying?” “I don’t know until which day of the week they are staying.”

Xiàozhǎng zuòzai shémme dìfang? Wǒ bù zhīdào xiàozhǎng zuòzai shémme dìfang.

“Where is the principal sitting?” “I don’t know where the principal is sitting.”

Lǎoshī chūshēngzai shémme dìfang? Wǒ bù zhīdào lǎoshī chūshēngzai shémme dìfang.

“Where was the teacher born?” “I don’t know where the teacher was born.”

3. Respond *Bú shi*, ... and then say the opposite of what the speaker asks.

Nǐ zhùzai Běijīng chéngde *Bú shi*, *wǒ zhùzai Běijīng běibiānr ma?* *chéngde nánbiānr.*

“Do you live north of Beijing?” “No, I live south of Beijing.”

Tā zhùzai Běijīng chéngde *Bú shi*, *tā zhùzai Běijīng dōngbiānr ma?* *chéngde xībiānr.*

“Does he live east of Beijing?” “No, he lives west of Beijing.”

Xiǎo Chén zhùzai zhèibianr *Bú shi*, *Xiǎo Chén zhùzai ma?* *nèibianr.*

“Does Little Chen live over here?” “No, Little Chen lives over there.”

Tā zhùzai Běijīng chéngde *Bú shi*, *tā zhùzai Běijīng nánbiānr ma?* *chéngde běibiānr.*

“Does he live south of Beijing?” “No, he lives north of Beijing.”

Lǎo Lín zhùzai Běijīng? Bú shì, Lǎo Lín zhùzai Běijīng chéngde xībiānr ma? chéngde dōngbiānr.

“Does Old Lin live west of Beijing?” “No, Old Lin lives east of Beijing.”

Wáng Tàitai zhùzai nèibiānr? Bú shì, Wáng Tàitai zhùzai zhèibiānr.

“Does Mrs. Wang live over there?” “No, Mrs. Wang lives over here.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 5, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Respond that the situation is the opposite of what the speaker assumes in the question.

Kāiguān zài lǐtōu ma? Bù, kāiguān zài wàitōu.

“Is the switch inside?” “No, the switch is on the outside.”

Shítáng zài zuǒbianr ma?	Bù, shítáng zài yòubianr.
“Is the cafeteria on the left?”	“No, the cafeteria is on the right.”
Zhōng zài shàngtōu ma?	Bù, zhōng zài xiàtōu.
“Is the clock on top?”	“No, the clock is on the bottom.”
Huǒchē zài qiántōu ma?	Bù, huǒchē zài hòutōu.
“Is the train in the front?”	“No, the train is in the back.”
Xiǎo Lín zài wàitōu ma?	Bù, Xiǎo Lín zài lītōu.
“Is Little Lin outside?”	“No, Little Lin is inside.”
Diànnǎo zài yòubian ma?	Bù, diànnǎo zài zuǒbian.
“Is the computer on the right?”	“No, the computer is on the left.”
Píxié zài xiàtōu ma?	Bù, píxié zài shàngtōu.

“Are the dress shoes on the bottom?” “No, the dress shoes are on top.”

Lǎo Lǐ zài hòutou ma? Bù, Lǎo Lǐ zài qiántou.

“Is Old Li in the back?” “No, Old Li is in the front.”

Zhèige dìfang zài běibiān ma? Bù, zhèige dìfang zài nánbiān.

“Is this place in the north?” “No, this place is in the south.”

Nèige dìfang zài xībiān ma? Bù, nèige dìfang zài dōngbiān.

“Is that place in the west?” “No, that place is in the east.”

2. Boast that you have one more computer at your home than the speaker does.

Wǒ jiāli yǒu yítái diànnǎo. Wǒ jiāli yǒu liǎngtái!

“I have one computer at home.” “I have two at home!”

Wǒ jiāli yǒu liǎngtái diànnǎo. Wǒ jiāli yǒu sāntái!

“I have two computers at home.” “I have three at home!”

Wǒ jiāli yǒu sāntái diànnǎo. Wǒ jiāli yǒu sìtái!

“I have three computers at home.” “I have four at home!”

Wǒ jiāli yǒu sìtái diànnǎo. Wǒ jiāli yǒu wǔtái!

“I have four computers at home.” “I have five at home!”

Wǒ jiāli yǒu wǔtái diànnǎo. Wǒ jiāli yǒu liùtái!

“I have five computers at home.” “I have six at home!”

3. Use -de to convert the sentences describing where something is into descriptive noun phrases.

Shūjià zài zuǒbian. zuǒbiande shūjià

“The bookcase is on the left.” “the bookcase which is on the left”

Diànnǎo zài yòubian. yòubiande diànnǎo

“The computer is on the right.” “the computer which is on the right”

Shǒucè zài hòumian. hòumiande shǒucè

“The manual is in the back.” “the manual which is in the back”

Qián zài lǐmiàn. lǐmiànde qián

“The money is inside.” “the money which is inside”

Píxié zài wàimian. wàimiande píxié

“The dress shoes are on the outside.” “the dress shoes which are on the outside”

Fàn zài shàngmian. shàngmiande fàn

“The rice is on top.” “the rice which is on top”

4. As before, use -de to convert the sentences describing where something is into descriptive noun phrases.

Gǒu zài zhuōzi dǐxia. zhuōzi dǐxiade gǒu

“The dog is under the table.” “the dog (which is) under the table”

Dōngxì zài fāngjiānli. ānlide dōngxì
fāngji

“The things are in the room.” “the things (which are) in the room”

Bēizi zài shūjiàshang. shūjiàshangde bēizi

“The cup is on the bookcase.” “the cup (which is) on the bookcase”

Měiguó rén zài zhèibian. zhèibiande Měiguó rén

“The Americans are over here.” “the Americans (who are) over here”

Zhōngguó rén zài nèibian. nèibiande Zhōngguó rén

“The Chinese are over there.” “the Chinese (who are) over there”

Sùshè zài túshūguǎn túshūguǎn pángbiānde sùshè
pángbiān.

“The dormitory is next to “the dormitory (which is) next to
the library.” the library”

Xuésheng zài dàshǐguǎn dàshǐguǎn lǐmiànde xuésheng
lǐmiàn.

“The students are in the “the students (who are) in the
embassy.” embassy”

5. Answer the questions using the cues provided.

Nǐ liúle shémmē? (yíge tiáozi) Wǒ liúle yíge tiáozi.

“What did you leave?” (a note) “I left a note.”

Nǐ mǎile shémmē? (yìtái diànnǎo) Wǒ mǎile yìtái diànnǎo.

“What did you buy?” (a computer) “I bought a computer.”

Nǐ mǎile shémmē? (yìbǎ yǐzi) Wǒ mǎile yìbǎ yǐzi.

“What did you sell?” (a chair) “I sold a chair.”

Nǐ chīle shémmē? (hěn duō Wǒ chīle hěn duō
dōngxi) dōngxi.

“What did you eat?” (many things) “I ate lots of things.”

Nǐ xuéle shénme? (yiniánde Wǒ xuéle yiniánde
Zhōngwén) Zhōngwén.

“What did you study?” (a year of “I studied a year of
Chinese) Chinese.”

Nǐ dài le shénme? (yìbǎi zhāng Wǒ dài le yìbǎi zhāng
míngpiàn) míngpiàn.

“What did you take along?” (100 “I took along 100 name
name cards) cards.”

Nǐ bān le shénme? (sānzhāng dà Wǒ bān le sānzhāng dà
zhuōzi) zhuōzi.

“What did you move?” (three big “I moved three big
tables) tables.”

Nǐ rènshile shéi? (liǎngge xīn Wǒ rènshile liǎngge xīn
tóngxué) tóngxué.

“Whom did you meet?” (two new “I met two new
classmates) classmates.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 6, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Convert the long forms for year in school to the short forms.

dàxué sānniánjí

dàsān

“third year in college”

“college junior”

dàxué yīniánjí

dàyī

“first year in college”

“college freshman”

dàxué sìniánjí

dàsì

“fourth year in college”

“college senior”

dàxué èrniánjí

dà'èr

“second year in college”

“college sophomore”

gāozhōng èrniánjí

gāo'èr

“second year in high school”

“high school junior”

gāozhōng sānniánjí

gāosān

“third year in high school” “high school senior”

gāozhōng yīniánjí

gāoyī

“first year in high school” “high school sophomore”

chūzhōng yīniánjí

chūyī

“first year in middle school” “seventh grade”

chūzhōng èrniánjí

chū'èr

“second year in middle school” “eighth grade”

chūzhōng sānniánjí

chūsān

“third year in middle school” “ninth grade, high school freshman”

2. Correct the speaker, who assumes you are one grade lower than is actually true.

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng xiǎoxué yìniánjí le Wǒ yǐjīng shàng èrniánjí
le ba? le!

“You’re already in first grade, I “I’m already in second
suppose?” grade!”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng xiǎoxué sānniánjí Wǒ yǐjīng shàng sìniánjí
le ba? le!

“You’re already in third grade, I “I’m already in fourth
suppose?” grade!”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng xiǎoxué wǔniánjí Wǒ yǐjīng shàng liùniánjí
le ba? le!

“You’re already in fifth grade, I “I’m already in sixth
suppose?” grade!”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng xiǎoxué liùniánjí le Wǒ yǐjīng shàng chūyī
le ba? le!

“You’re already in sixth grade, I “I’m already in seventh
suppose?” grade!”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng chū’èr le ba? Wǒ yǐjīng shàng chūsān
le!

“You’re already in eighth grade, I suppose?” “I’m already in ninth grade!”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng chūsān le ba? Wǒ yǐjīng shàng gāoyī le!

“You’re already in ninth grade, I suppose?” “I’m already in tenth grade!”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng gāo’èr le ba? Wǒ yǐjīng shàng gāosān le!

“You’re already a high school junior, I suppose?” “I’m already a high school senior!”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng gāosān le ba? Wǒ yǐjīng shàng dàyī le!

“You’re already a high school senior, I suppose?” “I’m already a college freshman!”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng dàyī le ba? Wǒ yǐjīng shàng dà’èr le!

“You’re already a college freshman, I suppose?” “I’m already a college sophomore!”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng dàsān le ba? Wǒ yǐjīng shàng dàsì le!

“You’re already a college junior, I “I’m already a college
suppose?” senior!”

3. Again, correct the speaker, who this time assumes you are two grades higher than you really are. Begin your response with *Hái zǎo*, which literally means “still early” but is here the equivalent of English “not yet.”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng dàsì le ba? *Hái zǎo. Wǒ jīnnián shàng dà’èr.*

“I guess you must already be a “Not yet. I’m a sophomore
senior?” this year.”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng dàsān le ba? *Hái zǎo. Wǒ jīnnián shàng dàyī.*

“I guess you must already be a “Not yet. I’m a freshman this
junior?” year.”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng gāosān le ba? *Hái zǎo. Wǒ jīnnián shàng gāoyī.*

“I guess you must already be a “Not yet. I’m a high school
high school senior?” sophomore this year.”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng gāo'èr le ba? Hái zǎo. Wǒ jīnnián shàng chūsān.

“I guess you must already be a high school junior?” “Not yet. I’m a ninth grader this year.”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng chū'èr le ba? Hái zǎo. Wǒ jīnnián shàng xiǎoxué liùniánjí.

“I guess you must already be an eighth grader?” “Not yet. I’m a sixth grader this year.”

Nǐ yǐjīng shàng xiǎoxué sānniánjí le ba? Hái zǎo. Wǒ jīnnián shàng xiǎoxué yīniánjí.

“I guess you must already be a third grader?” “Not yet. I’m a first grader this year.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 6, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Add kànqilai to the following sentences.

Nǐ hěn niánqīng. Nǐ kànqilai hěn niánqīng.

“You are very young.” “You look very young.”

Tā tǐng lǎo.

Tā kànqilai tǐng lǎo.

“He is quite old.”

“He looks quite old.”

Nǐ hěn máng.

Nǐ kànqilai hěn máng.

“You are very busy.”

“You look very busy.”

Nǐ érzi hěn lèi.

Nǐ érzi kànqilai hěn lèi.

“Your son is very tired.”

“Your son looks very tired.”

Nǐde nǚpéngyou hěn kě'ài.

Nǐde nǚpéngyou kànqilai hěn kě'ài.

“Your girlfriend is very
cute.”

“Your girlfriend looks very
cute.”

Xiǎo Zhāng hěn pàng.

Xiǎo Zhāng kànqilai hěn pàng.

“Little Zhang is very fat.”

“Little Zhang looks very fat.”

Lǎo Bái tǐng shòu.

Lǎo Bái kànqilai tǐng shòu.

“Old Bai is quite thin.”

“Old Bai looks quite thin.”

Nèige lǐwù hěn guì.

Nèige lǐwù kànqilai hěn guì.

“That present is very expensive.”

“That present looks very expensive.”

2. Add xuéqilai to the following sentences.

Zhōngwén hěn yǒu yìsi.

Zhōngwén xuéqilai hěn yǒu yìsi.

“Chinese is interesting.”

“Chinese is very interesting to learn.”

Yīngwén hěn róngyi.

Yīngwén xuéqilai hěn róngyi.

“English is easy.”

“English is very easy to learn.”

Déwén hěn nán.

Déwén xuéqilai hěn nán.

“German is very hard.”

“German is very hard to learn.”

Rìwén hěn méi yìsi.

Rìwén xuéqilai hěn méi yìsi.

“Japanese is boring.”

“Japanese is boring to learn.”

3. Respond that you are three years younger than the figure which the speaker mentions.

Nǐ hái bú dào sānshí ba? Duì, wǒ jīnnián èrshiqīsuì le.

“You’re not yet thirty, right?” “Yes, I’m twenty-seven this year.”

Nǐ hái bú dào liùshí ba? Duì, wǒ jīnnián wūshiqīsuì le.

“You’re not yet sixty, right?” “Yes, I’m fifty-seven this year.”

Nǐ hái bú dào wǔshí ba? Duì, wǒ jīnnián sìshiqīsuì le.

“You’re not yet fifty, right?” “Yes, I’m forty-seven this year.”

Nǐ hái bú dào sìshí ba? Duì, wǒ jīnnián sānshiqīsuì le.

“You’re not yet forty, right?” “Yes, I’m thirty-seven this year.”

Nǐ hái bú dào èrshí ba? Duì, wǒ jīnnián shíqīsuì le.

“You’re not yet twenty, right?” “Yes, I’m seventeen this year.”

4. Remark that the order of the city or country where you were born and the city or country where you grew up is the exact opposite of the speaker. Begin your remark with Hěn yǒu yìsi!

Wǒ zài Niǔyuē chūshēng, Hěn yǒu yìsi! Wǒ zài ránhòu zài Jiùjīnshān zài Jiùjīnshān chūshēng, rán hòu Niǔyuē zhǎngdàde. zhǎngdàde.

“I was born in New York, “Very interesting! I was born then grew up in San in San Francisco, then grew up Francisco.” in New York.”

Wǒ zài Yīngguo chūshēng, Hěn yǒu yìsi! Wǒ zài Fǎguo ránhòu zài Fǎguo Yīngguo chūshēng, ránhòu zài zhǎngdàde. zhǎngdàde.

“I was born in England, then “Very interesting! I was born grew up in France.” in France, then I grew up in the UK.”

Wǒ zài Běijīng chūshēng, Hěn yǒu yìsi! Wǒ zài Shànghǎi ránhòu zài Shànghǎi zài Běijīng chūshēng, rán hòu zhǎngdàde. zhǎngdàde.

“I was born in Beijing, then “Very interesting! I was born grew up in Shanghai.” in Shanghai, then grew up in Beijing.”

Wǒ zài Riběn chūshēng, Hěn yǒu yìsi! Wǒ zài Xībānyá
ránhòu zài Xībānyá chūshēng, ránhòu zài Riběn
zhǎngdàde. zhǎngdàde.

“I was born in Japan, then grew up in Spain.”
“Very interesting! I was born in Spain, then grew up in Japan.”

Wǒ zài Déguó chūshēng, Hěn yǒu yìsi! Wǒ zài
ránhòu zài Zhōngguó zài Zhōngguó chūshēng, rán hòu
Déguó zhǎngdàde. zhǎngdàde.

“I was born in Germany, then grew up in China.”
“Very interesting! I was born in China, then grew up in Germany.”

5. You and your spouse have one fewer son but one more daughter than the speaker.

Wǒmen yǒu liǎngge érzi, yíge Wǒmen yǒu yíge érzi,
nǚ’ér. liǎngge nǚ’ér.

“We have two sons and one daughter.”
“We have one son and two daughters.”

Wǒmen yǒu sān’ge érzi, Wǒmen yǒu liǎngge érzi,
méiyǒu nǚ’ér. yíge nǚ’ér.

“We have three sons and no daughters.” “We have two sons and one daughter.”

Wǒmen yǒu liǎngge érzi, sān'ge nǚ'ér. Wǒmen yǒu yíge érzi, sìge nǚ'ér.

“We have two sons and three daughters.” “We have one son and four daughters.”

Wǒmen yǒu wǔge érzi, liùge nǚ'ér. Wǒmen yǒu sìge érzi, liùge nǚ'ér.

“We have five sons and five daughters.” “We have four sons and six daughters.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 6, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Convert the sentences with *méi* + VERB to *méiyǒu* + VERB.

Lǎo Zhào méi qù.

Lǎo Zhào méiyǒu qù.

“Old Zhao didn't go.”

“Old Zhao didn't go.”

Xiǎo Zhāng méi huíjiā.

Xiǎo Zhāng méiyǒu huíjiā.

“Little Zhang didn’t go home.” “Little Zhang didn’t go home.”

Tā zuótiān méi jiāoshū. Tā zuótiān méiyǒu jiāoshū.

“She didn’t teach yesterday.” “She didn’t teach yesterday.”

Wáng jiā méi bānjiā. Wáng jiā méiyǒu bānjiā.

“The Wang family didn’t move.” “The Wang family didn’t move.”

Wǒ érzi méi líhūn. Wǒ érzi méiyǒu líhūn.

“My son didn’t get divorced.” “My son didn’t get divorced.”

Wǒ shūshu méi sòng lǐwù. Wǒ shūshu méiyǒu sòng lǐwù.

“My uncle didn’t give a present.” “My uncle didn’t give a present.”

2. Comment that, in each case, the baby is two months younger than the speaker thinks.

Nǐmēnde hái zi wǔge yuè dà ma? Bù, tā sān’ge yuè dà.

“Is your child five months old?” “No, he’s three months old.”

Lín Tàिताide háizi sān’ge yuè dà ma? Bù, tā yíge yuè dà.

“Is Mrs. Lin’s child three months old?” “No, she’s one month old.”

Nǐmende nǚ’ér qíge yuè dà ma? Bù, tā wǔge yuè dà.

“Is your daughter seven months old?” “No, she’s five months old.”

Chén Xiānshengde érzi jiǔge yuè dà ma? Bù, tā qíge yuè dà.

“Is Mr. Chen’s son nine months old?” “No, he’s seven months old.”

Shūshu, Āyí tāmende érzi shíge yuè dà ma? Bù, tā bāge yuè dà.

“Is Uncle and Auntie’s son ten months old?” “No, he’s eight months old.”

3. Combine the two short sentences into one longer sentence using yīnwei...suóyì....

Tā hěn máng. Tā bù néng Yīnwei tā hěn máng, suóyì tā lái.
lái. bù néng lái.

“He’s busy. He can’t come.” “Because he’s busy, he can’t come.”

Wǒ hěn lèi. Wǒ bú dào tā jiā Yīnwei wǒ hěn lèi, suóyì wǒ bú
què. dào tā jiā què.

“I’m tired. I’m not going to” “Because I’m tired, I’m not
his house.” going to his house.”

Xiǎo Wáng hěn pàng. Tā Yīnwei Xiǎo Wáng hěn pàng,
jīntiān bù néng chīfàn. suóyì tā jīntiān bù néng chīfàn.

“Little Wang is fat. He can’t” “Because Little Wang is fat, he
eat today.” can’t eat today.”

Xiǎo Zhāng bānjiā bāndao Yīnwei Xiǎo Zhāng bānjiā
Xīnjiāpō què. Wǒmen bāndao Xīnjiāpō què,

hǎo jiǔ méi jiànle. suóyì wǒmen hǎo jiǔ méi jiànle.

“Little Zhang moved to” “Because Little Zhang moved
Singapore. We haven’t seen to Singapore, we haven’t seen
each other in a long time.” each other in a long time.”

Mèimei niánji hái xiǎo. Tā Yīnwei mèimei niánji hái xiǎo,
hái méi shàng xiǎoxué. suóyī tā hái méi shàng xiǎoxué.

“Little Sister is still young. “Because Little Sister is still
She hasn’t begun elementary young, she hasn’t be-

school yet.” gun elementary school yet.”

4. Use wèishemme to ask the speaker why she didn’t do what
she says she didn’t do.

Wǒ méi qù shàngkè. Nǐ wèishemme méi qù shàngkè?

“I didn’t go to class.” “Why didn’t you go to class?”

Wǒ méi mǎi táng. Nǐ wèishemme méi mǎi táng?

“I didn’t buy candies.” “Why didn’t you buy candies?”

Wǒ méi jiéhūn. Nǐ wèishemme méi jiéhūn?

“I didn’t get married.” “Why didn’t you get married?”

Wǒ méi sòng lǐwù gěi wǒ Nǐ wèishemme méi sòng lǐwù gěi
tóngwū. nǐ tóngwū?

“I didn’t give any presents” “Why didn’t you give any presents to your room- mate?”
to my roommate.”

Wǒ dìyītiān shàngbān méi Nǐ wèishemǐ dìyītiān shàngbān
zuò zìwǒ jièshào. méi zuò zìwǒ jièshào?

“I didn’t introduce myself” “Why didn’t you introduce
on my first day of work.” yourself on your first day of
work?”

Wǒ méi shàng dàxué. Nǐ wèishemǐ méi shàng dàxué?

“I didn’t attend college.” “Why didn’t you attend college?”

5. Suggest to the speaker that the city talked about is located at an intermediate point between the basic points of the compass that are mentioned.

Bú zài xībiān, yě bú zài běibiān. Nèmmǐ zài xīběibiān ba!

“It’s not in the west, and not in” “Then, it must be in the
the north.” northwest!”

Bú zài xībiān, yě bú zài nánbiān. Nèmmǐ zài xī’ nánbiān ba!

“It’s not in the west, and not in the south.” “Then, it must be in the southwest!”

Bú zài dōngbiān, yě bú zài běibiān. Nèmmè zài dōngběibiān ba!

“It’s not in the east, and not in the north.” “Then, it must be in the northeast!”

Bú zài dōngbiān, yě bú zài nánbiān. Nèmmè zài dōngnánbiān ba!

“It’s not in the east, and not in the south.” “Then, it must be in the southeast!”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 6, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Explain that your rank among your siblings is one position younger than the interlocutor thinks.

Nǐ zài nǐmen jiā páiháng lǎodà ma? Bù, wǒ páiháng lǎo’èr.

“Are you the oldest among your siblings?” “No, I am the second-oldest.”

Nǐ zài nǐmen jiā páiháng lǎo'èr ma? Bù, wǒ páiháng
lǎosān.

“Are you the second-oldest among your siblings?” “No, I am the
third-oldest.”

Nǐ zài nǐmen jiā páiháng lǎosān ma? Bù, wǒ páiháng lǎosì.

“Are you the third-oldest among your siblings?” “No, I am the
fourth-oldest.”

Nǐ zài nǐmen jiā páiháng lǎosì ma? Bù, wǒ páiháng
lǎowǔ.

“Are you the fourth-oldest among your siblings?” “No, I am the
fifth-oldest.”

Nǐ zài nǐmen jiā páiháng lǎowǔ ma? Bù, wǒ páiháng lǎoliù.

“Are you the fifth-oldest among your siblings?” “No, I am the
sixth-oldest.”

2. Listen to the speaker's comment about her rank among her siblings, then explain that your rank among your own siblings is one position older. Preface your comment with the introductory question Shì ma? “Really?” or “Is that so?”

Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā páiháng Shì ma? Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā
lǎoliù. páiháng lǎowǔ.

“I rank sixth at home.” “Really? I rank fifth at home.”

Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā páiháng Shì ma? Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā
lǎowǔ. páiháng lǎosì.

“I rank fifth at home.” “Really? I rank fourth at home.”

Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā páiháng Shì ma? Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā
lǎosì. páiháng lǎosān.

“I rank fourth at home.” “Really? I rank third at home.”

Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā páiháng Shì ma? Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā
lǎosān. páiháng lǎo'èr.

“I rank third at home.” “Really? I rank second at home.”

Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā páiháng Shì ma? Wǒ zài wǒmen jiā
lǎo'èr. páiháng lǎodà.

“I rank second at home.” “Really? I'm the oldest at home.”

3. Use the -le...le construction to add the non-quantified objects listed to the sentence and indicate completed action.

Wǒ mǎile. (chē)

Wǒ mǎile chē le.

“I bought it.” (“car”)

“I bought a car.”

Wǒ màiile. (chē)

Wǒ màiile chē le.

“I sold it.” (“car”)

“I sold a car.”

Tā yǐjīng chīle. (táng)

Tā yǐjīng chīle táng le.

“He already ate it.” (“candy”) “He already ate the candy.”

Tā dàiile. (míngpiàn)

Tā dàiile míngpiàn le.

“She brought them.” (“name cards”) “She brought the name cards.”

Nǐ wàngle. (zìwǒ jièshào)

Nǐ wàngle zìwǒ jièshào le.

“You forgot it.”

“You forgot to introduce yourself.”

4. Convert the following non-Beijing-style pronunciations to Beijing-style pronunciations.

dōngbiān dōngbiānr

“east” “east”

nánbiān nánbiānr

“south” “south”

xībiān xībiānr

“west” “west”

běibiān běibiānr

“north” “north”

mén ménr

“door” “door”

zhèibian zhèibianr

“here” “here”

nèibian nèibianr

“there” “there”

něibiān něibiānr

“where?” “where?”

méi shì méi shìr

“never mind” “never mind”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 7, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Respond choosing the female of the two choices given.

Nánde nǚde a?

Nǚde.

“Male or female?”

“Female.”

Nánhàir nǚhàir a?

Nǚhàir.

“Boy or girl?”

“Girl.”

Nánshēng nǚshēng a?

Nǚshēng.

“Male student or female student?”

“Female student.”

Xiānsheng tàitai a?

Tàitai.

“Husband or wife?”

“Wife.”

Gēgē jiějie a?

Jiějie.

“Older brother or older sister?”

“Older sister.”

Bàba māma a?

Māma.

“Mom or Dad?”

“Mom.”

Zǔfù zǔmǔ a?

Zǔmǔ.

“Paternal grandfather or paternal grandmother?”

“Paternal grandmother.”

Biāojiě biāojiěfu a?

Biāojiě.

“(Older female) cousin or cousin’s“(Older female) husband?”
cousin.”

2. Respond choosing the male of the two choices given.

Didi mèimei a? Didi.

“Younger brother or younger sister?” “Younger brother.”

Fùqīn mǔqīn a? Fùqīn.

“Mother or father?” “Father.”

Shūshu Āyí a? Shūshu.

“Aunt or Uncle?” “Uncle.”

Wàizǔfù wàizǔmǔ a? Wàizǔfù.

“Maternal grandfather or maternal grandmother?”
“Maternal grandfather.”

Nánde péngyou nǚde péngyou a? Nánde péngyou.

“Male friend or female friend?” “Male friend.”

Nánlǎoshī nǚlǎoshī a?

Nánlǎoshī.

“Male teacher or female teacher?”

“Male teacher.”

Nántóngxué nǚtóngxué a?

Nántóngxué.

“Male classmate or female classmate?”

“Male classmate.”

Nántóngshì nǚtóngshì a?

Nántóngshì.

“Male colleague or female colleague?”

“Male colleague.”

3. Comment that you also used to do the type of work the speaker used to do.

Wǒ yuánlái zài yìjiā Wǒ yuánlái yě zài yìjiā
gōngchǎng gōngzuò. gōngchǎng gōngzuò!

“I used to work at a factory.” “I used to work at a factory,
too!”

Wǒ yuánlái zài yìjiā mào yì Wǒ yuánlái yě zài yìjiā mào yì
gōngsī gōngzuò. gōngsī gōngzuò!

“I used to work at a trading company.” “I used to work at a trading company, too!”

Wǒ yuánlái zài Wàijiāobù gōngzuò. Wǒ yuánlái yě zài Wàijiāobù gōngzuò!

“I used to work at the Foreign Ministry.” “I used to work at the Foreign Ministry, too!”

Wǒ yuánlái zài Měiguó Dàshǐguǎn gōngzuò. Wǒ yuánlái yě zài Měiguó Dàshǐguǎn gōngzuò!

“I used to work at the American Embassy.” “I used to work at the American Embassy, too!”

Wǒ yuánlái zài Cháng Chéng Fàndiàn gōngzuò. Wǒ yuánlái yě zài Cháng Chéng Fàndiàn gōngzuò!

“I used to work at the Great Wall Hotel.” “I used to work at the Great Wall Hotel, too!”

Wǒ yuánlái zài Xī'nán Hángkōng Gōngsī gōngzuò. Wǒ yuánlái yě zài Xī'nán Hángkōng Gōngsī gōngzuò!

“I used to work at Southwest Airlines.” “I used to work at Southwest Airlines, too!”

Wǒ yuánlái zài zhōngxué Wǒ yuánlái yě zài zhōngxué
jiāoshū. jiāoshū!

“I used to teach middle school.” “I used to teach middle school,
too!”

Wǒ yuánlái zuò mǎimài. Wǒ yuánlái yě zuò mǎimài!

“I used to be in business.” “I used to be in business, too!”

4. Using the measure kǒu, comment that your family has three more persons in it than the speaker’s family.

Wǒmen jiā yǒu liǎngkǒu rén. Wǒmen jiā yǒu wǔkǒu rén!

“We have two people at home.” “We have five people at
home!”

Wǒmen jiā yǒu sānkǒu rén. Wǒmen jiā yǒu liùkǒu rén!

“We have three people at home.” “We have six people at
home!”

Wǒmen jiā yǒu sìkǒu rén. Wǒmen jiā yǒu qīkǒu rén!

“We have four people at home.” at “We have seven people at home!”

Wǒmen jiā yǒu wùkǒu rén. Wǒmen jiā yǒu bākǒu rén!

“We have five people at home.” at “We have eight people at home!”

Wǒmen jiā yǒu liùkǒu rén. Wǒmen jiā yǒu jiǔkǒu rén!

“We have six people at home.” at “We have nine people at home!”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 7, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. When the speaker says he has been to a certain country, ask him if he can speak the language of that country (use the series of words for the different languages that ends in -yǔ).

Wǒ qùguo Riběn. Nǐ huì bu huì shuō Rìyǔ?

“I’ve been to Japan.” “Do you know how to speak Japanese?”

Wǒ qùguo Yīngguo. Nǐ huì bu huì shuō Yīngyǔ?

“I’ve been to England.” “Do you know how to speak English?”

Wǒ qùguo Fǎguo. Nǐ huì bu huì shuō Fǎyǔ?

“I’ve been to France.” “Do you know how to speak French?”

Wǒ qùguo Xībānyá. Nǐ huì bu huì shuō Xībānyáyǔ?

“I’ve been to Spain.” “Do you know how to speak Spanish?”

Wǒ qùguo Déguo. Nǐ huì bu huì shuō Déyǔ?

“I’ve been to Germany.” “Do you know how to speak German?”

Wǒ qùguo Zhōngguo. Nǐ huì bu huì shuō Hànyǔ?

“I’ve been to China.” “Do you know how to speak Chinese?”

2. When the speaker asks whether you can speak a certain language, respond that you can speak a little.

Nǐ huì bu huì shuō Fǎyǔ? Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr Fǎyǔ.

“Do you know how to speak French?” “I know how to speak a little French.”

Nǐ huì bu huì shuō Déyǔ? Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr Déyǔ.

“Do you know how to speak German?” “I know how to speak a little German.”

Nǐ huì bu huì shuō Táiyǔ? Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr Táiyǔ.

“Do you know how to speak Taiwanese?” “I know how to speak a little Taiwanese.”

Nǐ huì bu huì shuō Yīngyǔ? Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr Yīngyǔ.

“Do you know how to speak English?” “I know how to speak a little English.”

Nǐ huì bu huì shuō Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr
Xībānyáyǔ? Xībānyáyǔ.

“Do you know how to speak Spanish?” “I know how to speak a little Spanish.”

Nǐ huì bu huì shuō Rìyǔ? Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr Rìyǔ.

“Do you know how to speak Japanese?” “I know how to speak a little Japanese.”

Nǐ huì bu huì shuō Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr
Pǔtōnghuà? Pǔtōnghuà.

“Do you know how to speak Mandarin?” “I know how to speak a little Mandarin.”

3. Combine the two short sentences into one longer one, adding the particle -de after the verb to indicate the manner in which the action of the verb is performed.

Tā zǒu. Tā hěn màn. Tā zǒude hěn màn.

“She walks. She is very slow.” “She walks very slowly.”

Tā shuō. Tā hěn kuài. Tā shuōde hěn kuài.

“He speaks. He is very fast.” “He speaks very fast.”

Tā zhǎng. Tā hěn gāo. Tā zhǎngde hěn gāo.

“She grows. She is very tall.” “She is growing very tall.”

Wǒ xué. Wǒ hěn lèi.

Wǒ xuéde hěn lèi.

“I learn. I’m very tired.”

“I’m very tired from learning.”

Nǐ xiě. Nǐ hěn bú cuò.

Nǐ xiěde hěn bú cuò.

“You write. You are quite good.” “You write quite well.”

Nǐ fúwù. Nǐ hěn hǎo.

Nǐ fúwùde hěn hǎo.

“You serve. You are very good.” “You serve very well.”

4. Use *bié* to transform the sentences into negative imperatives.

Nǐ chīde tài duō.

Bié chīde tài duō!

“You eat too much.”

“Don’t eat too much!”

Nǐ xiǎngde tài duō.

Bié xiǎngde tài duō!

“You think too much.” “Don’t think too much!”

Nǐ shuìde tài jiǔ. Bié shuìde tài jiǔ!

“You sleep too long.” “Don’t sleep too long!”

Nǐ zǒude tài kuài. Bié zǒude tài kuài!

“You walk too quickly.” “Don’t walk too quickly!”

Nǐ gāoxìngde tài zǎo. Bié gāoxìngde tài zǎo!

“You’re happy too early.” “Don’t get happy too early!”

5. Transform the sentences from the hěn + STATIVE VERB pattern to the pattern STATIVE VERB + -de + hěn.

Zhèrde dōngxi hěn guì. Zhèrde dōngxi guìde hěn.

“The stuff here is quite expensive.” “The stuff here is quite expensive.”

Tāde Zhōngwén hěn hǎo. Tāde Zhōngwén hǎode hěn.

“Her Chinese is very good.” “Her Chinese is very good.”

Wǒ hěn lèi.

Wǒ lèide hěn.

“I’m very tired.”

“I’m very tired.”

Wǒ hěn gāoxìng.

Wǒ gāoxìngde hěn.

“I’m very happy.”

“I’m very happy.”

Wǒmen hěn jǐnzhāng.

Wǒmen jǐnzhāngde hěn.

“We were quite nervous.”

“We were quite nervous.”

Nǐmen jiāde xiǎo gǒu hěn kě’ài.
Nǐmen jiāde xiǎo gǒu kě’ài
hěn.

“Your family’s dog is very cute.”
“Your family’s dog is very
cute.”

6. Respond to each question using jǐ- in the sense of “a few.”

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu hǎo péngyou? Wǒ yǒu jǐge hǎo péngyou.

“Do you have any good friends?”
“I have a few good friends.”

Xuéxiào yǒu méiyǒu hǎo Xuéxiào yǒu jǐwèi hǎo
lǎoshī? lǎoshī.

“Does the school have any good teachers?” “The school has several good teachers.”

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu qián? Wǒ yǒu jǐkuài qián.

“Do you have any money?” “I have a few dollars.”

Nǐ rèn bu rènshi Zhōngguó zì? Wǒ rènshi jǐgè Zhōngguó zì.

“Do you know any Chinese characters?” “I know a few Chinese characters.”

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu Zhōngguó tóngxué? Wǒ yǒu jǐgè Zhōngguó tóngxué.

“Do you have any Chinese classmates?” “I have a few Chinese classmates.”

Nǐ mǎi bu mǎi bēizi? Wǒ mǎi jǐgè bēizi.

“Are you buying any cups?” “I’m buying a couple of cups.”

7. Respond to each question using the yǒude...yǒude... pattern.

Tāmen dōu lái le ma?

Yǒude lái le, yǒude méi lái.

“Have they all come?”

“Some have come, some have not come.”

Tāmen dōu huì ma?

Yǒude huì, yǒude bù huì.

“Do they all know how to?”

“Some of them do, some of them don’t.”

Tāmen dōu rènshi nǐ ma?

Yǒude rènshi wǒ, yǒude bù rènshi wǒ.

“Do they all know you?”

“Some of them know me, some of them don’t.”

Háizi dōu xǐhuan chī táng ma? Yǒude xǐhuan, yǒude bù xǐhuan.

“Do all children like to eat candy?”

“Some do, some don’t.”

Nèijǐge háizi dōu shì Yǒude shì, yǒude bú shì.
nánháizi ma?

“Are all those kids boys?” “Some are, some aren’t.”

Nǐde érzi dōu zuò mǎimài Yǒude zuò, yǒude bú zuò.
ma?

“Are all of your sons engaged in business?” “Some of them are, some of them aren’t.”

8. Addt he ma that indicates obviousness to each of the following sentences.

Nǐde Hànyǔ bú cuò. Nǐde Hànyǔ bú cuò ma!

“Your Chinese is not bad.” “Your Chinese is not bad, you know?”

Tā shì Zhōngguo rén. Tā shì Zhōngguo rén ma!

“She is Chinese.” “She’s Chinese!”

Wáng Xiáojie jiéhūnle. Wáng Xiáojie jiéhūnle ma!

“Miss Wang is married.” “Miss Wang is married, you know?”

Wǒmen láibujíle. Wǒmen láibujíle ma!

“We’re not going to make it.” “Hey, we’re not going to make it, you know?”

Tā hěn hǎokàn. Tā hěn hǎokàn ma!

“He is good-looking.” “He’s quite good-looking, you know?”

Zhè shì hǎo jīhui. Zhè shì hǎo jīhui ma!

“This is a good opportunity.” “Hey, this is a good opportunity!”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 7, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Answer the questions based on the following information:
(a) You arrived last night at 8:30 by train; (b) You came together with your son and daughter; (c) You learned your Chinese in the U.S.

Nǐ shì shémmè shíhòu Wǒ shì zuótīān wǎnshāng dàode.
dàode?

“When did you arrive?” “I arrived last night.”

Nǐ shì zuò shémmè Wǒ shì zuò huǒchē lái.
lái?

“How did you get here?” “I came by train.”

Nǐ shì jǐdiǎn dàode? Wǒ shì wǎnshāng bādiǎn bàn dàode.

“What time did you arrive?” “I arrived at 8:30 in the evening.”

Nǐ shì yíge rén lái? Bú shì, wǒ shì hé wǒ érzi nǚ’ér yìqǐ
ma? lái.

“Did you come alone?” “No, I came together with my son and daughter.”

Nǐ shì zài nǎr xuéde? Wǒ shì zài Měiguó xuéde.
Zhōngwén? Zhōngwén.

“Where did you learn Chinese?” “I learned Chinese in the States.”

2. The speaker will say that a certain person has lived in a certain country for over 20 years. You should comment that it's no wonder that he/she speaks the language so well.

Tā zài Zhōngguó zhùle 20 nián, nánguài tāde Zhōngwén èrshiduōnián. jiǎngde zhème hǎo.

“He lived in China for more than twenty years.” “Oh, no wonder he speaks Chinese so well.”

Tā zài Rìběn zhùle 20 nián, nánguài tāde Rìyǔ jiǎngde zhème hǎo.

“She lived in Japan for more than twenty years.” “Oh, no wonder she speaks Japanese so well.”

Tā zài Fǎguó zhùle 20 nián, nánguài tāde Fǎyǔ jiǎngde zhème hǎo.

“He lived in France for more than twenty years.” “Oh, no wonder he speaks French so well.”

Tā zài Yīngguo zhùle 20 nián, nánguài tāde Yīngyǔ
èrshiduōnián. jiǎngde zhème hǎo.

“She lived in England for more than twenty years.” “Oh, no wonder she speaks English so well.”

Tā zài Déguo zhùle 20 nián, nánguài tāde Déyǔ jiǎngde
èrshiduōnián. zhème hǎo.

“He lived in Germany for more than twenty years.” “Oh, no wonder he speaks German so well.”

3. Convert the following Beijing-style pronunciations to non-Beijing-style pronunciations.

qiánbianr qiánbian

“in front” “in front”

hòubianr hòubian

“in back” “in back”

lǐbianr lǐbian

“inside”

“inside”

wàibianr

wàibian

“outside”

“outside”

shàngbianr

shàngbian

“on top”

“on top”

xiàbianr

xiàbian

“on the bottom”

“on the bottom”

zuǒbianr

zuǒbian

“left”

“left”

yòubianr

yòubian

“right”

“right”

pángbiānr pángbi

ān

“next to”

“next to”

gǒur

gǒu

“dog”

“dog”

shàngbānr

shàngbān

“go to work”

“go to work”

xiàbānr

xiàbān

“get off from work”

“get off from work”

yǒude shíhour

yǒude shíhou

“sometimes”

“sometimes”

xiě Zhōngguo zì

xiě Zhōngguo zì

“write Chinese characters” “write Chinese characters”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 7, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Tell your interlocutor that you will begin doing what he is asking about after you graduate from college.

Nǐ shémme shíhou kāishǐ Wǒ dàxué bìyè yǐhòu kāishǐ
gōngzuò? gōngzuò.

“When will you start “I’ll start working after I graduate
working?” from college.”

Nǐ shémme shíhou qù Wǒ dàxué bìyè yǐhòu qù
Zhōngguó? Zhōngguó.

“When will you go to “I’ll go to China after I graduate
China?” from college.”

Nǐ shémme shíhou kāishǐ Wǒ dàxué bìyè yǐhòu kāishǐ
shàngbān? shàngbān.

“When will you start “I’ll start working after I graduate
working?” from college.”

Nǐ shémme shíhou kāishǐ Wǒ dàxué bìyè yǐhòu kāishǐ
shēnqǐng? shēnqǐng.

“When will you start “I’ll start applying after I graduate
applying?” from college.”

Nǐ shémme shíhou kāishǐ Wǒ dàxué bìyè yǐhòu kāishǐ
jiāoshū? jiāoshū.

“When will you start teaching?” “I’ll start teaching after I graduate from college.”

Nǐ shémme shíhou Wǒ dàxué bìyè yǐhòu jiéhūn.
jiéhūn?

“When will you get married?” “I’ll get married after I graduate from college.”

2. You’re in China now. Tell your interlocutor that you did what he is asking about before you came to China.

Nǐ shémme shíhou bìyède? Wǒ lái Zhōngguó yǐqián bìyède.

“When did you graduate?” “I graduated before I came to China.”

Nǐ shémme shíhou qùde Wǒ lái Zhōngguó yǐqián qùde.
Xībānyá?

“When did you go to Spain?” “I went before I came to China.”

Nǐ shémmè shíhou xuéde Wǒ lái Zhōngguó yǐqián
Zhōngwén? xuéde.

“When did you learn Chinese?” “I learned it before I came to China.”

Nǐ shémmè shíhou màide chē? Wǒ lái Zhōngguó yǐqián
màide.

“When did you sell the car?” “I sold it before I came to China.”

3. You will listen to a number of utterances by a speaker, who will pause briefly in the middle of his utterance. When he pauses, you should make the backchannel comment Ng “yeah, uh-huh.” When he finishes his utterance, you should say Ò, zhèiyang “Oh, so that’s how it is/was” or “Oh, I see.”

Wǒ qùnián zài Táiběi zhùle liùge yuè, Ng.

“I lived in Taipei for six months last year; “Yeah.”

rènshile hěn duō yǒu yìside rén. Ò, zhèiyang.

(I) came to know many interesting people.” “Oh, so that’s how it was.”

Wǒ hé wǒde péngyou qùle Jiùjīnshān,	Ng.
“I went to San Francisco with my friend,	“Uh-huh.”
kěshi wǒmen méiyǒu yìqǐ huílai.	Ò, zhèiyang.
but we didn’t come back together.”	“Oh, I see.”
Tāmen dōu shì dàxué yìniánjíde xuésheng,	Ng.
“They’re all freshmen in college,	“Yeah.”
kěshi kànqilai hǎoxiàng shì zài shàng yòu’éryuán!	Ò, zhèiyang.
but they look like they’re in kindergarten!”	“Oh, I see.”
Tā yuánlái zài gōngchǎng gōngzuò,	Ng.
“He used to work in a factory;	“Uh-huh.”
hòulái yīnwei tāde lǎobǎn tài bù hǎole, suǒyǐ tā jiù gǎihángle.	Ò, zhèiyang.

later because his boss was too mean, he “Oh, so that’s
changed careers.” how it was.”

Tāmen jīnnián yuánlái yào qù Riběn, Ng.

“They were originally going to go to Japan.” “Yeah.”
this year,

kěshi tīngshuō nàrde dōngxi hěn guì, suóyì ò, zhèiyang.
jiù bú qùle.

but they heard that stuff there is very “Oh, I see.”
expensive, so they’re not going anymore.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 8, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. In each case, respond to the question in the negative.

Nǐ jiā lí zhèr yuǎn ma? Wǒ jiā lí zhèr bù yuǎn.

“Is your house far from here?” “My house is not far from here.”

Tiānjīn lí Běijīng yuǎn ma? Tiānjīn lí Běijīng bù yuǎn.

“Is Tianjin far from Beijing?” “Tianjin is not far from Beijing.”

Běijīng Fàndiàn lí Tiān’ānmén yuǎn ma? Běijīng Fàndiàn lí Tiān’ānmén bù yuǎn.

“Is the Beijing Hotel far from Tiananmen?” “The Beijing Hotel is not far from Tiananmen.”

Shítáng lí túshūguǎn yuǎn ma? Shítáng lí túshūguǎn bù yuǎn.

“Is the cafeteria far from the library?” “The cafeteria is not far from the library.”

Sùshè lí shíyànshì yuǎn ma? Sùshè lí shíyànshì bù yuǎn.

“Is the dorm far from the lab?” “The dorm is not far from the lab.”

2. In each case, respond to the question in the affirmative with Dùi,

Nǐ jiā lí dàxué hěn jìn ba? Dùi, wǒ jiā lí dàxué hěn jìn.

“Your house must be close to the college?” “Yes, my house is close to the college.”

Tiānjīn lí Běijīng hěn jìn ba? Dùi, Tiānjīn lí Běijīng hěn jìn.

“Tianjin must be close to Beijing?” “Yes, Tianjin is close to Beijing.”

Xuéxiào lí zhèr hěn jìn ba? Dùi, xuéxiào lí zhèr hěn jìn.

“The school must be close to here?” “Yes, the school is close to here.”

Xiànzài lí shàngkède shíjiān hěn jìn ba? Dùi, xiànzài lí shàngkède shíjiān hěn jìn.

“Now must be close to the “Yes, now is close to the time
time when class begins?” when class begins.”

Xiànzài lí huǒchē kāichēde Duì, xiànzài lí huǒchē
shíjiān hěn jìn ba? kāichēde shíjiān hěn jìn.

“Now must be close to the “Yes, now is close to the time
time when the train departs?” when the train departs.”

3. Answer each question using the cues provided.

Cóng zhèr dào nàr dàgài yào duōjiǔ? Zǒulùde huà, dàgài
(zǒulù, liǎngge zhōngtóu) yào liǎngge
zhōngtóu.

“From here to there will take about “If you walk, it will
how long?” (“walk, two hours”) take about two
hours.”

Cóng Tiān’ānmén dào Běidà yào duōjiǔ? Zuòchē (zuòchē, wūshífēn) ēde huà, dàgài yào
zhōng) wūshífēn zhōng.

“From Tiananmen to Peking “If you go by bus, it
University will take about how long?” will take about 50
 (“go by bus, 50 minutes”) minutes.”

Cóng wǒ jiā dào nǐ jiā dàgài yào Dǎdīde huà, dàgài
duōjiǔ? (dǎdī, bàn xiǎoshí) yào bàn xiǎoshí.

“From my house to your house will take about how long?” (“take a taxi, will take about half an hour.”)

Cóng Tánán dào Táiběi dàgài yào Zuò huǒchēde huà,
duōjiǔ? (zuò huǒchē, sān’ge xiǎoshí) dàgài yào sān’ge
xiǎoshí.

“From Tainan to Taipei will take about how long?” (“take a train, it will take about three hours.”)

4. Agree with what the speaker says, but qualify it by adding
Dùi, wǒ xiǎng...zuǒyòu.

Cóng Běijīng dào Tiānjīn yào Dùi, wǒ xiǎng yào
sān’ge zhōngtóu ma? sān’ge zhōngtóu zuǒyòu.

“Does it take 3 hours to go from Beijing to Tianjin?” (“Yes, I think it takes about 3 hours.”)

Cóng tā jiā dào nǐ jiā yào èrshífēn Dùi, wǒ xiǎng yào
zhōng ma? èrshífēn zhōng zuǒyòu.

“Does it take 20 minutes to go from her house to your house?” “Yes, I think it takes about 20 minutes.”

Cóng wǒde sùshè dào nǐde sùshè Dui, wǒ xiǎng yào shífēn yào shífēn zhōng ma? zhōng zuǒyòu.

“Does it take 10 minutes to go from my dorm to your dorm?” “Yes, I think it takes about 10 minutes.”

Cóng nǐ jiā dào nǐde bàngōngshì Dui, wǒ xiǎng yào yíge yào yíge xiǎoshí ma? xiǎoshí zuǒyòu.

“Does it take an hour from your home to your office?” “Yes, I think it takes about an hour.”

Cóng Riběn dào Táiwān yào sān'ge Dui, wǒ xiǎng yào xiǎoshí ma? sān'ge xiǎoshí zuǒyòu.

“Does it take 3 hours to go from Japan to Taiwan?” “Yes, I think it takes about 3 hours.”

Cóng Xīnjiāpō dào Mǎláixīyà yào Dui, wǒ xiǎng yào shífēn shífēn zhōng ma? zhōng zuǒyòu.

“Does it take 10 minutes to go from Singapore to Malaysia?” “Yes, I think it takes about 10 minutes.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 8, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Answer the telephone with Wéi? Nín hǎo and tell the dispatcher you want a cab to the place mentioned in the English cue provided.

Nín hǎo! Yǒuyì Wéi? Nín hǎo. Wǒ yào yíliàng chē
Bīngǔǎn Qìchē Gōngsī. qù Tiān'ānmén.

(Cue: Tiananmen)

“Hi! Friendship Hotel “Hello? Hi. I’d like a car to
Car Company.” Tiananmen.”

Nín hǎo! Yǒuyì
Bīngǔǎn Qìchē Gōngsī. Wéi? Nín hǎo. Wǒ yào yíliàng chē
(Cue: Peking qù Běidà.
University)

“Hi! Friendship Hotel “Hello? Hi. I’d like a car to Peking
Car Company.” University.”

Nín hǎo! Yǒuyì Wéi? Nín hǎo. Wǒ yào yíliàng chē
Bīngǔǎn Qìchē Gōngsī. qù Shǒudū Jīchǎng.

(Cue: Capital Airport)

“Hi! Friendship Hotel “Hello? Hi. I’d like a car to Capital Car Company.” Airport.”

Nín hǎo! Yǒuyì
Bīnguǎn Qìchē Gōngsī. Wéi? Nín hǎo. Wǒ yào yíliàng chē
(Cue: Beijing Foreign qù Běiwài.
Studies University)

“Hi! Friendship Hotel “Hello? Hi. I’d like a car to Beijing Car Company.” Foreign Studies University.”

Nín hǎo! Yǒuyì Wéi? Nín hǎo. Wǒ yào yíliàng chē
Bīnguǎn Qìchē Gōngsī. qù Riběn Dàshǐguǎn.

(Cue: Japanese
Embassy)

“Hi! Friendship Hotel “Hello? Hi. I’d like a car to the Car Company.” Japanese Embassy.”

Nín hǎo! Yǒuyì Wéi? Nín hǎo. Wǒ yào yíliàng chē
Bīnguǎn Qìchē Gōngsī. qù Cháng Chéng Fàndiàn.

(Cue: Great Wall
Hotel)

“Hi! Friendship Hotel “Hello? Hi. I’d like a car to the Great
Car Company.” Wall Hotel.”

2. Respond to the questions using the English cues provided.

Nǐmen shémme shíhou
lái? Wǒmen wǔfēn zhōng yǐhòu jiù lái.
(Cue: in 5 min.)

“When are you coming?” “We’ll be there in five minutes.”

Chēzi shémme shíhou
dào? Chēzi shífēn zhōng yǐhòu jiù dào.
(Cue: in 10 min.)

“When will the car
arrive?” “The car will be there in ten
minutes.”

Huǒchē jīdiǎn dào?
(Cue: in half an hour) Huǒchē bàn xiǎoshí yǐhòu jiù dào.

“When will the train be
there?” “The train will be there in half an
hour.”

Nǐ shémme shíhou
xiàbān? Wǒ yíge xiǎoshí yǐhòu jiù xiàbān.
(Cue: in an hour)

“When do you get off
work?” “I’ll be off work in an hour.”

Wǒmen shémme shíhou Lǐ Xiānsheng huíjiā yǐhòu wǒmen
kéyi chīfàn? jiù kéyi chīfàn.

(Cue: after Mr. Li gets
home)

“When can we eat?” “After Mr. Li gets home we can
eat.”

3. Respond to the questions using the English cues provided.

Nǐ yào jǐliàng chūzū qìchē? Wǒ yào yíliàng.
(Cue: one)

“How many taxi cabs do you want?” “I want one.”

Nǐ yào jǐliàng chūzū qìchē? Wǒ yào sānliàng.
(Cue: three)

“How many taxi cabs do you want?” “I want three.”

Nǐ yào jǐliàng chūzū qìchē?
(Cue: five)

Wǒ yào wǔliàng.

“How many taxi cabs do you want?” “I want five.”

Nǐ yào jǐliàng chūzū qìchē?
(Cue: two)

Wǒ yào liǎngliàng.

“How many taxi cabs do you want?” “I want two.”

Nǐ yào jǐliàng chūzū qìchē?
(Cue: four)

Wǒ yào sìliàng.

“How many taxi cabs do you want?” “I want four.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 8, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Convert the expressions with zhōngtóu to xiǎoshí.

Wǒ bàn'ge zhōngtóu yīqián Wǒ bàn'ge xiǎoshí yīqián
dǎguo diànhuà. dǎguo diànhuà.

“I called half an hour ago.” “I called half an hour ago.”

Zuò huǒchē yào jǐge Zuò huǒchē yào jǐge xiǎoshí?
zhōngtóu?

“How many hours does it take “How many hours does it take
by train?” by train?”

Wǒ yíge zhōngtóu yǐhòu jiù Wǒ yíge xiǎoshí yǐhòu jiù huì
huì gǎndào nǐ jiā. gǎndào nǐ jiā.

“I’ll rush to your house in an “I’ll rush to your house in an
hour.” hour.”

Tā méi nàixīn dēng liǎngge Tā méi nàixīn dēng liǎngge
zhōngtóu. xiǎoshí.

“She doesn’t have the “She doesn’t have the
patience to wait two hours.” patience to wait two hours.”

Nǐmen dào wǒ jiā yào jǐge Nǐmen dào wǒ jiā yào jǐge
zhōngtóu? xiǎoshí?

“How many hours does it take “How many hours does it take
for you to get to my house?” for you to get to my house?”

Tā yìtiān zhǐ shuì liǎngge Tā yìtiān zhǐ shuì liǎngge
zhōngtóu. xiǎoshí.

“He only sleeps two hours a day.” “He only sleep two hours a day.”

2. Convert the more formal wèishemme in the following sentences into the more informal zěmme.

Chēzi wèishemme dào Chēzi zěmme dào xiànzài hái
xiànzài hái méi lái a? méi lái a?

“Why is the car still not here?” “How come the car is still not here?”

Nǐ wèishemme nème méi Nǐ zěmme nème méi nàixīn?
nàixīn?

“Why are you so impatient?” “How come you are so impatient?”

Tā wèishemme juéding bú qù Tā zěmme juéding bú qù
Zhōngguo le? Zhōngguo le?

“Why did he decide not to go to China?” “How come he decided not to go to China?”

Jīntiānde jiāotōng Jīntiānde jiāotōng zěmme
wèishemme zhèmmē yōngjǐ? zhèmmē yōngjǐ?

“Why is today’s traffic so crowded?” “How come today’s traffic is
so crowded?”

Tā zǎoshang wèishemme Tā zǎoshang zěmme kànqilai
kànqilai bù gāoxìng? bù gāoxìng?

“Why did she look unhappy this morning?” “How come she looked
unhappy this morning?”

Lǎo Lǐ wèishemme nèmmē Lǎo Lǐ zěmme nèmmē xǐhuan
xǐhuan dǎ rén? dǎ rén?

“Why does Old Li like to hit people so much?” “How come Old Li likes to hit
people so much?”

3. Calm the speaker down! Urge her not to get excited and tell her that what she asks about will happen in just a little while.

Wǒmen shémmē Nín bié zháojí, wǒmen yìhuǐ jiù huì
shíhou dào a? dào.

“When are we going to get there?” “Don’t worry, we’ll be there in a little
while.”

Chēzi shémme shíhou lái a? Nín bié zháojí, chēzi yìhuǐr jiù huì lái.
láa? lái. lái.

“When is the car coming?” “Don’t worry, the car will come in a short while.”

Tāmen shémme shíhou zǒu a? Nín bié zháojí, tāmen yìhuǐr jiù huì zǒu.
zǒu. zǒu.

“When are they leaving?” “Don’t worry, they’ll leave in a short while.”

Huǒchē shémme shíhou kāi a? Nín bié zháojí, huǒchē yìhuǐr jiù huì kāi.
kāi. kāi.

“When will the train depart?” “Don’t worry, the train will be departing in a little while.”

Shítáng shémme shíhou kāi a? Nín bié zháojí, shítáng yìhuǐr jiù huì kāi.
kāi. kāi.

“When will the cafeteria open?” “Don’t worry, the cafeteria will open in a little while.”

Tā shémme shíhou zǒu a? Nín bié zháojí, tā yìhuǐr jiù huì zǒu.
zǒu. zǒu.

“When will he introduce himself?” “Don’t worry, he will introduce himself in a little while.”

4. Answer that whatever the speaker asks about will take place immediately.

Wǒmen shénme shíhou dào? Wǒmen mǎshàng jiù dào.

“When are we going to arrive?” “We’ll be there immediately.”

Nǐ shénme shíhou lái? Wǒ mǎshàng jiù lái.

“When are you coming?” “I’ll come right away.”

Tāmen shénme shíhou zǒu? Tāmen mǎshàng jiù zǒu.

“When are they leaving?” “They’ll be leaving immediately.”

Shítáng shénme shíhou kāimén? Shítáng mǎshàng jiù kāimén.

“When will the dining hall open?” “The dining hall will open right away.”

Huǒchē shémme shíhou Huǒchē mǎshàng jiù kāi.
kāi?

“When will the train depart?” “The train will depart right
away.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 8, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Use *shì* with a stressed Tone Four for emphasis in responding positively to the following questions.

Zuótiān láide nèige rén bú shi nǐ ba? Shì, shì wǒ!

“It wasn’t you who came yesterday, was it?” “Yes, it was me!”

Jīntiān bú shi wǔyuè shíhào ba? Shì, shì wǔyuè
shíhào!

“It’s not May 10th today, is it?” “Yes, it is May 10th!”

Nèige nǚháizi bú shi nǐde nǚpéngyou Shì, shì wǒde
ba? nǚpéngyǒu!

“That girl is not your girlfriend, is she?” “Yes, she is my girlfriend!”

Zhè bú shì nǐde chēzi ba? Shì, shì wǒde chēzi!

“This is not your car, is it?” “Yes, it is my car!”

Nǐ bú shì Xīfāng rén ba? Shì, wǒ shì Xīfāng rén!

“You’re not a Westerner, are you?” “Yes, I am a Westerner!”

Zhèjiàn xíngli zhèmmè zhòng, bú shì nǐde ba? Shì, shì wǒde!

“This suitcase is so heavy, it’s not yours, is it?” “Yes, it is mine!”

2. Add the number expression in the cue provided.

Zhèizhāng zhuōzi. (sānzhāng) Zhèisānzhāng zhuōzi.

“This table.” (“three”) “These three tables.”

Nèige rén. (wǔge) Nèiw ŭge rén.
“That person.” (“five”) “Those five people.”

Něitiān? (shítīān) Něishítīān?

“Which day?” (“ten days”) “Which ten days?”

Zhèiwèi wàiguo zhuānjiā. Zhèijǐwèi wàiguo zhuānjiā.
(jǐwèi)

“This foreign expert.” “These several foreign
 (“several”) experts.”

Nèitiáo lù. (liǎngtiáo) Nèili āngtiáo lù.

“That road.” (“two”) “Those two roads.”

Zhèiliàng chē. (liù) Zhèiliùliàng chē.

“This car.” (“six”) “These six cars.”

Něijiàn xínglǐ? (sìjiàn) Něisìjiàn xínglǐ?

“Which piece of luggage?” “Which four pieces of luggage?”
 (“four”) luggage?”

3. Combine the two shorter sentences into one longer sentence using zhǐhǎo.

Túshūguǎn yǐjīng guānle. ūguǎn yǐjīng guānle, wǒmen
Wǒmen huíjiā. Túshū zhǐhǎo huíjiā.

“The library already closed. We go home.” “The library already closed, we
closed. We go home.” have no choice but to go home.”

Zhèitiáo lù dǔchē le. Zhèitiáo lù dǔchē le, wǒmen
Wǒmen huàn yìtiáo biéde lù. Zhèitiáo lù dǔchē le, wǒmen
zhǐhǎo huàn yìtiáo biéde lù.

“This road is clogged. We change to another road.” “This road is clogged, so we have
no choice but to change to another road.”

Shítángde dōngxī bù néng chī. Shítángde dōngxī bù néng chī,
chī. Wǒmen qù Běijīng wǒmen zhǐhǎo qù Běijīng Fàndiàn
Fàndiàn chīfàn. chīfàn.

“The stuff at the cafeteria is inedible. We go eat at the Beijing Hotel.” “The stuff at the cafeteria is
inedible, so we have no choice but to go eat at the Beijing Hotel.”

Nǐ bú huì kāichē. Nǐ dǎ
diànhuà qù jiào chūzū Nǐ bú huì kāichē, nǐ zhǐhǎo dǎ
qìchē. diànhuà qù jiào chūzū qìchē.

“You don’t know how to
drive. You call a taxi.” “You don’t know how to drive, so
you have no choice but to call for a
taxi.”

Tāmen xūyào yíge
bēibāo. Tāmen qù mǎi Tāmen xūyào yíge bēibāo, tāmen
yíge bēibāo. zhǐhǎo qù mǎi yíge bēibāo.

“They need a backpack.
They go buy a backpack.” “They need a backpack, so they
have no choice but to go buy a
backpack.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 9, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Transform the following sentences from Nǐ bié/Nǐ búyào to Nǐ búyòng.

Nǐ bié zài lái!

Nǐ búyòng zài lái!

“Don’t come again!”

“You don’t need to come again!”

Nǐ búyào gěi qián. Nǐ búyòng gěi qián.

“Don’t pay any money.” “You don’t need to pay any money.”

Nǐ búyào kèqi. Nǐ búyòng kèqi.

“Don’t be polite.” “You don’t need to be polite.”

Nǐ bié dǎ diànhuà gěi wǒ. Nǐ búyòng dǎ diànhuà gěi wǒ.

“Don’t call me.” “You don’t need to call me.”

Nǐ búyào mǎi lǐwù gěi wǒ. Nǐ búyòng mǎi lǐwù gěi wǒ.

“Don’t buy presents for me.” “You don’t need to buy presents for me.”

2. Be contrary! Disagree with the speaker. If the speaker says “right,” you say “left”; if the speaker says “the next,” you say “the previous” and so forth.

Shì bu shì yào wàng zuǒ guǎi? Bú shì, yào wàng yòu guǎi!

“Do we turn left?”

“No, turn right!”

Shì bu shì xià yí ge lù kǒu? Bú shì, shì shàng yí ge lù kǒu!

“Is it the next intersection?” “No, it was the last intersection!”

Shì bu shì yào wàng yòu zhuǎn? Bú shì, shì yào wàng zuǒ zhuǎn!

“Do we turn right?”

“No, turn left!”

Shì bu shì zhè ge lù kǒu? Bú shì, shì xià yí ge hóng lǜ dēng
hóng lǜ dēng zuǒ zhuǎn? yòu zhuǎn!

“Do we turn left at this traffic light?” “No, we turn right at the next traffic light!”

Shì bu shì xià yí tiáo lù yào wàng yòu zhuǎn? Bú shì, shì shàng yí tiáo lù yào wàng yòu zhuǎn!

“Do we turn right at the next street?” “No, we were to have turned left at the last street!”

3. Transform the place words from the forms ending in -r to the forms ending in -li.

Nǐ zhùzai nǎr?

Nǐ zhùzai nǎlǐ?

“Where do you live?”

“Where do you live?”

Nǐ zhǎode dōngxi zài wǒ zhèr. Nǐ zhǎode dōngxi zài wǒ
zhèlǐ.

“The thing you’re looking for
is here with me.” “The thing you’re looking for
is here with me.”

Tāmen dōu qù nàr xiūxi.

Tāmen dōu qù nàlǐ xiūxi.

“They all go there to rest.”

“They all go there to rest.”

Nàrde lù hěn yōngjǐ.

Nàlǐde lù hěn yōngjǐ.

“The road there is very
clogged.” “The road there is very
clogged.”

Qǐngwèn, zhèr yǒu méiyǒu Qǐngwèn, zhèlǐ yǒu méiyǒu
cèsuǒ? cèsuǒ?

“Excuse me, is there a
bathroom here?” “Excuse me, is there a
bathroom here?”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 9, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. You're an especially conscientious student, so whenever your classmate proposes doing something, you use the xiān...ránhòu... pattern to suggest that you first study and then do what your classmate proposes.

Wǒmen qù zhǎo Xiǎo Wǒmen xiān xuéxí, ránhòu qù zhǎo
Gāo ba. Xiǎo Gāo.

“Let’s go find Little Gao.” “Let’s first study, then go find Little Gao.”

Wǒmen qù dòngwùyuán Wǒmen xiān xuéxí, ránhòu qù
ba. dòngwùyuán.

“Let’s go to the zoo.” “Let’s first study, then go to the zoo.”

Wǒmen huí sùshè Wǒmen xiān xuéxí, ránhòu huí
liáotiān ba. sùshè liáotiān.

“Let’s go back to the dorm to chat.” “Let’s first study, then go back to the dorm to chat.”

Wǒmen qù shuǐjiào ba. Wǒmen xiān xuéxí, ránhòu qù
shuǐjiào.

“Let’s go to sleep.” “Let’s first study, then go to sleep.”

Wǒmen qù mǎi píxié ba. Wǒmen xiān xuéxí, ránhòu qù mǎi píxié.

“Let’s go buy dress shoes.” “Let’s first study, then go buy dress shoes.”

2. Use búbì to indicate that what the speaker says is unnecessary.

Yào bu yao gěi nǐ mǎi bēizi? Búbì gěi wǒ mǎi bēizi.

“Should we buy cups for you?” “You don’t need to buy me cups.”

Yào bu yao dài míngpiàn? Búbì dài míngpiàn.

“Should we bring name cards?” “You don’t need to bring name cards.”

Yào bu yao jiéhūn? Búbì jiéhūn.

“Should we get married?” “We don’t need to get married.”

Yào bu yao sòng lǐwù? Búbì sòng lǐwù.

“Should we give a present?” “We don’t need to give a present.”

Yào bu yao kāichē? Búbì kāichē.

“Should we drive a car?” “We don’t need to drive a car.”

Yào bu yao wèn jiāotōng jǐngchá? Búbì wèn jiāotōng jǐngchá.

“Should we ask a traffic policeman?” “We don’t need to ask a traffic policeman.”

3. In each case, reply that at your home you keep two of the animals mentioned.

Nǐmen jiāli yǎng bu yǎng gǒu? Wǒmen jiāli yǎngle liǎngzhī gǒu.

“Do you have any dogs at home?” “We have two dogs at home.”

Nǐmen jiāli yǎng bu yǎng māo? Wǒmen jiāli yǎngle liǎngzhī māo.

“Do you have any cats at home?” “We have two cats at home.”

Nǐmen jiāli yǎng bu yǎng yú? Wǒmen jiāli yǎngle liǎngtiáo yú.

“Do you keep fish at home?” “We have two fish at home.”

Nǐmen jiāli yǎng bu yǎng niǎo? Wǒmen jiāli yǎngle liǎngzhī niǎo.

“Do you keep any birds at home?” “We have two birds at home.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 9, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. In replying to the questions, use the antonym of the word the speaker uses.

Tīngshuō nǐde tóngwū Kāi wánxiào! Wǒde tóngwū hěn hěn cōngmíng. bèn!

“I heard your roommate “You have to be kidding! My roommate is very smart.” roommate is very stupid!”

Tīngshuō Xiǎo Wáng Kāi wánxiào! Xiǎo Wáng hěn
hěn lǎn. yònggōng!

“I heard Little Wang is “You have to be kidding! Little
very lazy.” Wang is very studious!”

Tīngshuō nǐ jiāde gǒu Kāi wánxiào! Wǒ jiāde gǒu hěn
hěn gānjìng. zāng!

“I heard your dog is very “You have to be kidding! Our dog
clean.” is very dirty!”

Tīngshuō nǐde fángjiān Kāi wánxiào! Wǒde fángjiān hěn
hěn zhěngqí. luàn!

“I heard your room is “You have to be kidding! My room
very tidy.” is a mess!”

Tīngshuō nǐ jiā lí zhèr Kāi wánxiào! Wǒ jiā lí zhèr hěn
hěn jìn. yuǎn!

“I heard your house is “You have to be kidding! My
very close to here.” house is very far from here.”

Tīngshuō nǐ gēge hěn Kāi wánxiào! Wǒ gēge hěn pàng!
shòu.

“I heard your brother is “You have to be kidding! My
skinny.” brother is very fat!”

Tīngshuō nǐ māma hěn Kāi wánxiào! Wǒ māma hěn
lǎo. niánqīng!

“I heard your mom is “You have to be kidding! My
very old.” mother is very young!”

Tīngshuō nǐde xíngli hěn Kāi wánxiào! Wǒde xíngli hěn
zhòng. qīng!

“I heard your luggage is “You have to be kidding! My
very heavy.” luggage is very light!”

Tīngshuō nǐde tóngwū Kāi wánxiào! Wǒde tóngwū shi
shi nánde. nǚde!

“I heard your roommate “You have to be kidding! My
is a guy.” roommate is a girl!”

2. Uset he búdàn...érqiě... pattern to add the cue that you hear
to the speaker’s original comment.

Lǎo Lǐ hěn cōngming. (hěn Lǎo Lǐ búdàn hěn cóngming,
yònggōng) érqiě hěn yònggōng.

“Old Li is very smart.” “Old Li is not only smart, but
 (“very studious”) also very studious.”

Xiǎo Wáng hěn lǎn. (hěn Xiǎo Wáng búdàn hěn lǎn, érqǐě
bèn) hěn bèn.

“Little Wang is very lazy.” “Little Wang is not only very
 (“very stupid”) lazy, but also very stupid.”

Nǐde nán péngyou hěn Nǐde nán péngyou búdàn hěn
hǎokàn. (hěn kě'ài) hǎokàn, érqǐě hěn kě'ài.

“Your boyfriend is very good-looking.” “Your boyfriend is not only
 (“very good-looking, but also very
cute”) cute.”

Zhèige dìfang hěn fùyu. Zhèige dìfang búdàn hěn fùyu,
(zhì'ān hěn hǎo) érqǐě zhì'ān hěn hǎo.

“This place is very rich.” “This place is not only very
 (“public safety is very rich, but also very safe.”
good”)

Zhèige bēizi hěn piányi. Zhèige bēizi búdàn hěn piányi,
(hěn hǎo) érqǐě hěn hǎo.

“This cup is very cheap.” “This cup is not only very
 (“very good”) cheap, but also very good.”

3. Convert the following non-Beijing-style pronunciations to Beijing-style pronunciations.

yìzhī gǒu yìzhī gǒur

“a dog” “a dog”

yìzhī māo yìzhī māor

“a cat” “a cat”

yìzhī niǎo yìzhī niǎor

“a bird” “a bird”

yìtiáo yú yìtiáo yúr

“a fish” “a fish”

dòngwùyuán dòngwùyuánr

“zoo” “zoo”

ménkǒu ménkǒur

“doorway” “doorway”

lùkǒu lùk ǒur

“intersection” “intersection”

zhèiyang zhèiyangr

“this way” “this way”

nèiyang nèiyangr

“that way” “that way”

shuō xiàohua shuō xiàohuar

“tell a joke” “tell a joke”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 9, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Reply in each case that there is no problem and that you can indeed do what is being discussed.

Nǐ kàndedǒng, kànbudǒng?

Méi wèntí, wǒ kàndedǒng.

“Can you read it?”

“No problem, I can read it.”

Nǐ tīngdedǒng, tīngbudǒng?

Méi wèntí, wǒ tīngdedǒng.

“Can you understand it?”

“No problem, I can understand it.”

Nǐ zhǎodedào, zhaǒbudào?

Méi wèntí, wǒ zhǎodedào.

“Can you find it?”

“No problem, I can find it.”

Nǐ mǎidedào, mǎibudào?

Méi wèntí, wǒ mǎidedào.

“Can you buy one?”

“No problem, I can buy one.”

Nǐ zhǎodezháo, zhǎobuzháo?

Méi wèntí, wǒ zhǎodezháo.

“Can you find them?”

“No problem, I can find them.”

Nǐ kàndedào, kànbudào? Méi wèntí, wǒ kàndedào.

“Can you or can you not see it?” “No problem, I can see it.”

Nǐ mǎidezháo, mǎibuzháo? Méi wèntí, wǒ mǎidezháo.

“Are you or aren’t you able to buy some?” “No problem, I can buy some.”

2. Reply that you are sorry, but you cannot do what is being talked about.

Nǐ zhǎodezháo ma? Duìbuqǐ, wǒ zhǎobuzháo.

“Can you find it?” “Sorry, I can’t find it.”

Nǐ mǎidedào ma? Duìbuqǐ, wǒ mǎibudào.

“Can you buy it?” “Sorry, I can’t buy it.”

Nǐ kàndedào ma? Duìbuqǐ, wǒ kànbudào.

“Can you see it?” “Sorry, I can’t see it.”

Nǐ tīngdedào ma? Duìbuqǐ, wǒ tīngbudào.

“Can you hear it?”

“Sorry, I can’t hear it.”

Nǐ zhǎodedào ma?

Duìbuqǐ, wǒ zhǎobudào.

“Can you find it?”

“Sorry, I can’t find it.”

Nǐ tīngdedǒng ma?

Duìbuqǐ, wǒ tīngbudǒng.

“Can you understand when you hear it?”

“Sorry, I can’t understand it.”

Nǐ kàndedǒng ma?

Duìbuqǐ, wǒ kànbudǒng.

“Can you understand when you read it?”

“Sorry, I can’t read it.”

Nǐ shuìdezháo ma?

Duìbuqǐ, wǒ shuìbuzháo.

“Can you fall asleep?”

“Sorry, I can’t fall asleep.”

3. The speaker is under the impression that something hasn’t happened yet, but you reply that it has already happened.

Nǐ hái méi kàndào ma?

Wǒ yǐjīng kàndào le.

“You haven’t seen it yet?” “I’ve already seen it.”

Tā hái méi zhǎngdà ma? Tā yǐjīng zhǎngdàle.

“He hasn’t grown up yet?” “He has already grown up.”

Nǐmen hái méi mǎidào ma? Wǒmen yǐjīng mǎidào le.

“Haven’t you bought it yet?” “We have already bought it.”

Nǐmen hái méi zhǎodào ma? Wǒmen yǐjīng zhǎodào le.

“You haven’t found it yet?” “We have already found it.”

Tā hái méi shuìzháo ma? Tā yǐjīng shuìzháo le.

“She hasn’t fallen asleep yet?” “She has already fallen asleep.”

Tāmen hái méi tīngdào ma? Tāmen yǐjīng tīngdào le.

“They haven’t heard yet?” “They’ve already heard.”

4. Transform the following sentences from subject-verb-object sentences to sentences where the object is

pre-posed as the topic, which focuses special attention on the object.

Wǒ zhǎobuzháo wǒde piào le! Wǒde piào zhǎobuzháole!

“I can’t find my ticket!” “My ticket—I can’t find it!”

Wǒ yǒu hóngsède dàizi. Hóngsède dàizi wǒ yǒu.

“I have a red bag.” “A red bag I have.”

Wǒ méiyǒu hēisède xié. Hēisède xié wǒ méiyǒu.

“I don’t have black shoes.” “Black shoes I don’t have.”

Wǒmen bù cháng qù Tiān’ānmén. Wǒmen bù cháng qù Tiān’ānmén.

“We don’t often go to Tiananmen.” “Tiananmen we don’t often go to.”

Wǒ bú rènshi zhèige zì. Zhèige zì wǒ bú rènshi.

“I don’t recognize this character.” “This character I don’t recognize.”

Wǒmen xǐhuan chī Zhōngguo Zhōngguo cài wǒmen xǐhuan
cài. chī.

“We like to eat Chinese food.” “Chinese food we like to eat.”

Wǒ yǐjīng guānle diànnǎo le. Diànnǎo wǒ yǐjīng guānle.

“I already turned off the computer.” “The computer I already turned off.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 10, Part 1: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Agree with your interlocutor and, using the *yuè lái yuè* pattern, comment that recently it has been getting more and more the way she says.

Tiānqi hěn lěng. Shì a! Zuìjìn tiānqi yuè lái yuè lěngle.

“The weather is very cold.” “Yes! It’s been getting colder and colder recently.”

Nǐ gēge hěn lǎn. Shì a! Zuìjìn tā yuè lái yuè lǎnle.

“Your brother is very lazy.” “Yes! He has been getting lazier and lazier recently.”

Zhèrde dōngxi hěn guì. Shì a! Zuìjìn zhèrde dōngxi yuè lái yuè guì.

“The stuff here is very expensive.” “Yes! The stuff here has been getting more and more expensive recently.”

Nǐde māo hěn pàng. Shì a! Zuìjìn wǒde māo yuè lái yuè pàng!

“Your cat is fat.” “Yes! My cat has been getting fatter and fatter recently.”

2. Agree with your interlocutor and add that, starting with the date or time she mentions, it’s going to rain for quite a few days.

Míngtiān yào xià yǔ. Duì, cóng míngtiān kāishǐ yào xià hǎojǐtiānde yǔ.

“Is it going to rain tomorrow?” “Yes, starting tomorrow, it will rain for quite a few days.”

Hòutiān yào xiàyǔ ma? Dùi, cóng hòutiān kāishǐ yào xià
hǎojítiānde yǔ.

“Is it going to rain the day after tomorrow?” “Yes, starting the day after tomorrow, it will rain for quite a few days.”

Jīntiān xiàwǔ yào xiàyǔ ma? Dùi, cóng jīntiān xiàwǔ kāishǐ yào xià
hǎojítiānde yǔ.

“Is it going to rain this afternoon?” “Yes, starting this afternoon, it will rain for quite a few days.”

Lǐbài’èr yào xiàyǔ ma? Dùi, cóng lǐbài’èr kāishǐ yào xià
hǎojítiānde yǔ.

“Is it going to rain on Tuesday?” “Yes, starting Tuesday, it will rain for quite a few days.”

Xià xīngqīsān yào xiàyǔ ma? Dùi, cóng xià xīngqīsān kāishǐ yào xià
hǎojítiānde yǔ.

“Is it going to rain next Wednesday?” “Yes, starting next Wednesday, it will rain for quite a few days.”

Jīntiān wǎnshàng yào Dui, cóng jīntiān wǎnshàng kāishǐ xià yǔ ma? yào xià hǎojǐtiānde yǔ.

“Is it going to rain this evening?” “Yes, starting this evening, it will rain for quite a few days.”

Jīntiān yèli yào xià yǔ Dui, cóng jīntiān yèli kāishǐ yào xià hǎojǐtiānde yǔ.

“Is it going to rain tonight?” “Yes, starting tonight, it will rain for quite a few days.”

3. You're a member of a team of television meteorologists. When your colleague reports that the high temperature for today will be a certain number of degrees, you report that the low temperature will be 14 degrees below the high temperature. (Note: The Chinese for “below zero” is língxià as in língxià shísāndù “13 degrees below zero.”)

Jīntiān zuì gāo wēndù shì Zuì dī wēndù shì shíwūdù.
èrshíjiūdù.

“Today's high temperature is 29 degrees.” “The low temperature is 15 degrees.”

Jīntiān zuì gāo wēndù shì Zuì dī wēndù shì sìshíliūdù.
liùshíidù.

“Today’s high temperature is 60 degrees.” “The low temperature is 46 degrees.”

Jīntiān zuì gāo wēndù shì 60 dù. Zuì dī wēndù shì 46 dù.
jīūshíjiǔdù.

“Today’s high temperature is 99 degrees.” “The low temperature is 85 degrees.”

Jīntiān zuì gāo wēndù shì 99 dù. Zuì dī wēndù shì 85 dù.
èrshíwǔdù.

“Today’s high temperature is 20 degrees.” “The low temperature is 6 degrees.”

Jīntiān zuì gāo wēndù shì 20 dù. Zuì dī wēndù shì 6 dù.
língdù.

“Today’s high temperature is 0 degrees.” “The low temperature is 14 below zero.”

4. In each case, use the zhǐ...éryǐ pattern to stress that you have only the number mentioned in the English cue and that is all.

Nǐ yǒu jǐge hǎo péngyou?
(Cue: only one good friend)

Wǒ zhǐ yǒu yíge hǎo
péngyou éryǐ.

“How many good friends do you have?” “I only have one good friend.”

Nǐ yǒu jǐkuài qián?
(Cue: only five dollars)

Wǒ zhǐ yǒu wǔkuài qián
éryǐ.

“How many dollars do you have?” “I only have five dollars.”

Nǐ yǒu jǐzhī māo?
(Cue: only one cat)

Wǒ zhǐ yǒu yìzhī māo
éryǐ.

“How many cats do you have?” “I only have one cat.”

Nǐ yǒu jǐjiàn xíngli?
(Cue: only one piece of luggage)

Wǒ zhǐ yǒu yíjiàn xíngli
éryǐ.

“How many pieces of luggage do you have?” “I only have one piece of luggage.”

Nǐ yǒu jǐtiáo yú?
(Cue: only three fish)

Wǒ zhǐ yǒu sāntiáo yú
éryǐ.

“How many fish do you have?” “I only have three fish.”

5. Transform each question into a shì bu shi question or suggestion.

Yào xiàyǔ le ma? Shì bu shi yào xiàyǔ le?

“Is it going to rain?” “Is it going to rain?”

Yào dǎléi le ma? Shì bu shi yào dǎléi le?

“Is it going to thunder?” “Is it going to thunder?”

Yào shǎndiàn le ma? Shì bu shi yào shǎndiàn le?

“Is there going to be lightning?” “Is there going to be lightning?”

Tā bú ài nǐ le ma? Shì bu shi tā bú ài nǐ le?

“Does he not love you anymore?” “Is it the case that he doesn’t love you anymore?”

Wǒmen xiān qù wèn lǎoshī ma? Shì bu shi wǒmen xiān qù wèn lǎoshī?

“Are we going to first go ask the teacher?” “Shall we first go ask the teacher?”

6. Respond that, yes, whatever the questioner is asking is definitely so.

Wǒ yí dìng děi qù ma? Duì, nǐ yí dìng děi qù.

“Do I definitely have to go?” “Yes, you definitely must go.”

Nǐ yí dìng huì děng wǒ ma? Duì, wǒ yí dìng huì děng nǐ.

“Will you be sure to wait for me?” “Yes, I’ll be sure to wait for you.”

Nǐ yí dìng huì xiǎoxīn ma? Duì, wǒ yí dìng huì xiǎoxīn.

“Will you be sure to be careful?” “Yes, I’ll be sure to be careful.”

Wǒmen yí dìng yào shàngkè ma? Duì, wǒmen yí dìng yào shàngkè.

“Do we definitely have to go to class?” “Yes, we definitely have to go to class.”

Tāmen yíding huì jìnkuaì Dui, tāmen yíding huì jìnkuaì
gǎndào ma? gǎndào.

“Will they be sure to hurry “Yes, they’ll be sure to hurry
there as fast as they can?” there as fast as they can.”

Dòngwùyuán yíding yǒu Dui, dòngwùyuán yíding yǒu
dòngwù ma? dòngwù!

“Do zoos definitely have “Yes, zoos definitely have
animals?” animals!”

7. Now respond that what the questioner is asking is not necessarily true.

Nǐ yíding huì lái ma? Bù yíding, wǒ bù yíding huì lái.

“Will you definitely be “Not necessarily; I won’t
coming?” necessarily be coming.”

Tā yíding shēnqǐng Hāfó Bù yíding, tā bù yíding shēnqǐng
Dàxué ma? Hāfó Dàxué.

“Will she definitely be “Not necessarily; she won’t
applying to Harvard necessarily be applying to
University?” Harvard.”

Tāmen yíding yào chūshì Bù yíding, tāmen bù yíding yào chēpiào ma? chūshì chēpiào.

“Do they definitely need to show their bus tickets?” “Not necessarily; they don’t necessarily have to show their bus tickets.”

Nèitiáo lù xīngqīrì yíding Bù yíding, nèitiáo lù xīngqīrì bù sāichē ma? yíding sāichē.

“Is that road definitely clogged up on Sundays?” “Not necessarily; that road is not necessarily clogged up on Sundays.”

Wáng Xiānsheng yíding Bù yíding, Wáng Xiānsheng bù huì shēngqì ma? yíding huì shēngqì.

“Will Mr. Wang definitely get angry?” “Not necessarily; Mr. Wang won’t necessarily get angry.”

Tiānqi yùbào yíding zhǔn Bù yíding, tiānqi yùbào bù yíding ma? zhǔn.

“Are weather forecasts definitely accurate?” “Not necessarily; weather forecasts are not necessarily accurate.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 10, Part 2: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Listen to the question and reply, using the bù...yě bù... pattern plus an antonym of the word used by the speaker.

Dà bu dà? Bú dà yě bù xiǎo.

“Is it big?” “It’s neither big nor small.”

Qīng bu qīng? Bù qīng yě bú zhòng.

“Is it light?” “It’s neither light nor heavy.”

Lěng bu lěng? Bù lěng yě bú rè.

“Is it cold?” “It’s neither cold nor hot.”

Nán bu nán? Bù nán yě bù róngyi.

“Is it hard?” “It’s neither hard nor easy.”

Tā gāo bu gāo? Tā bù gāo yě bù ǎi.

“Is he tall?” “He’s neither tall nor short.”

Qìwēn gāo bu gāo? Qìwēn bù gāo yě bù dī.

“Is the temperature high?” “The temperature is neither high nor low.”

Qìwēn dī bu dī? Qìwēn bù dī yě bù gāo.

“Is the temperature low?” “The temperature is neither low nor high.”

2. Respond to each question with the STATIVE VERB + -de yào sǐ pattern, to express that something is extremely something else.

Nǐ rè bu rè? Wǒ rède yào sǐ!

“Are you hot?” “I’m extremely hot!”

Nǐ máng bu máng? Wǒ mángde yào sǐ!

“Are you busy?” “I’m extremely busy!”

Nǐ lèi bu lèi? Wǒ lèide yào sǐ!

“Are you tired?” “I’m extremely tired!”

Nǐ jīn bu jīnzhāng?

Wǒ jīnzhāngde yào sǐ!

“Are you nervous?”

“I’m extremely nervous!”

Nǐmen kùn bu kùn?

Wǒmen kùnde yào sǐ!

“Are you guys tired?”

“We’re totally beat!”

Nǐmende sùshè zāng bu zāng?

Wǒmende sùshè zāngde yào sǐ!

“Is your dorm dirty?”

“Our dorm is filthy!”

Tā pàng bu pàng?

Tā pàngde yào sǐ!

“Is he fat?”

“He’s extremely fat!”

Tā bèn bu bèn?

Tā bènde yào sǐ!

“Is she stupid?”

“She’s unbelievably stupid!”

Jīntiān lěng bu lěng?

Jīntiān lěngde yào sǐ!

“Is it cold today?”

“It’s incredibly cold today!”

Dōngxi guì bu guì?

Dōngxi guìde yào sǐ!

“Are things expensive?”

“Things are incredibly expensive!”

3. Use the *he yòu...yòu...* pattern to indicate that a certain dish of food is both what the speaker said and delicious.

Zhèige cài hǎokàn ma? Zhèige cài yòu hǎokàn yòu hǎochī.

“Does this dish look good?” “This dish both looks good and is delicious.”

Zhèige cài piányi ma? Zhèige cài yòu piányi yòu hǎochī.

“Is this dish cheap?” “This dish is both cheap and delicious.”

Zhèige cài róngyi zuò ma? Zhèige cài yòu róngyi zuò yòu hǎochī.

“Is this dish easy to make?” “This dish is both easy to make and delicious.”

Zhèige cài duì shēnti hǎo ma? Zhèige cài yòu duì shēnti hǎo yòu hǎochī.

“Is this dish good for the body?” “This dish is both good for the body and delicious.”

4. Use the *rúguǒ...jiù...* pattern to comment that if the speaker does what she says she'll do, you can't be friends with her anymore.

Wǒ yào gēn Xiǎo Rúguǒ nǐ gēn Xiǎo Zhào jiéhūn, wǒ jiù Zhào jiéhūn. bù néng zài gēn nǐ zuò péngyou le.

“I'm marrying Little Zhao.” “If you marry Little Zhao, then I can't be friends with you anymore.”

Wǒ yào gēn lǎoshī Rúguǒ nǐ gēn lǎoshī shuō wǒ táokè le, shuō nǐ táokè le. wǒ jiù bù néng zài gēn nǐ zuò péngyou le.

“I'm telling the teacher that I skipped class.” “If you tell the teacher that I skipped class, then I can't be friends with you anymore.”

Wǒ yào gēn nǐ dìdì Rúguǒ nǐ gēn wǒ dìdì líhūn, wǒ jiù bù líhūn le. néng zài gēn nǐ zuò péngyou le.

“I'm getting a divorce from your younger brother.” “If you get a divorce from my younger brother, then I can't be friends with you anymore.”

Wǒ yào gēn nǐ māma Rúguǒ nǐ gēn wǒ māma shuō wǒ yǒu
shuō nǐ yǒu nǚ péngyǒu le, wǒ jiù bù néng zài gēn
nǚ péngyǒu le. nǐ zuò péngyǒu le.

“I’m telling you “If you tell my mother that I have a
mother that you have girlfriend, then I can’t be friends with
a girlfriend.” you anymore.”

5. Using hěn shǎo, answer that whatever is being asked about
happens very seldom. Precede your answer with the phrase
Shuō shízài de “to tell the truth.”

Zhèige dìfang chángcháng Shuō shízài de, zhèige dìfang hěn
xiàoxuě ma? shǎo xiàoxuě.

“Does it often snow in this “To tell the truth, it seldom snows
place?” in this place.”

Běijīng chángcháng xiàoyǔ Shuō shízài de, Běijīng hěn shǎo
ma? xiàoyǔ.

“Does it often rain in “To tell the truth, it seldom rains
Beijing?” in Beijing.”

Zhè chángcháng chū Shuō shízài de, zhè hěn shǎo chū
tài yáng ma? tài yáng.

“Does the sun often come out here?” “To tell the truth, the sun seldom comes out here.”

Nàr chángcháng dǎléi ma? Shuō shízàide, nàr hěn shǎo dǎléi.

“Is there often thunder there?” “To tell the truth, there is seldom thunder there.”

Nèige dìfang chángcháng Shuō shízàide, nèige dìfang hěn shǎndiàn ma? shǎo shǎndiàn.

“Is there often lightning there?” “To tell the truth, there is seldom lightning there.”

Nǐ chángcháng qù wánr ma? Shuō shízàide, wǒ hěn shǎo qù wánr.

“Do you often go have fun?” “To tell the truth, I seldom go have fun.”

Nǐ māma chángcháng Shuō shízàide, wǒ māma hěn shēngqì ma? shǎo shēngqì.

“Does your mom often get angry?” “To tell the truth, my mom seldom gets angry.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 10, Part 3: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Add *hǎoxiàng...de yàngzi* “it seems that...” to each of the sentences you hear.

Yào wǔkuài qián. Hǎoxiàng yào wǔkuài qiánde yàngzi.

“It costs five dollars.” “It seems it costs five dollars.”

Tā xiànzài bú zài. Tā hǎoxiàng xiànzài bú zàide yàngzi.

“She’s not here now.” “It seems she’s not here now.”

Tàiyáng chūláile. Tàiyáng hǎoxiàng chūláilede yàngzi.

“The sun has come out.” “It seems the sun has come out.”

Xiǎo Zhāngde yùnqì hěn hǎo. Xiǎo Zhāngde yùnqì hǎoxiàng hěn hǎode yàngzi.

“Little Zhang’s luck is very good.” “It seems Little Zhang’s luck is very good.”

Tā biànshòule. Tā hǎoxiàng biànshòulede yàngzi.

“He has gotten skinnier.” “It seems he has gotten skinnier.”

Jīntiān hěn cháoshī. Jīntiān hǎoxiàng hěn cháoshīde
yàngzi.

“Today is very humid.” “It seems today is very humid.”

2. Change the following sentences from měi + MEASURE to duplicated measure, retaining the meaning “every.”

Zuìjìn měitiān dōu chū tàiyáng. Zuìjìn tiāntiān dōu chū
tàiyáng.

“It’s been sunny every day recently.” “It’s been sunny every day recently.”

Zhèli měige rén dōu yǎng gǒu. Zhèli rénrén dōu yǎng gǒu.

“Every one here has a dog.” “Every one here has a dog.”

Tā měinián dōu huí Táiwān. Tā niánnián dōu huí Táiwān
yíci.

“She goes back to Taiwan every year.” “She goes back to Taiwan every year.”

Shūjiàshangde shū, wǒ Shūjiàshangde shū, wǒ
měiběn dōu yào. běnběn dōu yào.

“I want every one of those books on the bookshelf.” “I want every one of those books on the bookshelf.”

Wǒmen jiāde zhuōzi, tā Wǒmen jiāde zhuōzi, tā
měizhāng dōu mài le. zhāngzhāng dōu mài le.

“He sold every single table in our house.” “He sold every single table in our house.”

3. Agree with the speaker, adding gēnběn for emphasis.

Wǒmen yùnqì bù hǎo. Duì, wǒmen yùnqì gēnběn bù
hǎo.

“Our luck is bad.” “Yes, our luck is just plain bad.”

Tāmen méi bànfǎ chūmén. Duì, tāmen gēnběn méi bànfǎ
chūmén.

“They can’t leave the house.” “Yes, there’s no way at all they can leave the house.”

Tā méiyou shémme Dùi, tā gēnběn méiyou shémme péngyou.
péngyou.

“She doesn’t have any friends.” “Yes, she doesn’t have any friends at all.”

Tā bù dǒng tā zài shuō Dùi, tā gēnběn bù dǒng tā zài shémme.
shuō shémme.

“She doesn’t understand what she’s talking about.” “Yes, she doesn’t understand what she’s talking about at all.”

Tā méi shuō shémme bù Dùi, tā gēnběn méi shuō shémme hǎotīngde huà.
bù hǎotīngde huà.

“He didn’t say anything bad.” “Yes, he didn’t say anything bad at all.”

4. Respond (using Qíshí,...) that actually you would like to do what the speaker has suggested, but (using dànshi) say that you recently have really been too busy and don’t have any time at all.

Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng chūqu wánr? Qíshí, wǒ hěn xiǎng chūqu wánr, dànshi wǒ zuìjìn shízài tài mángle, gēnběn méiyou shíjiān.

“Would you like to go out and have some fun?” “Actually, I’d very much like to go out and have some fun, but recently I’ve really been too busy, I don’t have any time at all.”

Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng zǒulù qù?
Qíshí, wǒ hěn xiǎng zǒulù qù, dànshi wǒ zuìjìn shízài tài mángle, gēnběn méiyou shíjiān.

“Would you like to walk there?” “Actually, I’d very much like to walk there, but recently I’ve really been too busy, I don’t have any time at all.”

Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng xiūxi yihuǐ?
Qíshí, wǒ hěn xiǎng xiūxi yihuǐ, dànshi wǒ zuìjìn shízài tài mángle, gēnběn méiyou shíjiān.

“Would you like to rest for a while?” “Actually, I’d very much like to rest for a while, but recently I’ve really been too busy, I don’t have any time at all.”

Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng dào zhōngxīn Rìyǔ?
Qíshí, wǒ hěn xiǎng dào yǔyán zhōngxīn xué Rìyǔ, dànshi wǒ zuìjìn shízài tài mángle, gēnběn méiyou shíjiān.

“Would you like to go to the language center to learn Japanese, but recently I’ve really been too busy, I don’t learn Japanese?”
“Actually, I’d very much like to go to the language center to learn Japanese, but recently I’ve really been too busy, I don’t have any time at all.”

Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng Qíshí, wǒ hěn xiǎng gēn nǐ qù xué kāichē,
gēn wǒ qù xué dàn- shi wǒ zuìjìn shízài tài mángle,
kāichē? gēnběn méiyou shíjiān.

“Would you like to go learn how to drive with me?”
“Actually, I’d very much like to learn how to drive with you, but recently I’ve really been too busy, I don’t have any time at all.”

Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng gēn wǒ dào dòngwùyuanr qù wánr?
Qíshí, wǒ hěn xiǎng gēn nǐ dào dòngwùyuanr qù wánr, dànshi wǒ zuìjìn shízài tài mángle, gēnběn méiyou shíjiān.

“Would you like to go to the zoo with me to have some fun?”
“Actually, I’d very much like to go to the zoo with you to have some fun, but recently I’ve really been too busy, I don’t have any time at all.”

Nǐ xiǎng bu xiǎng chīle zhōngfàn yǐhòu liáotiān?
Qíshí, wǒ hěn xiǎng chīle zhōngfàn yǐhòu gēn nǐmen liáotiān, dànshi wǒ zuìjìn shízài tài mángle, gēnběn méiyou shíjiān.

“Would you like to chat with us after we’ve had lunch?”
“Actually, I’d very much like to chat with you after we’ve had lunch, but recently after we’ve had lunch I’ve really been too busy, I don’t have any time at all.”

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Unit 10, Part 4: Transformation and Response Drills

1. Answer the following questions about where you are from using the cue provided. Indicate whether the city mentioned is on the east or west coast of the U.S. If it’s on the east coast, say that it’s not too far from New York; if it’s on the west coast, say it’s not too far from San Francisco.

Éi, nǐ jiā zài Měiguó shémme dìfang?
Zài Měiguó xī’àn, San Jose, lí Jiùjīnshān bú tài yuǎn.

(Cue: San Jose)

“So, where in the U.S. is your home?”
“It’s on the U.S. west coast, San Jose, not too far from San Francisco.”

Éi, nǐ jiā zài Měiguó shémme dìfang?
Zài Měiguó xī’àn, Oakland, lí Jiùjīnshān bú tài yuǎn.

(Cue: Oakland)

“So, where in the U.S. is your home?” “It’s on the U.S. west coast, Oakland, not too far from San Francisco.”

Éi, nǐ jiā zài Měiguó shémme dìfang? Zài Měiguó dōngàn, Newark, New Jersey, lí Niǔyuē bú tài yuǎn.

(Cue: Newark, New Jersey)

“So, where in the U.S. is your home?” “It’s on the U.S. east coast, Newark, New Jersey, not too far from New York.”

Éi, nǐ jiā zài Měiguó shémme dìfang? Zài Měiguó xī’àn, Sacramento, lí Jiùjīnshān bú tài yuǎn.

(Cue: Sacramento)

“So, where in the U.S. is your home?” “It’s on the U.S. west coast, Sacramento, not too far from San Francisco.”

Éi, nǐ jiā zài Měiguó shémme dìfang? Zài Měiguó dōngàn, Philadelphia, lí Niūyuē bú tài yuǎn.

(Cue: Philadelphia)

“So, where in the U.S. is your home?” “It’s on the U.S. east coast, Philadelphia, not too far from New York.”

2. Use bǐ to state where it’s hotter: “here” or “there”? (Note that some temperatures are Centigrade while others are Fahrenheit.)

Zhèr sānshíjiǔdù. Nàr Zhèr bǐ nàr rè.
sānshíbādù.

“It’s 39° here. It’s 38° there.” “It’s hotter here than there.”

Zhèr bāshíwūdù. Nàr jiǔshídù. Nàr bǐ zhèr rè.

“It’s 85° here. It’s 90° there.” “It’s hotter there than here.”

Zhèr èrshíqīdù. Nàr èrshíjiǔdù. Nàr bǐ zhèr rè.

“It’s 27° here. It’s 29° there.” “It’s hotter there than here.”

Zhèr sìshìdù. Nàr sānshísāndù. Zhèr bǐ nàr rè.

“It’s 40° here. It’s 33° there.” “It’s hotter here than there.”

3. Use bǐ to state who is older (use dà for “older”).

Xiǎo Zhāng 28 suì. Xiǎo Lǐ 33 suì. Xiǎo Lǐ bǐ Xiǎo Zhāng dà.

“Little Zhang is 28. Little Li is 33.” “Little Li is older than Little Zhang.”

Lǎo Zhèng 57 suì. Lǎo Xiè 55 suì. Lǎo Zhèng bǐ Lǎo Xiè dà.

“Old Zheng is 57. Old Xie is 55.” “Old Zheng is older than Old Xie.”

Luó Xiānsheng 32 suì. Shī Luó Xiānsheng bǐ Shī Xiānsheng 31 suì. Shī Luó Xiānsheng bǐ Shī Xiānsheng dà.

“Mr. Luo is 32. Mr. Shi is 31.” “Mr. Luo is older than Mr. Shi.”

Huáng Xiáojie 27 suì. Lín Lín Xiáojie bǐ Huáng Xiáojie 29 suì. Xiáojie dà.

“Ms. Huang is 27. Ms. Lin is 29.” “Ms. Lin is older than Ms. Huang.”

4. Use the A méiyóu B nènme C pattern to state that the one person is not as tall as the other person.

Xiǎo Chén yīmǐ bāyī. Lǎo Bái Xiǎo Chén méiyóu Lǎo yīmǐ bā'èr. Bái nènme gāo.

“Little Chen is 1 m 81 cm. Old Bai is 1 m 82 cm.” “Little Chen is not as tall as Old Bai.”

Xiǎo Mǎ yīmǐ liùsān. Lǎo Sūn Lǎo Sūn méiyóu Xiǎo Mǎ yīmǐ wǔbā. Sūn nènme gāo.

“Little Ma is 1 m 63 cm. Old Sun is 1 m 58 cm.” “Old Sun is not as tall as Little Ma.”

Xiǎo Hé yīmǐ qīsì. Lǎo Zhào yīmǐ Xiǎo Hé méiyóu Lǎo Zhào qīqī. Zhào nènme gāo.

“Little He is 1 m 74 cm. Old Zhao is 1 m 77 cm.” Old Zhao is not as tall as Old Zhao.”

Xiǎo Wú yīmǐ liùjiǔ. Lǎo Hóu Lǎo Hóu méiyóu Xiǎo Wú yīmǐ liùbā. nèmme gāo.

“Little Wu is 1 m 69 cm. Old Hou is 1 m 68 cm.” Old Hou is not as tall as Little Wu.”

5. Use the A méiyóu B nèmme C pattern to state that it's not as cold in the one city as it is in the other. (As before, some temperatures are Centigrade while others are Fahrenheit.)

Běijīng liùdù. Tiānjīn qīdù. Tiānjīn méiyóu Běijīng nèmme lěng.

“It's 6° in Beijing. It's 7° in Tianjin.” It's not as cold in Tianjin as it is in Beijing.”

Shànghǎi shísāndù. Nánjīng Nánjīng méiyóu Shànghǎi shísìdù. nèmme lěng.

“It's 13° in Shanghai. It's 14° in Nanjing.” It's not as cold in Nanjing as it is in Shanghai.”

Xiānggǎng liǎngdù. Àomén Xiānggǎng méiyóu Àomén
yīdù. nèmme lěng.

“It’s 2° in Hong Kong. It’s “It’s not as cold in Hong Kong
1° in Macao.” as it is in Macao.”

Niūyuē sìshìsìdù. Jiùjīnshān īnshān méiyóu Niūyuē nèmme
sìshìbādù. Jiùj lěng.

“It’s 44° in New York. It’s “It’s not as cold in San
48° in San Francisco.” Francisco as it is in New York.”

6. Based on the information you hear, state whether “you” weigh more than “he” or “she” does, or whether “you” do not weigh as much as “he” or “she” does. For “to weigh” use zhòng “be heavy.”

Wǒ qīshìbāgōngjīn. Tā Wǒ bǐ tā zhòng.
qīshìqīgōngjīn.

“I weigh 78 kilos. He weighs 77 “I weigh more than he
kilos.” does.”

Wǒ wūshìsìgōngjīn. Tā Wǒ méiyóu tā nèmme
wūshìwǔgōngjīn. zhòng.

“I weigh 54 kilos. She weighs “I don’t weigh as much as
55 kilos.” she does.”

Wǒ liùshisāngōngjīn. Tā Wǒ bǐ tā zhòng.
liùshí’èrgōngjīn.

“I weigh 63 kilos. He weighs 62 “I weigh more than he
kilos.” does.”

Wǒ sìshíjiǔgōngjīn. Tā Wǒ méiyǒu tā nème
wǔshíjiǔgōngjīn. zhòng.

“I weigh 49 kilos. She weighs “I don’t weigh as much as
59 kilos.” she does.”

7. Use the pattern ...-de shíhou to transform the two shorter,
separate sentences into one longer, complex sentence that
expresses “When...”.

Wǒ xiǎo. Wǒ bù xǐhuan Wǒ xiǎode shíhou, bù xǐhuan
xuéxí. xuéxí.

“I was small. I didn’t like to “When I was small, I didn’t like
study.” to study.”

Wǒ bìyèle. Wǒ fùmǔ Wǒ bìyède shíhou, fùmǔ
méiyǒu lái. méiyǒu lái.

“I graduated. My parents “When I graduated, my parents
didn’t come.” didn’t come.”

Wǒ tōngzhī tāmen le. Yǐjīng Wǒ tōngzhī tāmen de shíhou,
tài wǎnle. yǐjīng tài wǎnle.

“I notified them. It was “When I notified them, it was
already too late.” already too late.”

Wǒ dào Mǎláixīyà le. Wǒ bú Wǒ dào Mǎláixīyà de shíhou, bú
tài shìyòng. tài shìyòng.

“I arrived in Malaysia. I had “When I arrived in Malaysia, I
a hard time getting used to had a hard time get- ting used
it.” to it.”

Wǒ yímin Měiguó le. Wǒ Wǒ yímin Měiguó de shíhou,
yǐjīng shíwǔsuì le. yǐjīng shíwǔsuì le.

“I immigrated to the U.S. I “When I immigrated to the
was already 15.” U.S., I was already 15.”

Wǒ kǎoshì. Wǒ dōu huì Wǒ kǎoshìde shíhou, dōu huì
jǐnzhāngde yào sǐ. jǐnzhāngde yào sǐ.

“I take a test. I always get “When I take a test, I always
super nervous.” get super nervous.”

Wǒ zài Zhōngguó liúxué. Wǒ zài Zhōngguó liúxuéde
Wǒ qùle hěn duō yǒu yìside shíhou, qùle hěn duō yǒu yìside
dìfang. dìfang.

“I studied abroad in China. I “When I studied abroad in
went to lots of interesting China, I went to lots of
places.” interesting places.”

4. Role Play Exercises

Unit 1, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: How are you?

B: How are you?

A: Where are you going?

B: I'm going to the dining hall. How about you?

A: I'm going to the library.

2. A: Hello!

B: Hi!

A: Where are you going?

B: I'm going back to my dorm. And you?

A: I'm going to take care of a little something.

3. A: Hello, how are you doing?

B: Hi!

A: Where are you going?

B: I'm going to the library. How about yourself?

A: I'm also going to the library.

4. A: Hi! Where is Wang Jingsheng going?

B: Wang Jingsheng is going to the library.

A: And Ke Leien?

B: Ke Leien is also going to the library.

A: And you?

B: I'm returning to my dorm.

The following role plays use some of the vocabulary from the Classroom Expressions.

5. A: Good morning! How are you? Where are you going?

B: I'm going to take care of some stuff. How about you?

A: I'm going to the dining hall.

B: Good, very good. Goodbye! See you tomorrow.

A: See you tomorrow!

6. A: Good morning! How are you? Where are you going?

B: I'm going back to my dorm.

A: Could you say that again?

B: I'm returning to my dormitory. How about you? Where are you going?

A: I'm also returning to my dormitory.

Unit 1, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: How are you?

B: How are you? I haven't seen you for a long time. How have you been?

A: Fine, thanks. How are your mom and dad?

B: They're both fine, thanks.

A: I'll be going now. So long!

B: So long!

2. A: Hi! Long time no see! How have you been?

B: Pretty good. How have you been?

A: Very busy.

B: I've been very busy, too.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: How is your spouse?

B: He/she's fine, thanks. How about your spouse?

A: He/she's fine, too.

B: I have something I have to do. I'll be going now. See you!

A: See you!

3. A: Haven't seen you for quite a while. How have you been?

B: I've been very busy. How have you been?

A: I've been very busy, too. How are your spouse and children?

B: They're all fine, thanks. How are your mom and dad?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: They're both fine, too.

B: Where are you going?

A: I'm going to the library. And you?

B: I have something I have to do. I'll be going now...

4. A: Hi! Long time no see! How have you been?

B: I'm very tired. How have you been?

A: I'm also very tired.

B: How is your mom?

A: She's very busy.

(switch to another pair of students)

B: How's your dad?

A: He's fine.

B: Where are you going?

A: I'm returning to my dorm. And you?

B: I'm going to the cafeteria. I'll be going now...

A: Bye-bye!

Unit 1, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Hi, Old Gao, how are you? Have you been busy lately?

B: I'm still the same as before. I'm not too busy. Little Wang, how have you been recently?

A: Pretty good, not too busy. How have your studies been going? Is Chinese hard?

(switch to another pair of students)

B: My studies have been quite intense. Chinese is hard! How has your work been going?

A: My work has lately been very busy.

B: I have something I have to do, I'll be going now. Bye!

A: Goodbye. See you tomorrow!

2. A: Hello, Old He!

B: Hello, Little Zhao!

A: How have you been doing recently?

B: Very well, thanks. Still the same as before. How have you been?

A: Not too well. I'm too busy.

B: Recently, I've been very busy, too.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: How are your children?

B: They're all fine. Their studies have been quite intense. How is your spouse?

A: Fine. He/she is not too busy. Where are you going? Are you going to the library?

B: I'm not going to the library. I'm going to the cafeteria.

A: I'm going to the library to take care of a little something. I'll be going now.

B: Bye-bye!

3. A: Hi, Little Wang! How have you been recently?

B: Hi, Old Ke. I'm very sleepy. How have you been? Are you sleepy, too?

A: I'm not sleepy. Recently I've been very busy.

B: How are your studies going? Is Chinese hard?

A: My studies are very intense. Chinese is very hard.

(switch to another pair of students)

B: Chinese is not hard, Chinese is easy! Where are you going? Back to the dorm?

A: I'm going to the library. Are you going to the library, too?

B: I'm not going to the library. I'm returning to the dorm. Bye!

A: Bye! See you tomorrow!

4. A: Little He, you're very tall!

B: I'm not tall. Old Zhao, you also are not short!

5. A: My father is very tall. Is your father tall?

B: My father is quite short. My mother is tall.

Unit 1, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Mr. Lin, Mrs. Lin, welcome, welcome. Come in, come in!

B: Mr./Miss Ke, how are you? Thank you!

A: You're welcome. Please sit down, please sit down. Are you both well?

B: Thank you, we're both very well. Are your parents well?

A: They're also very well, thank you.

B: I have a little something, I must be going now. Thank you.

A: You're welcome. Take it easy. Goodbye!

2. A: Mr. and Mrs. Xie, welcome, welcome. Come in, come in!

B: Mr./Ms. Wang, how are you? Thank you.

A: Please sit down, please sit down.

B: Thank you, thank you.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Mr. and Mrs. Xie, I have a little something, I must be going now.

B: Mr./Ms. Wang, where are you going?

A: I'm going to take care of something. Mr. and Mrs. Xie, thank you.

B: You're welcome. Take care. Goodbye. See you tomorrow.

3. A: Teacher Zhao, welcome, welcome. Come in, come in!

B: Mr./Miss Gao, thank you. Long time no see.

A: Right, long time no see. Please sit down, please sit down.

B: Thank you. How have your studies been going? Is Chinese interesting?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Chinese is too hard, it's not interesting.

B: Mr./Miss Gao, I've gotten tired, I must be going now. Thank you.

A: You're welcome. Take it easy. Goodbye, Teacher Zhao.

B: Goodbye, goodbye.

4. A: Old Li, how are you? Welcome, welcome!

B: Little Gao, how have you been lately?

A: Pretty good. Come in, come in! Have you been well lately?

B: Still the same as before. How are your spouse and kids? Are you all well?

A: We're all fine. My spouse is fine. My kids are also fine.

(switch to another pair of students)

B: How are your studies?

A: My studies are very intense. How about you? Is your work busy?

B: My work is not too busy.

A: Is your work interesting?

B: My work is uninteresting. Little Gao, I have something, I have to go now. Thank you!

A: You're welcome. Take it easy. Goodbye!

Unit 2, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: What's your name?

B: My name is _____. What's your name?

A: My name is ____.

B: Is he your teacher?

A: Correct, he's our Chinese teacher.

B: What is his name?

A: His name is Lǐ Qún. He's Malaysian.

2. A: Excuse me, what country are you guys from?

B: I'm Canadian. She's American. What country are you from?

A: I'm Chinese.

B: What's your name?

A: My name is _____. What's your name?

B: My name is _____.

3. A: Excuse me, are they your teachers?

B: They're my classmates, not my teachers.

A: Are they all Americans?

B: Not all are. This classmate is also American, but that classmate is Taiwanese.

4. A: Excuse me, what country are you from?

B: I'm American, Chinese-American. How about you? What country are you from?

A: I'm also American. Are your classmates all American?

B: They're not all American. This classmate is American, but that classmate is Japanese.

5. A: What's the name of your Chinese teacher?

B: Her name is Zhāng Huiqiáng.

A: What country is she from?

B: She's Singaporean.

A: How has Chinese been lately? Is it hard? Is it interesting?

B: Chinese is not hard, it's easy. It's also very interesting.

6. A: Which classmate is Spanish?

B: This classmate is Spanish!

7. A: Which teacher is named Yáng Pēixīn?

B: That teacher is named Yáng Pēixīn!

Unit 2, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: I will introduce you guys. Old Wang, this is Little Li. Little Li, this is Old Wang.

B: Little Li, how are you? Happy to meet you! Welcome to China!

C: Old Wang, how are you? Thank you. I'm also happy to meet you.

2. A: Let me introduce you. This is my new roommate, her/his name is _____. This is my old classmate, her/his name is _____.

B: How are you? Welcome to America!

C: I'm happy to meet you, Mr./Ms. _____.

B: Oh, don't address me like that! It's better if you call me Little _____. C: O.K. In that case, why don't you also call me Little _____.

3. A: I'm your new roommate. My name is _____. I'm happy to meet you?

B: How are you? I'm also happy to meet you. My name is _____.

A: Excuse me, what country are you from? Are you American?

B: I'm not American. I'm Canadian.

4. A: Who is that?

B: She is our new roommate, her name is Lili.

A: And who is he?

B: He is our Chinese teacher, Teacher Zhāng.

A: And who are they?

B: They are our new classmates. You don't know them?

A: I don't know any of them. Please introduce them to me.

5. A: Excuse me, are you Chinese?

B: No, I'm not Chinese, I'm Japanese. Are you American?

A: No, I'm not American, I'm Canadian.

B: How should I address you?

A: Oh, my name is _____. It would be best if you called me Little _____. What's your name?

B: My name is _____. In that case, why don't you also call me Little _____.

A: Little _____, I have a little something, I'll be leaving first now. Goodbye!

B: I must also be leaving now. Goodbye!

6. A: Mr./Miss Zhao, how are you?

B: Don't call me like that. Just call me Little Zhao.

A: O.K., in that case you call me Little He, too. Little Zhao, what country are you from?

B: I'm Chinese. So how about you? What country are you from?

A: I'm American. Welcome to America! I'm happy to meet you!

Unit 2, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: How do you do? What's your honorable surname?

B: My last name is _____. What is your honorable surname?

A: My last name is _____.

B: Excuse me, I have a little something (to do). I'll leave first. Goodbye!

A: Goodbye!

2. A: That must be your husband/wife?

B: No, no, he/she is not my husband/wife. He/she is my colleague.

A: Excuse me, I have a little something (to do). I'll leave first. I'm very happy to meet you?

B: I'm also very happy to meet you. Goodbye!

3. A: I guess that must be Madam Zhao?

B: No, no, she's not Madam Zhao. She's my Chinese teacher. Her last name is Chen.

A: Excuse me, I have a little something (to do). I'll leave first. I'm very happy to meet you?

B: I'm also very happy to meet you. Goodbye!

4. A: How do you do? What's your honorable surname?

B: My last name is _____. What is your honorable surname?

A: My last name is _____. Mr./Ms. _____, at what organization do you work?

B: I work at the Canadian Embassy. Mr./Ms. _____, where do you work?

A: I now don't work anymore. I study Chinese.

(switch to another group of students)

B: Where are you studying Chinese?

A: I'm studying Chinese at the Chinese University of Hong Kong.

B: Is Chinese hard?

A: Chinese is hard, but it's very interesting.

5. A: How do you do? What's your honorable surname?

B: My last name is _____. What's your honorable surname?

A: My last name is _____. Mr./Ms. _____, what country are you from? Where do you work?

B: I'm American, I work at a company. Oh, let me introduce you. This is my husband/wife, his/her name is _____.

(switch to another group of students)

A: How do you do? I work at the Chinese Foreign Ministry. Where do you work?

C: I'm a college teacher. I work at _____ College.

A: Very happy to meet you! What is your college president's last name?

C: Our college president is surnamed _____. Do you know him/her?

A: I know him/her! President _____ is very good. The teachers at _____ College are also all very good!

Unit 2, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Hello! My name is _____. Please instruct me more.

B: My surname is _____. Sorry, I didn't bring name cards.

A: I didn't bring name cards either.

B: Mr./Ms. _____, where do you work?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: I work at Peking University. Mr./Ms. _____, where do you work?

B: I work at Sino-American Trading Company.

A: Mr./Ms. _____, excuse me, I have to go do something. Goodbye?

B: Bye!

2. A: General Manager Li, this is Manager Xie from China Trading Company.

B: Oh, welcome, welcome! My name is Li. Sorry, I didn't bring name cards.

C: My name is Gao. I work at Sino-American University. Please give me more advice.

B: Mr./Ms. Gao, I suppose that you must be Chinese?

(switch to another group of students)

C: Yes, my spouse and I are both Chinese. I suppose that you are Chinese, too?

B: No, I'm not Chinese, I'm American, Chinese-American.

A: Excuse me, I have to go work now. I'll leave now before you all. Goodbye!

3. A: Hello! You must be Ms. Bai from the Chinese Foreign Ministry?

B: You made a mistake. My last name is Hou, my last name is not Bai.

A: Oh, sorry, sorry, I got it wrong.

B: Never mind.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: I suppose you must be from Spain?

B: No, no. I'm not Spanish. I'm Canadian!

A: Sorry, sorry. I got it wrong!

B: Never mind. I have to be going now. Goodbye! See you tomorrow!

4. A: Who is that lady?

B: Her last name is Luo. Her whole name is Luó Měiyún.

A: Who is that gentleman?

B: His last name is Shi. His full name is Shī Dàpéng.

A: I suppose they must both be Chinese?

B: That's incorrect, you got it wrong. Neither of them is Chinese; they're Japanese!

5. A: Let's welcome ("we welcome") Madam Wood from the British Embassy!

B: Welcome, welcome! I suppose you must be American, too? Oh, sorry, I got that wrong!

C: You didn't get it wrong. I work at the British Embassy, but I am American.

Unit 3, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: How many students do you have in your Chinese class?

B: There are ten—oh, that's not right, I made a mistake. There are nine.

A: Are they all Americans?

B: They're not all Americans. There are six Americans, two Germans, and a Frenchman.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: How many male students and how many female students?

B: Four men, five women.

A: So, how many teachers do you have in all?

B: In all there are two. One is a male teacher, one is a female teacher.

2. A: Excuse me, how many students do you have in your English class?

B: In all there are six.

A: Are they all Americans?

B: Right, they're all Americans—oh, sorry, they're not all Americans. There's one Brit.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: How many male students and how many female students?

B: Half and half. Three males, three females.

A: So, who is your teacher? I suppose it's a female teacher?

B: Correct, it's a female teacher. Her last name is Ramirez. She's Spanish.

3. A: How many classmates are there in your dormitory?

B: In all there are seven. The dormitory is not big, it's very small.

A: Are your classmates all Americans?

B: They're not all Americans. There are 3 Americans, 3 Japanese, and 1 Singaporean.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: I suppose your classmates are all females?

B: No, they're not all females. There are four males and three females.

A: It's very interesting. Are you going back to your dorm now?

B: No, I'm going to the library to study. Tomorrow there is a test. I'm very nervous!

4. A: How many colleagues are there in your company?

B: In all there are eight. Four men, four women—half and half. It's a small company.

A: So, I suppose your colleagues must all be Americans?

B: No, they're not all Americans. There are Americans, Taiwanese, and Germans.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Your company's manager is a male or a female?

B: There's a general manager and a manager. They're both female. The general manager is German, her last name is Weiss. The manager is Taiwanese, her last name is Ma.

A: I know Manager Ma. She is very good.

B: Right, Manager Ma is very good. She is a very interesting person.

Unit 3, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Is this your mother? How old is she?

B: Let me try to think. She's forty-six this year—no, forty-seven.

A: Oh. So I suppose this must be your father?

B: Yes, he's forty-five years old this year.

2. A: This is your younger brother, right? He's cute. How old is he this year?

B: He's five years old. Next month he'll be six.

A: And this is your younger sister, right? She's cute too. How old is she?

B: She's three years old.

3. A: Is this your older brother? How old is he?

B: Let me try to think. He's twenty-eight this year—no, twenty-nine.

A: Oh. So I guess this must be your older sister?

B: Yes, it's my older sister. She's twenty-seven years old this year.

4. A: You're cute! How old are you?

B: You try to guess!

A: Let me try to think... I think you're seventeen?

B: That's not right. I'm thirty-two. Am I still cute?

5. A: How old are you?

B: I'll be twenty-one next month. How old are you?

A: You try to guess.

B: Twenty years old?

A: Not correct!

B: Nineteen years old?

A: Also not correct! I was twenty-one last month!

6. A: I have neither an older brother nor an older sister.

B: I have neither a younger brother nor a younger sister.

A: But you have me, right? I'm also very cute, right?

B: Right. I have you. You also have me. But you're not cute!

7. A: Let's go back to the dormitory, O.K.?

B: Not good. Going back to the dormitory is uninteresting.

A: In that case, let's go the dining hall, O.K.?

B: Good! Too good!

Unit 3, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, how much is this bag?

B: That bag is 50 dollars.

A: Wow, that's too expensive! How much is this cup?

B: That cup is only 15 dollars, it's very cheap.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Could I have a look at it?

B: Sure, why don't you take a look. How many do you want?

A: I'll buy one. This is 15 dollars.

B: O.K., thank you. Goodbye!

2. A: Excuse me, how much is that?

B: That briefcase? Let me take a look. That briefcase is 625 dollars.

A: Gosh, that's too expensive! Well, how much is that backpack?

B: That backpack is only 260 dollars, it's very cheap.

A: Could I look at it?

B: Sure, why don't you take a look. The backpacks we sell are very good.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: All right, I'll buy two of them.

B: In all it's 520 dollars.

A: 500 dollars, O.K.?

B: I suppose it's O.K. In all it's 500 dollars.

A: O.K., this is 500 dollars. Thank you. Goodbye.

B: Thank you. Goodbye!

3. A: Do you have backpacks?

B: Backpacks we have. One backpack is 1,500 dollars.

A: Gosh, that's too expensive!

B: It's not expensive, it's very cheap. The backpacks we sell are very good.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: How much is this?

B: That bag is only 600 dollars. How many do you want to buy?

A: Could I take a look at it?

B: Sure, why don't you take a look.

A: I'll buy six of them. How much is that in all?

B: In all it's 3,600 dollars.

4. A: How much is one cent plus five cents?

B: One cent plus five cents is six cents.

A: How much is 90 cents minus 10 cents?

B: 90 cents minus 10 cents is 80 cents.

Unit 3, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, when does the next train to Beijing (Běijīng) depart?

B: At 11:15. But it's now already 11:10, I'm afraid you're not going to make it.

A: Well, how about the one after the next one?

B: Let me take a look. The one after the next one is 12:30.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: All right. In that case, I'll then take the 12:30 one. How much does it cost?

B: \$28.30.

A: How long does it take to get to Beijing?

B: It takes about one and one-half hours.

A: O.K., thanks.

B: You're welcome!

2. A: Excuse me, when does the next train to Taipei (Táiběi) depart?

B: At 9:30. But it's now already 9:25, I'm afraid you're not going to make it.

A: Well, how about the one after the next one?

B: Let me take a look. The one after the next one is 9:45.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: All right. In that case, I'll then take the 9:45 one. How much does it cost?

B: Fifty dollars.

A: How long does it take to get to Taipei?

B: It takes about half an hour. Let me take a look: it takes only twenty-five minutes.

A: O.K., thanks.

B: You're welcome.

3. A: Excuse me, when does the next train to Shanghai (Shànghǎi) depart?

B: At 21:05. But it's now already 21:00, I'm afraid you're not going to make it.

A: Well, how about the one after the next one?

B: Let me take a look. The one after the next one is 23:05.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: All right. In that case, I'll then take the 23:05 one. How much does it cost?

B: \$133.50.

A: Excuse me, how long does it take to get to Shanghai?

B: It takes about four and a half hours.

A: O.K., thanks.

B: You're welcome!

4. A: What time are you leaving?

B: I'm leaving at seven.

A: What time is it now?

B: It's already a quarter to seven. I'm not going to make it!

Unit 4, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, what time every day does the library open and what time does it close?

B: It opens at 7:30 in the morning and it closes at 11:00 at night.

A: Is it open on Saturday and Sunday?

B: It's open on Saturday. Sundays it's open half the day; it's open in the morning, not in the afternoon.

2. A: Excuse me, what time every day does the embassy open and what time does it close?

B: It opens at 8:15 in the morning and it closes at 4:45 in the afternoon.

A: Is it open on Saturday and Sunday?

B: It's open Saturday morning. Saturday afternoon and Sunday it's closed.

A: Thank you!

B: Not at all.

3. A: Excuse me, what time every day does Sino-American Trading Company open?

B: It opens at 9:15 every morning; it closes at 5:30 every afternoon.

4. A: What time do you usually get up in the morning?

B: I usually get up at 6:30 in the morning.

A: What time do you usually go to bed at night?

B: I usually go to bed at 11:45 at night.

5. A: How many hours do you usually sleep every day?

B: I usually sleep seven hours a day. How about you?

A: I usually sleep five hours a day.

B: You only sleep five hours? Aren't you sleepy?

A: I'm very sleepy!

6. A: How many hours do you usually sleep every day?

B: Monday to Friday I sleep four hours a day. Saturday and Sunday I sleep ten hours a day. How about you?

A: Monday to Friday I sleep three hours a day. Saturday and Sunday I sleep twelve hours a day.

7. A: Last Monday I was still in China!

B: Last Tuesday I was still in Germany!

A: Next Thursday I'm going to Japan?

B: Next Friday I'm going to Taiwan!

Unit 4, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: What's your name?

B: My name is ____.

A: Which year were you born?

B: In 1992, it's the 81st year of the Republic.

A: Which month and which day?

B: May 16.

A: Your address is?

B: Peace Road, Section Three, Lane 5, Alley 8, Number 66,
2nd Floor.

A: O.K., please wait for a second.

2. A: What's your name? Where were you born?

B: My name is _____. I was born in Canada.

A: What year were you born?

B: In 1987, it's the 76th year of the Republic.

A: Which month and which day?

B: November 2.

A: Your address is?

B: Beijing West Road, Section One, Lane 20, Alley 4,
Number 5, 5th Floor.

A: All right, please wait a minute.

3. A: Your birthday is which month and which day?

B: My birthday is June 10. When is your birthday?

A: My birthday is December 25.

B: This year I'm 19. How old are you this year?

A: This year I'm 18.

4. A: What month and day is it today? What day of the week?

B: Today is ____.

A: What was the date yesterday and what day of the week was it?

B: Yesterday was ____.

A: And what's the date tomorrow, and what day of the week?

B: Tomorrow is ____.

5. A: What year is it this year?

B: This year is ____.

A: What year was it last year?

B: Last year was ____.

A: What year will it be next year?

B: Next year will be ____.

Unit 4, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Hello!

B: Hi! Are you American?

A: Yes, I'm an American.

B: Is this your first trip to China?

A: No, this is my third time. The year before last I came once, and last year I came once.

(switch to another pair of students)

B: How long are you going to stay this time?

A: About two weeks. I go back to my country on November 23.

B: What room are you staying in?

A: I'm staying in 702.

B: Oh, sorry, I have to go now. Goodbye!

A: Goodbye!

2. A: Hello! I suppose you must be Chinese?

B: Yes, I'm Chinese.

A: Welcome to America!

B: Thank you.

A: Is this your first trip to the States?

B: No, this is my fourth time. I came twice last year, once in 1989, and once in 1998.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: How long are you going to stay this time?

B: About a month and a half. I go back on February 15th.

A: What room are you staying in?

B: I'm staying in 428.

A: Nice meeting you!

B: I'm glad to have met you, too!

3. A: Have you ever taken a train before?

B: I've taken a train before. And you?

A: I've never taken a train before.

4. A: Have you ever been to Malaysia before?

B: I've been to Singapore, but I haven't been to Malaysia. How about you?

A: Singapore, Malaysia, I've been to both.

5. A: Are you returning home tomorrow?

B: Yes, I'm returning home tomorrow at noon. How about you? I suppose you're going home also?

A: I've been too busy recently, this time I'm not returning home.

Unit 4, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, what's the population of China?

B: China has about one billion 300 million people.

A: What's the population of Taiwan?

B: Taiwan has more than 20 million people.

2. A: Excuse me, what's the population of Hong Kong?

B: Hong Kong has about seven million people.

A: Well, and what's the population of Singapore?

B: Singapore's population is comparatively small. It seems it only has about 5 million people.

A: Oh, Singapore only has 5 million people?

B: That's right!

3. A: Excuse me, what's the population of America?

B: America has almost 300 million people.

A: What's the population of England?

B: England has more than 60 million people.

A: Well, and what about Canada?

B: Canada's population is comparatively small. It seems it only has 32 million people.

4. A: Excuse me, what's the population of Shanghai?

B: Shanghai's people are very many. Shanghai has about 17 million people!

A: What's the population of Guangzhou?

B: Guangzhou's population is comparatively smaller. It seems it has more than 9 million people.

5. A: Excuse me, what's the population of Xi'an?

B: Xi'an has about 8 million people.

A: Well, and what about Taipei?

B: The population of Taipei is comparatively small. It seems it only has about 3 million people.

6. A: What days of the week do you have Chinese class?

B: We have Chinese class every day.

A: Do you often skip class?

B: I don't skip class.

A: Have you ever been late for class?

B: I've been late for class two or three times.

Unit 5, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, I'd like to find Mrs. Li. Is she here?

B: Which Mrs. Li?

A: I'm really sorry, I don't know her Chinese name. However, her English name is Gertrude.

B: Gertrude? Oh, I know now. Her Chinese name is Lǐ Gē. But, you know, she's not here right now!

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Do you know where she is now?

B: It seems she's now in the general manager's office.

A: In that case, could I leave her a note?

B: Of course you can.

A: Thank you.

2. A: Come in!

B: Excuse me, I'd like to find Mr. Wang. Is he here?

A: Mr. Wang? Which Mr. Wang?

B: I'm really sorry, I'm American, and my Chinese is not too good. I don't know his Chinese name. But his English name is Hank.

A: Hank Wang? Oh, I know now. His Chinese name is Wáng Jiànjūn. But, you know, he's not here right now!

(switch to another pair of students)

B: Do you know where Mr. Wang is right now?

A: It seems he's now in the college president's office.

B: In that case, could I leave him a note?

A: Of course you can.

B: Thank you.

3. A: Excuse me, if Little Xie isn't there, what should I do?

B: You could leave a note for her.

4. A: The chairs are here. But where's the table?

B: The table is over there.

A: Oh, that's right. Thank you!

5. A: I'd like to buy this chair and that table.

B: You're only buying one chair?

A: Yes. How much is this chair? And how much is that table?

B: This chair costs \$200. That table costs \$500. In all that's \$700.

A: All right. Thank you. Goodbye.

Unit 5, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, is there anybody in this seat?

B: No, there isn't. Go ahead and sit down.

A: Do you often come here to eat?

B: No, I don't come often. How about you?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: I eat here often. I come almost every day.

B: Are you a student?

A: Yes. Are you a student, too?

B: No, I'm a laborer. I work at Nanjing Shoe Factory No. 13.

2. A: Anybody in this seat?

B: No. Have a seat!

A: Do you often come here to eat breakfast?

B: No, I don't come often. How about you?

A: I also don't come often. Are you a student?

B: No, I work in a trading company. How about you?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: I'm a college student in America. This year I'm studying Chinese in China.

B: Where are you studying Chinese?

A: At Peking University's Chinese Language Training Center. Gosh! It will soon be 9:00. I have to go to attend class. Bye!

B: Goodbye!

3. A: I'm a student. I study English at Taiwan University. I suppose you're a student too?

B: No, I'm not a student. I'm already over 30! I work at a company.

4. A: Excuse me, where do you usually eat?

B: I usually eat in the college dining hall. It's comparatively cheap.

5. A: Breakfast, lunch, and dinner, do you eat them all in the university dining hall?

B: Lunch and dinner I eat at the dining hall. I don't eat breakfast.

6. A: Have you ever eaten Chinese food?

B: Chinese food, I've eaten it very many times.

A: Do you like to eat Chinese food?

B: I very much like to eat Chinese food.

A: In that case, today's lunch, we'll eat Chinese food, O.K.?

B: That's too good!

Unit 5, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, where's the bathroom?

B: It's over there.

2. A: I want to find the bathroom. Excuse me, where's the bathroom?

B: It's over there—sorry, I made a mistake, it's over here.

3. A: Old Bai, sorry to have made you wait so long.

B: It's nothing, it's nothing. Old Li, long time no see! You've really gotten thinner!

A: On this trip of yours to Shanghai, where are you staying?

B: I'm staying at the Shanghai Hotel, Room 107. Do you still live where you lived before?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: No, the year before last we moved to Pǔdōng.

B: Where is Pǔdōng?

A: Pǔdōng is to the west of Shanghai. And you? Are you still living in the same place?

B: In March of this year we moved to the south of the United States.

4. A: Little Zhang, sorry to have made you wait so long.

B: Never mind. Old Chen, long time no see! You really have put on some weight!

A: You've put on some weight, too. Both of us have gotten fatter!

(switch to another pair of students)

A: On this trip of yours to Tianjin, where are you staying?

B: I'm staying at the Tianjin Hotel, Room 227. Do you still live where you lived before?

A: Correct, we still live in the same place as before. We welcome you to come!

5. A: (You) look! That child is really too fat!

B: That child is too fat? That child is mine. Your children are not thin either!

6. A: Where is my cup? I have to find my cup!

B: O.K. We'll first look over here, and then we'll go there and look.

7. A: In which part of China is Chéngdū?

B: Chéngdū is in the west of China.

8. A: Excuse me, in which part of China is Guǎngxī?

B: Guǎngxī is in the south of China. Guǎngxī is to the west of Guǎngdōng, which is to say that Guǎngdōng is to the east of Guǎngxī.

Unit 5, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Yesterday I bought a new computer. It's in my study. Do you want to see it?

B: All right! It's a Pentium, right? Inside it, how much RAM is there?

A: Of course it's a Pentium. Inside it, there are 64 megabytes.

B: I suppose the switch ought to be in front?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: No, the switch is in the back.

B: Could I see the operating manual?

A: Of course you can. However, there is only a Chinese one, there is no English one.

B: Never mind. Where is the operating manual?

(switch to another pair of students)

A: It's on the table to the left—no, it's on the chair to the right—I'm sorry, I made a mistake, it's on the computer?

B: O.K. Hey, what is that thing under the table?

A: Oh, it's Lassie (Láixǐ), our family's dog. Don't pay any attention to her.

B: I very much love dogs! Lassie, come!

2. A: The day before yesterday I bought a new computer. It's in my room. You want to see it?

B: Of course I want to see it! It's a Pentium, right? Inside it, how much RAM is there?

A: Of course it's a Pentium. Inside it, there are 128 megabytes.

B: Where is the switch? I suppose the switch ought to be in back?

A: No, this is a new computer. The switch is on top.

(switch to another pair of students)

B: On top? That's interesting! Could I see the operating manual?

A: Of course you can. It's on the bookcase to the right—no, it's on the table to the left—I'm sorry, I don't know where it is.

B: In that case, I will go look for it. Oh, who is that little kid?

A: That's my two-year old little brother. Just ignore him.

B: He's really cute!

3. A: How much does this computer cost?

B: This computer costs \$1,000.

A: And how much does that computer cost?

B: That computer costs \$1,500.

A: Both are new computers, right?

B: They're not new ones, but they're very good. Do you want to take a look?

A: They're not new ones? If I buy computers, of course I buy new ones! I'm leaving?

B: Don't leave! Do you want to see our new computers? Don't leave, don't leave!

4. A: Excuse me, was Old Zhao there?

B: No, Old Zhao was not there, but I left a note.

Unit 6, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Uncle, how are you?

B: How are you, little friend! What's your name? How old are you?

A: My name is Lùlu. I'm 7.

B: Lùlu, I guess you already go to elementary school?

(switch to another group of students)

A: Yes, I go to second grade.

B: This is a little present I'm giving you.

A: Thank you, uncle.

B: You're welcome.

A: Mm, it tastes really good!

2. A: Auntie, how are you?

B: How are you? What's your name?

A: My name is Xiǎo Míng.

B: How old are you, Xiǎo Míng? I suppose you already go to elementary school?

A: I'm five years old. I don't go to school yet.

B: Xiǎo Míng, this is candy I'm giving you.

A: I very much like to eat candy. Thank you, Auntie!

3. A: Do you like dogs?

B: I very much like little dogs. They're cute!

A: Do you like me?

B: I don't like you. You're not cute!

4. A: What year in college are you?

B: I'm a senior. How about you? What year in college are you?

A: I'm a junior. My younger brother is a sophomore, my younger sister is a first-year.

5. A: Let me introduce a friend to you. This is Little Ma. Little Ma, this is Little Ke.

B: Little Ke, I'm happy to meet you!

C: Little Ma, I'm also happy to meet you!

6. A: Excuse me, have you ever eaten Chinese food?

B: I've eaten Chinese food before. It's delicious. I very much like to eat Chinese food.

7. A: Does she have a boyfriend?

B: She has two boyfriends. One is good-looking, one is not too good-looking.

Unit 6, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Hi! Are you Chinese?

B: Yes, I'm Chinese.

A: What place in China?

B: I was born in Tianjin, and then I grew up in Beijing. Where are you from?

A: I'm from Canada. You look quite young. I guess you're not yet 20?

B: I'm 19. I'll be 20 next month.

2. A: How are you? Are you American?

B: No, I'm German.

A: What place in Germany?

B: I was born in Berlin (Bólin), and I grew up in Hamburg (Hànǎo). Where are you from?

A: I'm from Shanghai. You look quite young. I guess you're not yet 30?

B: I'm 24. I'll be 25 in April.

3. A: Where were you born?

B: I was born in New York and then I grew up in San Francisco.

A: Interesting! I was born in San Francisco and then I grew up in New York.

4. A: Are you married?

B: I'm already married.

A: Do you have kids?

B: We have three children, one son and two daughters. How about you? Are you married?

A: I'm a college student. I haven't yet gotten married.

5. A: What are you doing sitting there?

B: May I not sit here?

A: I didn't say you may not sit there! I asked you what you are doing sitting there.

6. A: Moving is very tiring! Have you ever moved?

B: I have moved before; I have moved twice.

7. A: What is the food in the dining hall like? Does it taste good?

B: The dining hall food, in looking at it it looks tasty, but in eating it it's not very tasty.

8. A: Excuse me, what is the meaning of shémme dìfang?

B: The meaning of shémme dìfang is nǎr. I suppose now you understand?

Unit 6, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Are you married? Do you have kids?

B: I'm married. I have two kids, a son and a daughter.

A: How old are your children? Are they already in school?

B: They're still too small. My son is five and my daughter is ten months old, so they're not in school yet.

(switch to another group of students)

A: Where do you work?

B: I serve at Northwest Airlines.

A: Oh. Does your spouse work also?

B: He/she teaches at a high school. However, because our children are still small, he/she only can work half days.

2. A: Are you married? Do you have kids?

B: I'm married. I have a daughter.

A: How old is your daughter? I suppose she is already in school?

B: Yes, she's already attending school. She's seven years old and is already in second grade in elementary school.

(switch to another group of students)

A: Where do you work?

B: I work at Southwest Airlines.

A: Oh. Does your spouse work also?

B: He/she works at a trading company. However, because our daughter is still small, he/she only can work half days.

A: This is a small present that I am giving your daughter. It's candy. There are no children that don't like to eat candy!

3. A: Excuse me, what's your name? Where do you work?

B: My name is _____. I teach at a junior high school.

A: What do you teach?

B: I teach English.

4. A: What time every morning does your mother go to work?

B: She goes to work every morning at 9:00 A.M.

A: What time every afternoon does she get off from work?

B: She gets off from work every afternoon at 5:00 P.M.

5. A: Why do many people say that Chinese is hard to learn?

B: I think it's because Chinese characters are too many. Chinese characters are also hard to write, right?

Unit 6, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Do you have any brothers or sisters?

B: I have one older brother and one younger brother. How about you?

A: I have two older sisters and one younger sister.

B: Oh, it's already 9:00! Sorry, I have something I have to do, I'll be going first now. In the future, when there's a chance, why don't we chat again!

2. A: Do you have any siblings?

B: I'm the oldest in our family. I have two younger brothers and two younger sisters. How about you? Do you have any brothers or sisters?

A: I have two older sisters and one younger sister.

B: Oh, it's already 10:00. I have to go to class. I've already been late too many times! In the future, when there's a chance, let's chat again!

3. A: How many brothers and sisters do you have?

B: I'm the second oldest in our family. I have an older sister and a younger brother.

A: Where do your sister and brother live? Do they live in America?

B: No. My older sister immigrated to England. My little brother is studying abroad in China.

4. A: How many brothers and sisters do you have?

B: I have one older brother, one younger brother, one older sister, and one younger sister.

A: Do they all live in China?

B: My parents, older brother, and younger brother live in China. My older sister immigrated to Canada; she got married to a Canadian. My younger sister is studying abroad in Japan.

5. A: Oh, sorry. I forgot to introduce myself. My name is ____.

B: My name is _____. This is my name card, please instruct me much.

A: Thank you, thank you. Sorry, I forgot to carry name cards.

B: That's O.K. Sorry, I have a little something, I have to leave first. In the future when there's a chance, let's chat again.

6. A: How are you? This is my name card. My name is ____.

B: Thank you, thank you. Sorry, I forgot to introduce myself. My name is _____. I was born in Beijing and grew up in Shanghai. I also will give you a name card.

A: You were born in Beijing and grew up in Shanghai? Very interesting! I was born in Shanghai and grew up in Beijing.

B: Right, very interesting. O.K., nice to meet you. Excuse me, I have something I have to do. In the future when there's a chance, let's chat again! I much enjoy chatting with friends.

Unit 7, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Where do you live?

B: We live to the west of Beijing city.

A: Who all is there in your family?

B: Me and my spouse, in addition there are two children.

(switch to another group of students)

A: Boys or girls? How old are they?

B: A four-year-old boy and a one-year-old girl.

A: Where do you work?

B: I work at a kindergarten.

A: And your spouse?

B: He/she formerly worked in a factory. Because her/his health was not too good, he/she now has changed her/ his line of work. He/she does a little small-scale business.

2. A: Where do you live?

B: We live to the south of Shanghai city.

A: Who all is there in your family?

B: Me and my spouse, in addition there is one child.

(switch to another group of students)

A: Boy or girl? How old?

B: A son. He's eleven years old.

A: Could I ask where you work?

B: I work at a factory.

A: And your spouse?

B: He/she formerly taught English in a high school. Because the money was too little, he/she changed jobs. Now he/she works at a computer company.

3. A: Where do you live?

B: We live in Taipei County, to the east of Taipei city.

A: Who all is there in your family?

B: There are three in our family: me, my spouse, and in addition there is one child.

(switch to another group of students)

A: Boy or girl? How old?

B: A daughter. She's sixteen years old.

A: Where do you and your spouse work?

B: I serve at the Foreign Ministry. My spouse formerly also worked at the Foreign Ministry. Because the work was too intense, therefore he/she changed jobs. Now he/she teaches English at home. He/she has about twenty students.

4. A: How many people are there in your family?

B: There are three in our family.

Unit 7, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Hello! You can speak Chinese!

B: I don't speak it very well, but I can speak a little.

A: Oh, you speak pretty well! Where did you learn?

B: At first I studied some in England. Now I'm continuing to study it at Peking University.

A: Can you also read ("recognize") Chinese characters?

B: I recognize a couple hundred but I can write only about 100.

A: I forgot to introduce myself. My name is _____. What's your name?

B: My name is _____. I'm sorry, I have something I have to do now. In the future if there's a chance let's chat again!

2. A: I know you can speak Chinese; you speak it very well. Excuse me, can you write it, too?

B: I don't write it very well, but I can write a little.

A: Where did you learn your Chinese characters?

B: I learned some in high school. Now I'm continuing my studies of them here.

A: You know Chinese and English. Do you know any other languages?

B: I studied French in elementary school and studied German in junior high school. Before I used to be able to speak a little Japanese, but now I've completely forgotten.

3. A: There are people who say Japanese is hard to learn. Do you speak Japanese?

B: I don't know Japanese, but I can speak German.

A: Oh, you can speak German. Do you speak it very well?

B: Pretty well.

A: Where did you learn German?

B: My mom and dad speak it at home.

A: Can you write German, too?

B: Before I couldn't, but now I'm studying German in college.

4. A: Can you write Chinese?

B: Yes, I can.

A: About how many characters have you learned?

B: I've learned a few hundred characters. About 250 characters, I suppose.

A: Nice chatting with you. I have to go to class now. Bye!

5. A: Your Mandarin, you really speak it very well!

B: Not at all, not at all.

A: How many Chinese characters can you write?

B: I used to recognize several thousand, now I only recognize a couple hundred. Some I can write, some I can't write. Do you know English?

A: My English, I forgot it completely! English is very hard to learn, very easy to forget!

Unit 7, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: When did you arrive in China?

B: I arrived in the month of March this year.

A: Did you come alone?

B: No, I came together with my older brother.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Where did you learn Chinese? Did you learn it previously in America?

B: Yes. In the beginning I studied it in America. Later I studied for a while in Singapore.

A: No wonder you speak Chinese so well!

B: Not at all. It still has a long ways to go!

2. A: When did you arrive in Taiwan?

B: I arrived in October of this year.

A: Did you come alone?

B: No, I came together with two friends.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Where did you learn Chinese? Did you learn it previously in China?

B: No. In the beginning I studied it in America. Later I studied for a while in Hong Kong.

A: No wonder you speak Chinese so well!

B: Not at all. My Chinese is not very good. It still has a long ways to go!

3. A: When did she arrive in America?

B: She arrived in the month of August this year.

A: With whom did she come together? Did she come together with her husband?

B: She hasn't married yet; she doesn't have a husband! She came alone.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Where did she learn English? Did she learn it previously in America?

B: In the beginning she studied it in China. Later she studied for a while in England.

A: No wonder she speaks English so well!

B: Sometimes she speaks so-so, sometimes she speaks not very well.

4. A: When did you arrive in Hong Kong?

B: I arrived in February of this year.

A: I suppose you didn't come alone?

B: No, I came together with my older sister.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Where did you learn Chinese? Did you learn it previously in Canada?

B: Yes. In the beginning I studied it in Canada. Later I studied for a while in Beijing.

A: No wonder you speak Chinese so well!

B: Not at all. It still has a long ways to go! I don't speak Chinese very well, Chinese characters I also don't very much know how to write.

Unit 7, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, did you come from Taiwan?

B: Yes. Have you ever been to Taiwan? You speak Chinese very well!

A: Not at all. Where in Taiwan is your home?

B: Tainan (Táinán). It's an ancient city. Have you ever heard of it?

A: I have heard of it.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Before you came to America, where did you work?

B: After I graduated from high school, I worked in a factory for several years (A: Oh.), then I applied to come to America to attend college.

A: Oh, it was like this. So, what do you plan to do after you graduate from college?

B: After I graduate from college, I plan to go back to Taiwan and look for a good job.

A: Of course!

2. A: Excuse me, are you from China?

B: Yes. Have you ever been to China? You speak Chinese very well!

A: Not at all. Where in China is your home?

B: Luòyáng. It's an ancient city. Have you ever heard of it?

A: Luòyáng, is it? Sorry, it seems I haven't heard of it.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: So, before you came to America, where did you work?

B: After I graduated from college, I taught for several years at an elementary school (A: Oh.), then I applied to come to America to study at graduate school.

A: Oh, it was like this. So, how do you feel America is like?

B: America is not bad. America is very wealthy, most people work very hard. It's just that there's quite a bit of crime.

A: Oh.

3. A: Excuse me, are you from America?

B: Yes. Have you ever been to America? You speak English very well!

A: Not at all. Where in America is your home?

B: New York City. One month ago I was still there. New York is a big city. I suppose you have heard of it before?

A: Of course I have heard of it!

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Before you came to China, what did you do in America?

B: After I graduated from high school, I worked at a company for several years, but the work wasn't very interesting. (A: Oh.). Then I applied to come to the Chinese Language Training Center at Peking University to study Chinese. I also teach a little English.

A: Oh, it's like this. So, what do you think of China?

B: I feel China is very interesting. I very much like it. Chinese food is also very delicious. It's just that sometimes the toilets here...

A: Oh... You speak correctly.

Unit 8, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, how do you get to the Shanghai Hotel?

B: The Shanghai Hotel, is it? Keep going straight, after you pass the library you will have arrived.

A: Is it very far from here?

B: It's not far from here.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Probably how long does it take?

B: If you walk, it probably takes half an hour more or less. Or you take a taxi and it will be even faster; in ten minutes then you will have arrived.

A: All right, thank you!

B: You're welcome.

2. A: Excuse me, how do you get to Sino-American Trade Company?

B: Sino-American Trade Company, is it? Keep walking toward the north for about ten minutes. After you pass the U.S. Embassy, walk toward the south for about five minutes and then you will have arrived.

A: Is it far from here?

B: It's not far from here. It's close to here.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Probably how long does it take?

B: I already said! If you walk, it probably takes fifteen minutes more or less. Or you take a taxi and it will be even faster, in five minutes then you will have arrived.

A: All right, thank you!

B: It's nothing.

3. A: How does one get to your home?

B: First drive east, and then after you pass the Great Wall Hotel, drive west.

A: Is your home far from the Great Wall Hotel?

B: My home is very close to the Great Wall Hotel. In a few minutes you'll be there.

4. A: Excuse me, are you from America?

B: Yes, I'm American, a Southerner. My home is in the state of Alabama (Ālābāmǎ zhōu).

A: I'm also a Southerner, a Chinese Southerner. My home is in Guangdong province (Guǎngdōng shěng)?

B: At home we speak Southern speech. Don't know if you understand it or not?

5. A: Where is their Japanese teacher from? Is she American?

B: I know she's not a Westerner, she's Asian. However, she's not Japanese; it seems she's Chinese.

Unit 8, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Hello? Peace Hotel Taxi Company.

B: Hello? How are you? I want a car to the Peace Hotel.

A: Where are you now?

B: I'm at Capital Airport.

A: How many people?

B: Three.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: When do you want the car?

B: Right now.

A: All right. What's your name?

B: I'm a student who has come from America. My Chinese name is ____.

A: O.K. The car will be there in five minutes. Please wait at the entrance to the airport.

B: All right, thanks!

2. A: Hello? Is this the Friendship Hotel taxi company?

B: Yes. Do you want a car?

A: I want two taxis to the U.S. Embassy.

B: You want two taxis?

A: Yes, there are seven people in all.

B: Seven people? All right. Where are you now?

A: We're at Peking University.

(switch to another pair of students)

B: When do you want the cars?

A: In fifteen minutes.

B: What's your name?

A: My name is ____.

B: Are you a foreigner? You speak Chinese very well!

A: Not at all. I'm a professor from America.

B: O.K., two taxis will be there at 2:30. Please wait at the entrance to Peking University.

A: Good, thanks!

3. A: Hello? I want a car to the Foreign Ministry. I'm now at the Great Wall Hotel.

B: How many people?

A: Just me alone.

B: The car will be there in half an hour. Please wait at the entrance to the Great Wall Hotel.

4. A: Why in Beijing are there so many foreigners?

B: Do you feel that foreigners are many?

A: Yes. I want to speak the Chinese language with Chinese people! I don't want to speak foreign languages with foreigners!

B: Your liking to speak Chinese is very good, but don't forget, you're a foreigner, too!

Unit 8, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Hello? How are you? New Asia Taxi Company.

B: Hello, 20 minutes ago I called and requested a cab. You said it would arrive in 15 minutes. How come up until now it still hasn't come?

A: I'm sorry. We've already dispatched the cab. But it's rush hour now, traffic is very congested. Please be patient and wait a bit longer.

(switch to another pair of students)

B: How much longer do I have to wait?

A: Please don't get excited. I think it's likely to arrive in about 5 minutes.

B: Please do try to hurry, O.K.? I have to go to the airport to take a plane. Soon I'll be late.

A: O.K. I'll immediately notify the driver to rush there as fast as he can.

2. A: Hello? How are you? Friendship Hotel Taxi Company.

B: Hello, one hour ago I called and requested a cab. You said it would arrive in half an hour. How come up until now it still hasn't come?

A: I'm sorry. We've already dispatched the cab. But it's rush hour now, traffic is very congested. Please be patient and wait a bit longer.

(switch to another pair of students)

B: How much longer do I have to wait?

A: Please don't get excited. I think it's likely to arrive in a little while.

B: Please try to hurry, O.K.? I have to take a 12:30 train. Soon I'll be late.

A: O.K. I'll immediately notify the driver to rush there as fast as he can.

3. A: Hello? How are you! Beijing Number One Taxi Company.

B: Hello? Three hours ago I called and requested a cab. You said it would arrive immediately. How come up until now it still hasn't come?

A: I'm sorry, it seems we forgot. What's your name? How many people? Where are you now? What time do you want the car? Hello? Hello? Hello?

4. A: I heard yesterday Little Lin waited for a taxi for an hour, but it still didn't come! She was very excited?

B: When the taxi still hadn't come, what did she decide to do?

A: She decided to walk.

5. A: Old Zhang, I'm waiting for a taxi, but it hasn't come yet. What should I do?

B: I know, it's rush hour now, traffic is very congested. Why don't you call the taxi company again?

A: I've already called on the phone three times! Do you have a way to make them come here?

B: I don't have a way either.

Unit 8, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Is it you who wants a taxi to Capital Airport?

B: Yes, it's us.

A: Are you American? You're very tall! How tall are you? How much do you weigh?

B: Yes, I'm American. I'm one meter eighty-five. I weigh ninety-two kilograms.

A: Only these three pieces of luggage?

B: Yes, these three pieces of luggage. How long does it take from here to Capital Airport?

A: Normally half an hour, but now it's rush hour, so probably it will take one hour give or take.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Darn! There's a traffic jam here again. We've no choice but to change to a different road.

B: Is the airport still far from here?

A: It's not far, it's close to here. We'll probably arrive in about 10 minutes.

B: I'll give you two hundred dollars. Give me fifty dollars in change and that'll be fine.

2. A: Is it you who wants a taxi to the Friendship Hotel?

B: No, we want a taxi to Capital Airport!

A: Oh, sorry, I got it wrong. Right, right, right, to Capital Airport. How come I forgot? Uh, how many pieces of luggage do you have? Only this one piece?

B: No, we have five pieces.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Two people, five pieces of luggage? Never mind, my car is big.

B: These four pieces are all light, but that piece is too heavy. Let's the two of us move it together!

A: O.K, we'll move it together. It's really heavy!

B: From here to Capital Airport takes how much time?

A: Probably an hour and a half, approximately.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Darn! There's a traffic jam here again. We've no choice but to change to a different road.

B: We probably shouldn't have gone on this road. What are we going to do? Is the airport still far from here? Soon I'll be too late...

A: The airport is very close to here. In a few minutes we'll arrive.

B: Cabbie, how much is it?

A: 95 dollars.

B: I'll give you a hundred dollars. You don't need to give me any change.

3. A: You said you can teach me how to drive. How come you didn't come yesterday evening?

B: I did go! I waited for you for a long time, but you didn't come! In the end, I had no choice but to leave.

A: Wasn't it in the evening at 7:00?

B: No, it was at 5:00 in the afternoon!

Unit 9, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, how do you get to the Beijing Hotel?

B: Sorry, I'm not local, I'm not sure myself. There are two traffic cops over there, why don't you go ask them?

A: O.K., thanks!

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Pardon me, how do you get to the Beijing Hotel?

C: It's close to here. From here go straight. When you pass the third traffic light, turn right. Keep going about another ten minutes and you'll be there.

A: Thanks.

C: You don't need to thank me.

2. A: Pardon me, how do you get to the Peace Hotel?

B: The Peace Hotel? I come from Shanghai, I'm not local, I don't know either. Why don't you go ask a local person?

A: O.K., thank you.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Excuse me, are you from here?

C: Yes, I'm from here. What are you looking for?

A: How do you get to the Peace Hotel?

C: It's not too far from here. Go straight from here. At the next intersection, turn left. Keep going about another three minutes and you'll be there.

A: Thanks!

C: Don't mention it.

3. A: Excuse me, how do you get to Tiananmen?

B: Sorry, I'm an overseas Chinese from America, I'm not from here. There's a traffic policeman over there. Why don't you go ask her?

A: Excuse me, how do you get to Tiananmen?

C: It's relatively far from here. Go straight from here. After the first traffic light, turn to the south. Keep going another half an hour and you'll be there. It's on your right.

A: Thanks.

C: You're welcome.

4. A: What colors do you like?

B: I like the color red and the color blue. How about you? What colors do you like?

A: I like the color black and the color white.

B: Do you feel yellow-colored backpacks look nice?

A: No, but I very much like green-colored shoes. At home I have many green-colored shoes. Do you want to come to my home to look at my green-colored shoes?

B: Sorry, in our Chinese class we're having a test tomorrow, I have to study...

Unit 9, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Excuse me, what number bus do you take to get to Tiananmen?

B: Tiananmen? I have to think... First take streetcar number 478, then transfer to bus number 35, which you take to the last stop, which is Tiananmen.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: And where is the streetcar station?

B: Turn to the east at the intersection in front and there it is.

A: Thanks very much.

B: Don't mention it.

2. A: Where's the bus station?

B: You first go straight, and then when you arrive at the next intersection, turn right.

A: Thanks.

B: You're welcome.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: Excuse me, does this bus go to the airport?

C: No, but you can first take it and then change to streetcar number 113.

A: To where do I take it and change to the streetcar?

C: Let me think... You change at Zoo.

A: Oh, it seems the bus has arrived.

C: Yes, the bus has come. Get on the bus quick!

3. A: Excuse me, how do you get to the Great Wall Hotel? Do you know?

B: I haven't been there in a long time. Let me think... First go straight. When you get to the 3rd traffic light, turn left. Walk for about 10 minutes and you'll be there. It's on your right.

A: It seems very far. Can one take the bus?

B: No, but you can take a streetcar.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: To where do you take the streetcar?

B: Take it to the Měishùguǎn Station and get off.

A: Oh, the streetcar has arrived.

B: Yes, get on quick!

A: Thanks.

B: Your welcome.

4. A: I very much like animals. Do you keep small animals at home?

B: Yes, at our home we keep a dog and two cats. What about you? Do you also keep small animals at home?

A: Yes, we keep three birds and several fish. The birds can talk! They often say Nǐ hǎo! Nǐ hǎo! and Zāogāo, zāogāo!

B: So, what about the fish? What do they say?

Unit 9, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Is anyone buying a ticket? Those who don't have a ticket, buy one?

B: Two tickets to Tiananmen.

A: Where did you get on?

B: We just got on.

A: Two dollars.

B: Here's the money. When we get to Tiananmen, could you call me?

A: All right.

2. A: Anybody buying a ticket? Those who don't have one, buy one!

B: Three tickets to Beijing Hotel.

A: Where did you get on?

B: We got on at Zoo.

A: Six dollars.

B: Here's the money. When we get to Beijing Hotel, could you call me?

A: All right.

3. A: Anybody buying a ticket? Those who don't have one, buy one!

B: One ticket to Capital Airport.

A: Where did you get on?

B: We just got on.

A: \$1.50.

B: Here's the money. When we get to Capital Airport, could you call me?

A: All right.

4. A: My roommate is not very smart. What's your roommate like?

B: My roommate is not stupid, but s/he's very lazy. S/he doesn't work very hard.

5. A: My room is not only dirty, it's also a mess. What's your room like?

B: My room is not only clean, it's also neat. Welcome! Please come in! Please sit down!

6. A: Why are you so angry? All of us hope you will be happy. Don't be angry, all right?

B: I am happy. I didn't get angry. I'm joking with you!

7. A: You really are too lazy; in the future, you'll have to study harder!

B: O.K., in the future I'll study harder.

A: And your room is too disorderly. Why is it that only your room is so dirty?

B: I'm sorry, in the future my room will not only be in good order but also clean!

Unit 9, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Soon we'll arrive, I suppose?

B: It's still early, there are still two stations. When the time comes I'll call you all... Hey, the next station is Tiananmen, you all should prepare to get off the bus.

A: O.K., thanks!

(switch to another pair of students)

B: Comrades getting off the bus should show their tickets!

A: Oh, sorry, my ticket, I can't find it!

B: If you can't find your ticket, you must buy a new one.

A: But my money, I can't find it either!

B: O.K., O.K. Never mind. But in the future, you really should be more careful!

2. A: Soon we'll arrive, I suppose?

B: It's still early, there are still eight stations. When the time comes I'll call you... Hey, the next station is Summer Palace, you should prepare to get off the bus.

A: O.K., thanks!

(switch to another pair of students)

B: Comrades getting off the bus should show their tickets!

A: Oh, sorry, my ticket, I can't find it! I bought one, but now I can't find it?

B: You'll have to buy one again. Two dollars and fifty cents.

A: Today taking the bus really was too expensive!

3. A: Comrades getting off the bus should show their tickets!

B: Excuse me, I can't find my ticket, what should I do?

A: Because you're a foreigner, this time it doesn't matter; I remember that you bought a ticket. In the future, you really must be more careful!

4. A: Those several Chinese characters, can you read them or can you not read them?

B: Those several characters, is it? I can't read them.

A: And how about these three characters? Can you read them?

B: These three characters I can read. It's yī, èr, sān!

5. A: Little Li, can you fall asleep?

B: Because I'm very tired, I think I can probably fall asleep.

A: I'm also very tired, but I don't why, I can't fall asleep.

6. A: The Chinese that she speaks, can you understand it or not?

B: She's a Southerner, but I can understand it. You can't understand it?

A: Sometimes I can understand it, but sometimes I can't understand it!

Unit 10, Part 1: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Good morning! What does the weather forecast today say?

B: Let me see... This morning is cloudy, in the afternoon it's possible it might change to clear weather.

A: Right. Now in the sky there are lots of clouds...

B: Starting from the day after tomorrow, it will get hotter and hotter.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: What will be the highest temperature today?

B: Let me see... Today the highest temperature is 72 degrees.

A: Huh? It seems that lightning struck! And thunder has struck, too! Is it going to rain?

B: Man! It's already raining, and it's raining pretty hard, too.

A: So, weather forecasts are only forecasts and are not necessarily accurate.

B: That's right!

2. A: Hi! What does today's weather forecast say?

B: Let me see... This morning is clear, in the afternoon it's possible it might change to cloudy weather. In the evening it's possible it might rain.

A: Oh. In that case, it wouldn't be very good. In the evening I originally wanted to go see a friend.

B: However, starting from tomorrow, the weather will get better and better.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: What will be the low temperature this evening?

B: Let me see... This evening the low temperature will be 55 degrees.

A: Huh? It seems that there is thunder! Is it going to rain now?

B: Shoot! It's already raining, and it's raining pretty hard.

A: And that's why weather forecasts are only forecasts and are not necessarily accurate.

B: That's right!

3. A: Good morning, how are you? What does tomorrow's weather forecast say?

B: Let me see... Tomorrow morning is cloudy, in the afternoon it's possible it might change to clear weather.

A: In that case, the weather next week should also be quite good, I suppose?

B: No! Starting from next week, the weather will get worse and worse.

(switch to another pair of students)

A: What will be the high and low temperatures today?

B: Let me see... Today the high temperature is 83 degrees and the low temperature is 46 degrees.

A: That's impossible! Huh? It seems that lightning struck! The little cat we keep in our family is afraid of lightning. And there's also thunder. Is it going to rain?

B: Gosh! It's already raining, and it's raining very hard.

A: Therefore weather forecasts are only forecasts and are not necessarily accurate.

B: That's right! Recently weather forecasts have been getting more and more inaccurate!

Unit 10, Part 2: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Hey, the weather here is not bad! It's neither cold nor hot, quite comfortable.

B: Summers are O.K. Winters are incredibly cold, both dry and cold, and it often snows.

A: Well, what about spring and fall?

B: In the spring it often rains. The fall is very nice. If you want to come here to have a good time, the fall is the most appropriate.

A: Saying it like that, I've come at just the right time!

2. A: Hey, the weather here is not bad! It's neither dry nor cold, quite comfortable.

B: Winters are O.K. Summers are incredibly hot, both dry and hot, and the wind is strong.

A: Well, what about the spring?

B: If it weren't that the blowing sand is too strong, it would be O.K. In the spring it often rains. The fall is relatively good. If you want to come here to have fun, the fall and winter are the most appropriate.

A: Saying it like that, I've come at just the right time!

3. A: The weather there is pretty good, you know! Neither cold nor hot, very comfortable!

B: The spring is O.K., but the winters are incredibly cold, both dry and cold, and the wind is very strong.

A: In winter, does it often snow?

B: No, it seldom snows. However, it is often overcast.

4. A: What are the summers here like?

B: If it didn't often rain, then it would be all right. If you want to come here to have a good time, then fall is the most appropriate.

A: If you say it that way, I've come at just the right time!

B: Yes. Look, the sun just came out!

5. A: The season you like most is which season?

B: The season I like most is winter. And you? Which season do you like best?

A: The season I like most is fall.

6. A: The season you like most is which season?

B: The season I like most is spring. And you? Which season do you like best?

A: The season I like most is summer. Look, the sun just came out!

7. A: The season you like most is which season?

B: I don't have any season that I like best. I like every season!

Unit 10, Part 3: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: How come there's fog again this afternoon? It seems like it floated in through the window screen.

B: Yes, this place is often like this in the spring. The air is humid and it often rains. Every day is cloudy.

A: Actually, it's drizzling right now, but because of the fog, you can't tell.

B: My luck is really bad. Last time when I came here it rained every day, and I couldn't go out at all!

2. A: How come there is fog this evening? It seems it floated in from the outside.

B: This place is often like this in the winter. The air is very humid and it is often overcast.

A: And it often drizzles. Actually, it's drizzling right now, but because there is the fog, you can't see it.

B: Recently the weather has not been very good. Our luck is really bad!

3. A: The last time I came to Hong Kong I encountered a big typhoon. I hope this time there is none.

B: Actually, I heard that, after a few days, there is a typhoon that is going to come.

A: There is a typhoon that's going to come? Where is the typhoon now?

B: Now it's still very far from us here. Now it's close to Japan.

A: Dang it! When the typhoon comes, it will rain every day. The wind will also be strong. There won't be any way at all to go outside...

4. A: How come it's drizzling again this morning? There is also fog. It seems it floated in from the window screen.

B: Yes. Taiwan is often like this in the wintertime. The air is very humid, and it often rains. On the mountains sometimes it even snows!

A: Actually, it's snowing right now, but because the sun is not yet out, you can't see it.

B: We really are unlucky! The weather is so bad, there's no way at all that we can go out...

5. A: Little Lin, please go in and look for some things to eat, O.K.?

B: All right, but how do you open the door? I don't know how to open it.

A: In that case, please go in through the screen window.

B: What? You want me to go in through the screen window?!

A: Don't look at me that way! Of course I want you to go in through the screen window!

6. A: Little Li, how do you get out of this place?

B: Old Bai, how did you get in?

A: I don't remember how I got in!

B: Bye! I'm out of here. You're really unlucky!

Unit 10, Part 4: Role Play Exercises

Practice these role plays in Chinese to improve your spoken fluency.

1. A: Where in the U.S. do you live?

B: On the U.S. east coast. Newark, New Jersey. It's not far from New York.

A: That's interesting! I live on the west coast. So, what's the climate like in New Jersey?

B: Not very good. In the winter it's colder than Shanghai, and it's also drier than Shanghai. In the summer, it's even hotter than Shanghai. So the climate is not so good as Shanghai!

2. A: Where in China is your home?

B: On the Chinese east coast, Qīngdǎo.

A: I heard the scenery there is very beautiful. What's the climate there like?

B: Really you can say it's "warm in winter, cool in summer."

A: Why do you speak in that way?

B: The weather in Qīngdǎo is fantastic. In winter it's warm, drier than here, not as humid as here. But in the summer it is cool, not as hot as here.

A: In that case, let's all move to Qīngdǎo!

3. A: How long have you been in America?

B: I've been here about half a year.

A: Well, you've been in America so long, by now I suppose you've already gotten used to the culture here?

B: Yes, when I first came, I had a hard time adapting. Now I'm just about accustomed to it.

4. A: How long have you been in Macao?

B: I've been here more than two years.

A: Well, you've been in Macao so long, by now I suppose you've already gotten used to eating Chinese food?

B: Yeah, when I first came, I had a hard time adapting to it. Breakfast, lunch, and dinner—I had to eat Chinese food for them all. But now, I'm just about accustomed to it. Now I like eating Chinese food; it's delicious. Have you eaten yet? Come, let's go eat together!

5. A: I most dislike people who arrive late.

B: Today I arrived 10 minutes earlier than you!

A: Correct, but yesterday you arrived 20 minutes later than I did?

B: Really? How come I don't remember?

6. A: My dog died yesterday.

B: How old was it?

A: Fourteen. I'm very sad.

B: Don't be sad, there's nothing that can be done about this.

5. Listening Comprehension Exercises

Unit 1, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where is the female speaker going?

- (A) To the dorm
- (B) To the dining hall
- (C) To do something

2. Where is the male speaker going?

- (A) To the dorm
- (B) To the dining hall
- (C) To do something

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where is the male speaker going?

(A) To the dorm

(B) To the library

(C) To the dining hall

2. Where is the female speaker going?

(A) To the dorm

(B) To the library

(C) To the dining hall

3. What is the name of the female speaker?

(A) Wang Jingsheng

(B) Zhang Taisheng

(C) Jia Aihua

Unit 1, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. How has the female speaker been?

(A) She is fine.

(B) She is busy.

(C) She is tired.

2. Where is the male speaker going?

(A) He is going to the library.

(B) He is going to the dining hall.

(C) He is going to the dorm.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How are the female speaker's spouse and child?

(A) They are fine.

(B) They are busy.

(C) They are tired.

2. How are the male speaker's parents?

(A) They are fine.

(B) They are busy.

(C) They are tired.

3. Where is the male speaker going?

(A) To the dining hall

(B) To the library

(C) To do something

Unit 1, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. How has Old Gao been recently?

(A) Very tired

(B) Very nervous

(C) The same as before

2. How are his children doing?

(A) They are fine.

(B) They are tired.

(C) They are busy with their studies.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What is the relationship between the two speakers?

(A) Husband and wife

(B) Teacher and student

(C) Colleagues

2. What does the female speaker think about the Chinese language?

(A) It's easy to learn.

(B) It's difficult to learn.

(C) It's neither easy nor difficult to learn.

3. Where is the female speaker going?

(A) Dorm

(B) Library

(C) Cafeteria

Unit 1, Part 4: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. How are the female speaker's husband and children?

(A) They are fine.

(B) They are busy.

(C) They are tired.

2. How are the male speaker's parents?

(A) They are fine.

(B) They are busy.

(C) They are the same as before.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What does the female speaker ask the male speaker to do?

(A) To come in

(B) To sit down

(C) To speak Chinese

2. How has the female speaker been?

(A) She has been fine.

(B) She has been busy.

(C) She has been tired.

3. What does the female speaker think about the Chinese language?

(A) Chinese is easy and interesting.

(B) Chinese is difficult but interesting.

(C) Chinese is difficult and not interesting.

Unit 2, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What is the nationality of the speaker's father?

(A) American

(B) Canadian

(C) Japanese

2. What is the nationality of the speaker's mother?

(A) American

(B) Canadian

(C) Japanese

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What is the name of the female speaker?

(A) Ke Jingling

(B) Ke Jinling

(C) Ke Jinlin

2. What is the nationality of the female speaker?

(A) Singaporean

(B) American

(C) Spanish

3. What is the nationality of the female speaker's spouse?

(A) Singaporean

(B) American

(C) Spanish

Unit 2, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Who is the person that the two speakers are discussing?

(A) The male speaker's new teacher

(B) The male speaker's new roommate

(C) The male speaker's old friend

2. What is the nationality of the person that the two speakers are talking about?

(A) American

(B) Spanish

(C) Canadian

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What is Zhang Tianming's nationality?

(A) Chinese

(B) American

(C) Spanish

2. Where did this conversation take place?

(A) Taipei

(B) Shanghai

(C) Beijing

3. By what name does the female speaker prefer to be called?

(A) Miss Wang

(B) Xiao Wang

(C) Lili

Unit 2, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where does the female speaker work?

(A) The Chinese embassy

(B) A company

(C) A university

2. Where does the male speaker work?

(A) The American embassy

(B) A company

(C) A university

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Who is the person being discussed?

(A) Teacher Wang's mother

(B) Teacher Wang's colleague

(C) Teacher Wang's wife

2. What is this person's surname?

(A) Wang

(B) Li

(C) Zhang

3. What does this person teach?

(A) Chinese

(B) English

(C) Japanese

Unit 2, Part 4: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where does the female speaker work?

- (A) Embassy
- (B) University
- (C) Trading company

2. Where does the male speaker work?

- (A) Embassy
- (B) University
- (C) Trading company

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What does the speaker's husband do?

- (A) He is a college student.
- (B) He is the general manager of a company.
- (C) He is a university professor.

2. What is the speaker's nationality?

- (A) British

(B) Malaysian

(C) Japanese

3. What is the nationality of the speaker's husband?

(A) American

(B) Chinese

(C) British

Unit 3, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. How many Chinese teachers does the female speaker have?

(A) Three

(B) Four

(C) Five

2. How many of her teachers are American?

- (A) One
- (B) Two
- (C) Three

3. How many of her teachers are male?

- (A) Two
- (B) Three
- (C) Four

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How many Japanese students are there in the male speaker's class?

- (A) One
- (B) Two
- (C) Five

2. How many female students are there in his class?

- (A) Three
- (B) Six
- (C) Nine

Unit 3, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Who is the person being talked about?

- (A) The female speaker's brother
- (B) The female speaker's older sister
- (C) The female speaker's younger sister

2. How old is this person now?

- (A) 5
- (B) 6
- (C) 7

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How old is the male speaker's father?

(A) 63

(B) 54

(C) 47

2. Where does the male speaker's father work?

(A) A company

(B) A university

(C) An embassy

3. How old is the male speaker's youngest brother?

(A) 8

(B) 9

(C) 10

Unit 3, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What does the female speaker want to buy?

(A) A cup

(B) A bag

(C) A briefcase

2. How much does it cost?

(A) 500 RMB

(B) 520 RMB

(C) 1000 RMB

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What does the male speaker want to buy?

(A) A cup

(B) A backpack

(C) A briefcase

2. How many does he want to buy?

(A) One

(B) Three

(C) Five

3. How much is he going to pay?

(A) 15 RMB

(B) 40 RMB

(C) 45 RMB

Unit 3, Part 4: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. How has the male speaker been?

(A) He has been busy.

(B) He has been tired.

(C) He has been sleepy.

2. What time does the conversation take place?

(A) About 5:15

(B) About 6:30

(C) About 6:45

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. When is the male speaker going to take the train to Taipei?

(A) 3:10

(B) 3:15

(C) 5:30

2. How long does it take to get to Taipei by train?

(A) About three hours

(B) About four hours

(C) About ten hours

3. How much does the train ticket cost?

(A) 285 NT

(B) 665 NT

(C) 685 NT

Unit 4, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What time does the language lab open on Saturday?

(A) 8:30 A.M.

(B) 9:30 A.M.

(C) 10:30 A.M.

2. What time does the language lab close on Wednesday?

(A) 8:30 P.M.

(B) 9:30 P.M.

(C) 10:30 P.M.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What year in college is the speaker?

(A) Freshman

(B) Sophomore

(C) Junior

2. When does the speaker usually get up every day?

(A) 6:30 A.M.

(B) 7:30 A.M.

(C) 8:30 A.M.

3. How many hours of sleep does the speaker usually get every day?

(A) Six hours

(B) Seven hours

(C) Eight hours

4. When does the speaker go to study at the library?

(A) Monday to Friday

(B) Monday to Thursday

(C) Almost every day

Unit 4, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. When is the male speaker's birthday?

(A) August 31, 1986

(B) July 17, 1987

(C) August 31, 1987

2. What does the male speaker do in Beijing?

(A) Working

(B) Teaching

(C) Studying

3. What is the male speaker's address?

(A) 213, Building 14, Beijing University

(B) 321, Building 15, Beijing University

(C) 213, Building 15, Beijing University

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. When did this conversation take place?

(A) March 13

(B) March 14

(C) March 15

2. How old is the female speaker now?

(A) 20 years old

(B) 21 years old

(C) 22 years old

Unit 4, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. When did the female speaker first come to China?

(A) This year

(B) Last year

(C) The year before last

2. When does the female speaker plan to return to her country?

(A) April

(B) August

(C) December

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What is Li Weijian's nationality?

(A) Chinese

(B) American

(C) Japanese

2. How many times has Li Weijian been to China?

(A) One time

(B) Two times

(C) Three times

3. When does Li Weijian plan to return to his country?

(A) October

(B) November

(C) December

Unit 4, Part 4: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What is the approximate population of England?

(A) 30,000,000

(B) 60,000,000

(C) 80,000,000

2. What is the population of Shanghai?

(A) More than 13,000,000

(B) More than 15,000,000

(C) More than 18,000,000

3. About how many more people does Shanghai have than Beijing?

(A) 3,000,000

(B) 4,000,000

(C) 5,000,000

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What is the approximate population of Hong Kong?

(A) 5,600,000

(B) 6,500,000

(C) 6,800,000

2. What is the approximate population of Taipei?

(A) 3,000,000

(B) 4,000,000

(C) 5,000,000

3. How many times has the male speaker been to Taipei?

(A) About 10 times

(B) About 20 times

(C) About 30 times

Unit 5, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What is the last name of the person the male speaker is looking for?

(A) Wàn

(B) Wáng

(C) Wāng

2. Where is the person that the male speaker is looking for?

(A) At the person's own office

(B) At Teacher Zhang's office

(C) At the female speaker's office

3. Where is the male speaker from?

(A) Taiwan

(B) Mainland China

(C) U.S.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where is Li Derong?

(A) At home

(B) At his office

(C) At the manager's office

2. Why did the male speaker call?

(A) Because he wants to buy 150 tables and 250 chairs.

(B) Because he wants to buy 250 tables and 150 chairs.

(C) Because he wants to buy 250 tables and 50 chairs.

Unit 5, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where is the speaker studying this year?

(A) Chinese high school

(B) Beijing University

(C) Language center

2. Where will the speaker go next year?

(A) Hong Kong

(B) Beijing

(C) The United States

3. Which meals did the speaker eat in the dining hall last year?

(A) Breakfast

(B) Lunch

(C) Breakfast, lunch, and dinner

4. Which meals does the speaker eat in the dining hall now?

(A) Breakfast

(B) Lunch

(C) Breakfast, lunch, and dinner

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What are the two speakers doing?

(A) Having breakfast

(B) Having lunch

(C) Having dinner

2. Does the male speaker come to the restaurant often?

(A) Yes, often

(B) No, not often

(C) He has only been once

3. How many times has the female speaker been to the restaurant?

(A) One time

(B) Two times

(C) Three times

4. Where does the male speaker work?

(A) At a university

(B) At a factory

(C) At a company

Unit 5, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What is the female speaker's hotel room number?

(A) 58

(B) 158

(C) 258

2. How long does the female speaker plan to stay?

(A) Half a month

(B) One month

(C) A month and a half

3. What does the female speaker do when the male speaker says she has lost weight?

- (A) She ignores him.
- (B) She disagrees with him.
- (C) She explains why.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How many times has the female speaker been to China?

- (A) One time
- (B) Two times
- (C) She has never been.

2. How many times has the male speaker been to China?

- (A) One time
- (B) Two times
- (C) He has never been.

3. Where is Suzhou?

- (A) To the north of Shanghai
- (B) To the east of Shanghai

(C) To the west of Shanghai

Unit 5, Part 4: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. When did the male speaker buy the iPhone?

(A) The day before yesterday

(B) Yesterday

(C) Today

2. Where is the iPhone now?

(A) On the bookshelf behind the female speaker

(B) On the table to the right of the female speaker

(C) On the table to the left of the female speaker

3. Where is the instruction manual now?

(A) On the right of the iPhone

(B) On the left of the iPhone

(C) Next to the iPhone

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where is the backpack?

(A) On the bookshelf in the study

(B) On the table in the study

(C) Next to the computer

2. Where is the instruction manual?

(A) To the right of the bookshelf

(B) On the bookshelf to the right

(C) On the bookshelf to the left

3. What is the main topic of this dialog?

(A) A backpack.

(B) A computer

(C) An instruction booklet

Unit 6, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. When was the speaker born?

(A) 1993

(B) 1994

(C) 1995

2. What is the speaker's current year in school?

(A) Second year of junior high school

(B) Third year of junior high school

(C) First year of senior high school

3. What did the speaker receive for his birthday?

(A) A backpack

(B) A computer

(C) A bookshelf

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What year in college is the female speaker's child?

(A) First year

(B) Second year

(C) Third year

2. What do we know about the woman whom the female speaker would like to introduce to the male speaker?

(A) She works at a trading company.

(B) She is a colleague of the female speaker's husband.

(C) She is 26 years old.

3. Based on the dialog, which of the following statements is NOT true?

(A) The male speaker is older than the female speaker.

(B) The female speaker is married.

(C) The female speaker has lost some weight.

Unit 6, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where did the female speaker grow up?

(A) Hong Kong

(B) New York

(C) San Francisco

2. How old is the female speaker?

(A) 18

(B) 19

(C) 20

3. How many siblings does the female speaker have?

(A) 1

(B) 2

(C) 3

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where does Zhang Guoshu's ex-wife work?

(A) High school

(B) University

(C) Company

2. Where does Zhang Guoshu's current wife work?

(A) High school

(B) University

(C) Company

3. How old is Zhang Guoshu's daughter?

(A) Two

(B) Five

(C) Twelve

Unit 6, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. At the beginning of the dialog, what is the first speaker's problem?

- (A) He missed class.
- (B) He ate too much food.
- (C) He's late to an appointment.

2. What is the problem with this place?

- (A) It's hard to find.
- (B) It's too expensive.
- (C) There are too many students.

3. Why didn't Mr. Bai come?

- (A) His children are still small.
- (B) He is busy with his studies.
- (C) He has things to do at home.

4. What is one aspect of Chinese that the first speaker says is hard to learn?

- (A) Culture

(B) Grammar

(C) Computer input

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What city is the speaker's husband from?

(A) Shanghai

(B) Tianjin

(C) Pudong

2. Where is Pudong?

(A) In the northeast of Shanghai

(B) In the northwest of Shanghai

(C) In the southeast of Shanghai

3. How old is the speaker's daughter?

(A) Ten months old

(B) Five years old

(C) Eight years old

4. Where does the speaker's husband work?

(A) University

(B) Trade company

(C) Airline

Unit 6, Part 4: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. How many sisters does the male speaker have?

(A) One

(B) Two

(C) Three

2. Where did the speaker grow up?

(A) New York

(B) Los Angeles

(C) Guangzhou

3. Where do his maternal grandparents parents live?

(A) New York

(B) Los Angeles

(C) Guangzhou

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What is the age of the female speaker relative to her siblings?

(A) Eldest

(B) Second eldest

(C) Third eldest

2. Where is the female speaker's brother?

(A) China

(B) United States

(C) England

3. When did the female speaker go to the United States?

(A) Two years ago

(B) One year ago

(C) Two months ago

Unit 7, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Who are the people in the picture?

- (A) The female speaker's sister and her family
- (B) The female speaker's cousin and her family
- (C) The female speaker's aunt and her family

2. What does the woman in the picture do for a living?

- (A) Factory work
- (B) Business
- (C) Teaching

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where does the female speaker live now?

(A) To the northeast of Beijing

(B) To the northwest of Beijing

(C) To the southeast of Beijing

2. Where does the female speaker's son go to school now?

(A) Elementary school

(B) Junior high school

(C) Senior high school

3. Where does the female speaker's husband work?

(A) Kindergarten

(B) Elementary school

(C) Junior high school

Unit 7, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where is the female speaker studying now?

(A) United States

(B) Mainland China

(C) Taiwan

2. How many characters does the female speaker know?

(A) One hundred

(B) Seven hundred

(C) Several hundred

3. What other foreign language has the female speaker learned?

(A) French

(B) Japanese

(C) Spanish

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where did the female speaker learn English?

(A) Elementary school

(B) Junior high school

(C) University

2. For how long did the female speaker learn English?

(A) Half a year

(B) A year and a half

(C) Eight years

3. What does the female speaker think of English?

(A) It's easy.

(B) It's hard.

(C) It's interesting.

4. For how long did the female speaker learn Spanish?

(A) Half a year

(B) A year and a half

(C) Eight years

Unit 7, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. In which month did the male speaker arrive in Hong Kong?

(A) January

(B) February

(C) March

2. How long did the male speaker learn Chinese?

(A) Less than a year

(B) A year

(C) More than a year

3. What level is the Chinese of the male speaker's wife?

(A) Beginning

(B) Advanced

(C) She speaks no Chinese.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where is Nanjing?

(A) In the south of China

(B) In the east of China

(C) In the northwest of China

2. In what level of school is the speaker?

(A) Junior high school

(B) Senior high school

(C) University

3. With whom did the speaker come to the U.S.?

(A) Sister

(B) Brother

(C) Cousin

4. What criticism does the speaker express?

(A) Chinatown is dirty.

(B) New Yorkers talk too fast.

(C) New York is very expensive.

Unit 7, Part 4: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What did the male speaker do after graduating from college?

- (A) Teach school.
- (B) Go to graduate school.
- (C) Work at a trading company.

2. What does the female speaker want to do after graduating from college?

- (A) Teach school.
- (B) Go to graduate school.
- (C) Work at a trading company.

3. What is NOT said about the city of Harbin?

- (A) It is cold.
- (B) It is a good area.
- (C) The people there are nice.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How long did the female speaker study in Beijing?

- (A) Four months
- (B) Six months
- (C) Ten months

2. What are the male speaker's future plans?

- (A) Go to graduate school in the U.S.
- (B) Go to graduate school in China
- (C) Study in China for a couple of years

3. What is NOT said about Beijing?

- (A) The air is bad.
- (B) The traffic is congested.
- (C) There isn't much crime.

Unit 8, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where should the male speaker go in order to get to his destination?

- (A) North
- (B) South
- (C) Straight

2. How fast can he get to the destination by taxi?

- (A) About three minutes
- (B) About seven minutes
- (C) About half an hour

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where is the male speaker's teacher from?

(A) Beijing

(B) North China

(C) South China

2. Where is Harbin?

(A) In the northeast of China

(B) In the northwest of China

(C) In the southeast of China

3. How far is the male speaker's dorm from his teacher's office?

(A) Quite far

(B) One minute on foot

(C) Seven minutes on foot

Unit 8, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What is the passenger's surname?

(A) Li

(B) Wang

(C) Zhang

2. Where does the passenger wish to go?

(A) University

(B) Embassy

(C) Airport

3. What time will the taxi arrive?

(A) 5:05

(B) 5:20

(C) 5:35

4. What is the correct romanization for the university that is mentioned?

(A) Fūdàn

(B) Fùdàn

(C) Fùdān

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Where are the two speakers?

(A) Beijing

(B) Shanghai

(C) Hong Kong

2. How many people are going to take the taxi?

(A) One

(B) Two

(C) Three

3. When will the passenger(s) be leaving for the airport?

(A) 6:00

(B) 6:25

(C) 6:50

Unit 8, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. When did the male speaker call the taxi company for the first time?

(A) 15 minutes ago

(B) 30 minutes ago

(C) 60 minutes ago

2. How many more minutes does the male speaker need to wait?

(A) 5 minutes

(B) 10 minutes

(C) 15 minutes

3. About what time will the taxi arrive?

(A) 5:00 P.M.

(B) 5:20 P.M.

(C) 5:40 P.M.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How many times did the male speaker call the taxi company?

(A) Once

(B) Twice

(C) Three times

2. What time is it now?

(A) 10:30

(B) 11:30

(C) 12:30

3. How long does it take to get to the airport?

(A) 5 minutes

(B) 20 minutes

(C) 40 minutes

Unit 8, Part 4: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. How many passengers are going to the airport?

(A) One

(B) Two

(C) Three

2. How many suitcases are there?

(A) One

(B) Two

(C) Three

3. How fast can they get to the airport?

(A) 30 minutes

(B) 45 minutes

(C) One hour

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How heavy is the male speaker?

(A) 73 kilograms

(B) 86 kilograms

(C) 97 kilograms

2. How tall is the female speaker?

(A) 1.63 meters

(B) 1.79 meters

(C) 1.86 meters

3. The female speaker relates the height of Americans to what?

(A) Trees

(B) Mountains

(C) Sky

Unit 9, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. After passing the third traffic light, where should the female speaker go?

(A) Go straight

(B) Turn right

(C) Turn left

2. How far away is the library?

(A) 3 minutes on foot

(B) 15 minutes on foot

(C) 30 minutes on foot

3. What time does the library close today?

(A) 7:30 P.M.

(B) 8:30 P.M.

(C) 9:30 P.M.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Which backpack belongs to the female speaker's roommate?

(A) The black one

(B) The green one

(C) The white one

2. What colors does the male speaker like?

(A) White and red

(B) Black and white

(C) Green and red

3. Where is the female speaker from?

(A) New York

(B) San Francisco

(C) Hong Kong

Unit 9, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where is the bus stop for bus 805?
 - (A) Straight ahead
 - (B) After the intersection, turn right.
 - (C) After the intersection, turn left.

2. What bus should the female speaker take to get to the zoo?
 - (A) Take bus 805.
 - (B) Take bus 15, then switch to bus 805.
 - (C) Take bus 805, then switch to bus 15.

3. How far away is the bus stop for bus 805?
 - (A) 5 minutes
 - (B) 10 minutes
 - (C) 15 minutes

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. How far away is Peking University?

(A) 5-6 minutes on foot

(B) 5-6 minutes by bus

(C) 20 minutes on foot

2. What does the woman suggest to the man?

(A) He should walk.

(B) He should take the bus.

(C) He should take a taxi.

3. In what direction does Peking University lie?

(A) East

(B) West

(C) Straight ahead

Unit 9, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where did the male speaker get on the bus?

(A) First stop

(B) Heping Hotel

(C) Renmin University

2. How many stops are there before the last stop?

(A) Three

(B) Four

(C) Five

3. How much does the bus ticket cost?

(A) 3.5 RMB

(B) 4.0 RMB

(C) 4.5 RMB

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. Whose room are the speakers talking about?

- (A) The male speaker's room
- (B) The female speaker's room
- (C) The female speaker's classmate's room

2. What is Little Wang like?

- (A) She often studies in her room.
- (B) She is hard-working, but not very smart.
- (C) She likes to joke with people.

3. What language is Little Wang learning?

- (A) Chinese
- (B) Japanese
- (C) Spanish

Unit 9, Part 4: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What is the male speaker's problem?
 - (A) He hasn't bought a ticket.
 - (B) He can't find his ticket.
 - (C) He can't find his money.

2. At which stop is the male speaker going to get off?
 - (A) The Summer Palace
 - (B) The next stop
 - (C) The stop after the next stop

3. How much did the male speaker's ticket cost?
 - (A) 1.5 RMB
 - (B) 2.5 RMB
 - (C) 3.5 RMB

4. What was the key fact in resolving the problem?
 - (A) The male speaker found his ticket.
 - (B) The conductor lent the male speaker some money.
 - (C) The conductor remembered the male speaker.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. When did the male speaker come back to the U.S.?

(A) April 6

(B) May 20

(C) June 24

2. Where is Hangzhou?

(A) In the east of China

(B) To the northeast of Shanghai

(C) Quite far from Shanghai

3. When does the female speaker plan to go to China?

(A) October this year

(B) January next year

(C) November next year

Unit 10, Part 1: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. What will the weather be like this morning?

(A) Clear

(B) Overcast

(C) Rainy

2. What is the high temperature tomorrow?

(A) 31°

(B) 34°

(C) 35°

3. What will the weather be like tomorrow?

(A) Sunny

(B) Drizzling rain

(C) Heavy rain

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What is the weather like right now?

(A) Rainy

(B) Overcast

(C) Sunny

2. What will the weather be like tomorrow?

(A) Rainy

(B) Overcast

(C) Sunny

3. What is the high temperature tomorrow?

(A) 29°

(B) 32°

(C) 34°

Unit 10, Part 2: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. In which season did the male speaker go to Beijing?

(A) Spring

(B) Summer

(C) Winter

2. What are Harbin summers like?

(A) Hot

(B) Dry

(C) Rainy

3. What is NOT true of Harbin winters?

(A) It often snows.

(B) They start in November.

(C) January is the coldest month.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What was the weather like last week?

(A) Rainy

(B) Very hot

(C) Neither cold nor hot

2. What is the prediction for the next few days?

(A) It will rain.

(B) It will be neither cold nor hot.

(C) The high temperature will be 78°.

3. What is the male speaker's favorite season?

(A) Spring

(B) Summer

(C) Autumn

Unit 10, Part 3: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. On which day did the male speaker return from Taipei?

(A) The 12th

(B) The 26th

(C) The 29th

2. What was the weather like when the male speaker was in Taipei the last time?

(A) Very hot

(B) Very humid

(C) There was a typhoon.

3. What was the weather like when the male speaker was in Taipei this time?

(A) Very hot

(B) Very humid

(C) There was a typhoon.

4. According to the male speaker, which season in Taiwan is best for tourists?

(A) Winter

(B) Summer

(C) Autumn

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. What is the weather like right now?

(A) Light rain

(B) Heavy rain

(C) Sunshine

2. What is Mary doing?

(A) Studying

(B) Sleeping

(C) Having fun

Unit 10, Part 4: Listening Comprehension Exercises

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recorded passages, circle the best response to each of the questions that follows. You may listen to each passage as many times as needed.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE ONE: QUESTIONS

1. Where is Qingdao?

(A) In the east of China

(B) In the west of China

(C) In the south of China

2. What is the winter like in Nanjing?

(A) Cold

(B) Hot

(C) Humid

3. How long has the female speaker been in Nanjing?

(A) Half a year

(B) A year

(C) A year and a half

4. Has she gotten used to the climate in Nanjing?

(A) Yes, she has.

(B) No, she hasn't.

(C) Not at first, but now she has just about gotten accustomed to it.

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

EXERCISE TWO: QUESTIONS

1. When did the female speaker come?

(A) Around 5:40

(B) Around 6:00

(C) Around 6:20

2. How did the male speaker come?

(A) By bus

(B) By taxi

(C) On foot

3. What did the female speaker's experience show?

(A) Taxi is faster than bus.

(B) Walking can be faster than bus or taxi.

(C) Taxi is not necessarily faster than bus.

4. How would the male speaker's attitude toward the female speaker be best described?

(A) He is angry at her.

(B) He is used to her.

(C) He likes her very much.

6. Dictation Exercises

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Dictation Exercise 1

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION: INITIALS

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recording for this exercise, write in the correct Pinyin initials. The finals and tones are indicated. You may listen to the recording as many times as needed..

1. _____ ā
2. _____ ū
3. _____ ī
4. _____ ō
5. _____ āi
6. _____ iā
7. _____ ōu
8. _____ āo
9. _____ iē

10. _____ īn

11. _____ ēn

12. _____ uī

13. _____ ān

14. _____ ū

15. _____ ū

16. _____ ē

17. _____ ā

18. _____ ī

19. _____ ī

20. _____ iān

21. _____ uē

22. _____ ēng

23. _____ ōng

24. _____ uān

25. _____ uān

26. _____ āng

27. _____ uī

28. _____ ā

29. _____ āo

30. _____ ī

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Dictation Exercise 2

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION: FINALS

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recording for this exercise, write in the correct Pinyin finals, which are all in Tone One. The initials are indicated. You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. f _____

2. j _____

3. t _____

4. x _____

5. j _____

6. c _____

7. sh _____

8. y _____

9. z _____

10. ch _____

11. r _____

12. g _____

13. w _____

14. l _____

15. zh _____

16. b _____

17. x _____

18. m _____

19. k _____

20. p _____

21. y _____

22. z _____

23. q _____

24. r _____

25. n _____

26. j _____

27. q _____

28. s _____

29. z _____

30. zh _____

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Dictation Exercise 3

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION: TONES

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recording for this exercise, add the correct Pinyin tones. The initials and finals are indicated. You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. ta

2. ma

3. wo

4. shei

5. hao

6. lei

7. sha

8. gui

9. ni

10. mei

11. zhi

12. shu

13. tan

14. lü

15. lu

16. ru

17. rou

18. lüe

19. ku

20. li

21. xue

22. lan

23. mai

24. mai

25. pai

26. er

27. xiu

28. shuo

29. kuang

30. feng

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Dictation Exercise 4

PRONUNCIATION AND ROMANIZATION: INITIALS, FINALS, AND TONES

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE

Based on the recording for this exercise, write the initial, final, and tone for the syllables you hear. You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

9. _____

10. _____

11. _____

12. _____

13. _____

14. _____

15. _____

16. _____

17. _____

18. _____

19. _____

20. _____

21. _____

22. _____

23. _____

24. _____

25. _____

26. _____

27. _____

28. _____

29. _____

30. _____

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Dictation Exercise 5

CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS 1–32

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recording for this exercise, write below the English equivalents for the Chinese expressions you hear. Note that some of the classroom expressions from the textbook have here been combined or slightly rearranged. You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

9. _____

10. _____

11. _____

12. _____

13. _____

14. _____

15. _____

16. _____

17. _____

18. _____

19. _____

20. _____

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Dictation Exercise 6

UNIT 3, PART 2: NUMBERS 1–99 AND AGES

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recording for this exercise, write the number or age that you hear (in the case of ages, write “___ years old”). You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

9. _____

10. _____

11. _____

12. _____

13. _____

14. _____

15. _____

16. _____

17. _____

18. _____

19. _____

20. _____

21. _____

22. _____

23. _____

24. _____

25. _____

26. _____

27. _____

28. _____

29. _____

30. _____

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Dictation Exercise 7

UNIT 3, PART 3: NUMBERS 1–9,999 AND MONEY AMOUNTS

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recording for this exercise, write the number or money amount that you hear (in the case of money amounts, assume it is American money and indicate \$ or ¢ as appropriate). You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

9. _____

10. _____

11. _____

12. _____

13. _____

14. _____

15. _____

16. _____

17. _____

18. _____

19. _____

20. _____

21. _____

22. _____

23. _____

24. _____

25. _____

26. _____

27. _____

28. _____

29. _____

30. _____

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Dictation Exercise 8

UNIT 3, PART 4: CLOCK TIMES AND AMOUNTS OF TIME

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recording for this exercise, write the clock time or amount of time that you hear. (Write clock times as hour followed by minutes, e.g., “5:35”; indicate amounts of time with “hours” or “minutes”, e.g., “2 hours” or “10 minutes.”) You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

9. _____

10. _____

11. _____

12. _____

13. _____

14. _____

15. _____

16. _____

17. _____

18. _____

19. _____

20. _____

21. _____

22. _____

23. _____

24. _____

25. _____

26. _____

27. _____

28. _____

29. _____

30. _____

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Dictation Exercise 9

UNIT 4, PART 2: DATES

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recording for this exercise, write the date that you hear, including day of the week, month, day of the month, and year. For example, if you hear the Chinese for “Monday, July 4, 2011,” then write below in this order and with these abbreviations: “Mon., 7/4/2011.” You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

11. _____

12. _____

13. _____

14. _____

15. _____

16. _____

17. _____

18. _____

19. _____

20. _____

To Download the audio files, please click [here](#).

Dictation Exercise 10

UNIT 4, PART 4: LARGE NUMBERS

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Based on the recording for this exercise, write numerically the number that you hear as it would be written in the U.S. For example, for “one billion three hundred million,” write “1,300,000,000.” If the Chinese uses duō to indicate “more

than,” then use a plus mark (+) after the number. You may listen to the recording as many times as needed.

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

9. _____

10. _____

11. _____

12. _____

13. _____

14. _____

15. _____

16. _____

17. _____

18. _____

19. _____

20. _____

21. _____

22. _____

23. _____

24. _____

25. _____

26. _____

27. _____

28. _____

29. _____

30. _____

7. Translation Exercises, Units 1–10: For Each Part (Lesson)

Unit 1, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Where is Ke Leien going?
2. I'm going to the cafeteria. How about you?
3. Wang Jingsheng is going back to the dorm.
4. Ke Leien is going to take care of some things.
5. You're going to the library; I also am going to the library.

Unit 1, Part 2: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I'm tired; are you tired, too?

2. Haven't seen you for a long time! Are you busy?
3. He is busy; his wife and children are also all busy.
4. How have your mom and dad been? Are they both well?
5. She has a little something (she has to do); I also have a little something (I have to do).

Unit 1, Part 3: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Chinese is not hard; Chinese is easy!
2. Little Wang, hi! How have you been lately?
3. Recently her studies have not been too intense.
4. Recently we have all been quite busy. (use tǐng...-de pattern)
5. Is Old Zhao going? Are you going? (use affirmative-negative question pattern)

Unit 1, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Teacher Wang, please come in! Please sit down!
2. We've gotten tired. Have you (plural) gotten tired, too?
3. A: Ms. Gao, thank you! B: You're welcome. Take care!
4. Mr. Li, how are you? Mrs. Li, how are you? (be as polite as possible)
5. Miss Lin, I have a little something (I have to do); I must be going now. Goodbye!

Unit 2, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. She is American, Chinese-American. How about you?
2. Are both of you Chinese? And how about that classmate?

3. Excuse me, what country are you from? Are you Japanese?
(be polite)

4. I'm called (write your own Chinese surname and given name). What's your name?

5. They're not all good fathers. This teacher is a good father, but that teacher isn't a good father.

Unit 2, Part 2: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. We welcome you to come to America! (be polite)

2. Who is your (plural) teacher? Who are your classmates?

3. Welcome! Please come in, please sit down. Don't leave!

4. I'm happy to meet you. Excuse me, how should I address you?

5. Don't address me like this. It would be better if you called me Little Gao.

Unit 2, Part 3: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I study at Taiwan University; where do you study?
2. This person must be your spouse, I suppose? (be polite)
3. My mother works at a company. Where does your mother work?
4. Mr. Wu works at the Foreign Ministry, Mrs. Wu works at the Japanese Embassy.
5. What is your last name? At which organization do you work? (be as polite as you can)

Unit 2, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Sorry, I didn't go, I also didn't ask.
2. None of them went to the dining hall.

3. A: Have they come? B: They still haven't come.
4. Not all of them are Chinese, but none of us are Canadians.
5. Miss Wang from the Chinese Embassy has come. Do you know her?

Unit 3, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. We in the class have nine classmates. (be polite)
2. You guys in all have how many Chinese language teachers?
3. One is a male student, eight are female students. (no need to be polite)
4. In the class there are seven French people, six Chinese people, and four Germans.
5. There are five teachers; two are male teachers, three are female teachers. (be polite)

Unit 3, Part 2: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. How old is their child?
2. Next month I'll be 19 years old.
3. How old is your mother this year?
4. You don't have an older brother, right?
5. Let me try to think: My father is 61 this year.

Unit 3, Part 3: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Why don't we buy one, too?
2. How much does that backpack cost?
3. The cups and bags she sells are all too expensive.

4. Why don't you take a look. This is very good, also very inexpensive.

5. This briefcase costs three thousand four hundred and fifty-nine dollars.

Unit 3, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. In that case, I then will take the 10:00 train.
2. We will take the 9:30 one. How about you?
3. To Tianjin it takes about one and one-half hours.
4. Excuse me, how long does it take to get to Singapore?
5. Now it's already 2:30; I'm afraid you guys are not going to make it.

Unit 4, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Excuse me, is the library open on Sunday?
2. I ordinarily sleep seven hours every day. How about you?
3. Monday, Wednesday, Friday the company is open half the day.
4. I usually get up at 7:00 in the morning and go to sleep at 11:00 at night.
5. The language lab opens at 9:00 in the morning, and closes at 8:30 in the evening.

Unit 4, Part 2: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Her mother's birthday is November 24.
2. His father was born on September 19, 1965 in England.
3. What is the date tomorrow and what day of the week is it?

4. My address is Peace Road, Section 3, Lane 46, Alley 5, Number 27, 7th floor.

5. How many days? One day! How many weeks? Two weeks! How many months? Three months! How many years? Four years!

Unit 4, Part 3: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. This is my third time in China.
2. Teacher Wang this year went twice.
3. On November 25th I'll be going home.
4. I've never been (= "gone") to China before. Have you been there before?
5. A: How long will you be staying? B: This time I want to stay one month.

Unit 4, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. How many people are there in Shanghai?
2. Taiwan has about twenty-four million people.
3. It seems Taipei only has three million people.
4. It seems Guangzhou has more than twelve million people.
5. Guangzhou's population is comparatively larger. (use duō "be many, much")

Unit 5, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Where is that table?
2. Do you know where that chair is?
3. Excuse me, is Ms. Zhang present?
4. If I'm not there, can you leave me a note?
5. Mrs. Zhang is here, but Ms. Zhang is not here now.

Unit 5, Part 2: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I work there.
2. Where do you eat breakfast?
3. We often come here to eat Chinese food.
4. She is studying Chinese language at Beijing University.
5. Gosh! Soon it will be seven o'clock. I have to go eat dinner!

Unit 5, Part 3: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Shanghai is in the east of China.
2. The year before last they moved to Chengdu.

3. Little Li, you really have gotten a little fatter!
4. I'm looking for the toilet; excuse me, where's the toilet?
5. This time I'm staying at the Beijing Hotel. Where do you live?

Unit 5, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. In the cup there are five cents.
2. The computer is on that table to your right.
3. The switch is not in the front, it's in the back.
4. That thing that is on top—don't concern yourself with it!
5. Little Wang is outside the library; he's not inside the library.

Unit 6, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. That is the candy that she gave me.
2. Auntie, let me introduce a friend to you.
3. The dining hall food is not very good to eat.
4. This is a little present that I'm giving you. (be polite)
5. Her boyfriend is already in his senior year; he's quite good-looking.

Unit 6, Part 2: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Little Jin, you look very sleepy!
2. I'm not yet married. Are you married?
3. Excuse me, what does qiānzhèng mean?
4. Old Sun, I suppose you're not yet fifty years old?

5. My Chinese friend was born in Tianjin and then grew up in Beijing.

Unit 6, Part 3: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. That child is six months old.
2. Why do you only work half the day?
3. Do you like to teach? What do you teach?
4. Because we're very busy, we didn't wait for him.
5. You work at Northeast Airlines, right? When do you go to work and when do you get off from work?

Unit 6, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. He's the oldest in their family.

2. Sorry, I forgot to introduce myself.
3. Mrs. Zhang, in the future if there is an opportunity, let's chat again!
4. I have one older sister and one younger brother. How many siblings do you have?
5. My older brother is studying abroad in Japan; my younger sister immigrated to France.

Unit 7, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Who all is there in their family?
2. My parents used to work in a factory. (“used to” = “formerly”)
3. Formerly I sold computers; now I've changed my line of work.
4. She works in a kindergarten; she has to go to work at 7:00 in the morning.
5. Because his health is not too good, therefore he now is not engaged in business anymore.

Unit 7, Part 2: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I can speak a little Chinese, but (I) speak it not too well.
2. She only knows English, she can't speak other languages.
3. I recognize about two hundred Chinese characters; some I can write, others I can't.
4. He used to be able to write Chinese characters, but now he has completely forgotten.
5. Oh, your Chinese characters are written not badly! (indicate this is something obvious)

Unit 7, Part 3: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. No wonder the things here are so expensive!

2. I didn't come alone. I came together with my parents.
3. We arrived this year in September. When did you arrive?
4. Sometimes I go with my classmates, sometimes I go alone.
5. My Chinese in the beginning was learned in America, later I studied for a while in China.

Unit 7, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I hear you speak English very well.
2. Six months ago I couldn't yet speak Chinese.
3. Little Gao, where did you study before you came here?
4. In 3 months, we're going to China for study abroad. ("in 3 months" = "after 3 months")
5. In China the great majority of people start working after they graduate from high school.

Unit 8, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. My home is close to her home.
2. Is your dormitory far from the dining hall?
3. Excuse me, how do you get to Tiananmen?
4. If you take a train, it will probably take more or less two hours.
5. Please keep going straight ahead; when you've passed the Beijing Hotel then you'll have arrived.

Unit 8, Part 2: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I want a cab to go to the Great Wall Hotel.
2. The car will be there in twenty-five minutes.
3. I have a foreign friend whose last name is Tachelzik.

4. Why don't you wait at the entrance to Capital Airport.
5. Her English name is Mary Smith. She doesn't yet have a Chinese name.

Unit 8, Part 3: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. How come you still haven't decided what you want to do?
2. At that time it's rush hour; traffic is comparatively congested.
3. Could I trouble you to be a little faster, all right? Soon we'll be late!
4. They said the car had already been dispatched and would be there in twenty minutes.
5. I called you on the phone an hour ago to ask for a taxi. (don't use zhōngtóu for "hour")

Unit 8, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Those three pieces of luggage are all mine.
2. A: How much do you weigh? B: I weigh 62 kilos.
3. How much time does one need from here to the airport?
4. A: How tall is she? B: It seems she's about one meter seventy.
5. There's a traffic jam here again; we have no choice but to change to a different road.

Unit 9, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Ask her what colors she likes.
2. Turn right at the next intersection.
3. When you pass the third traffic light, turn east.
4. My daughter likes blue and yellow; my son likes black and white.

5. He isn't a person from this locality; he's probably not very clear either.

Unit 9, Part 2: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Excuse me, to get to the zoo, what bus number do you take?
2. The zoo? I have to think for a second; I'm not too clear either.
3. You first take bus number 578; then transfer to street car number 232.
4. The street car has come. Get on quickly! You don't need to wait for me.
5. We keep many small animals at our house: cats, dogs, fish, and birds, we have them all!

Unit 9, Part 3: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I just got on. When did you get on?
2. Your room is not only clean, but it's also very neat.
3. I'll pay; you don't need to pay. ("pay" = "give money")
4. The students there, some are hard-working, some are lazy.
5. Two tickets to Tiananmen. When we get to Tiananmen, please call me.

Unit 9, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I'm not sleepy; I can't fall asleep. Do you think you can fall asleep?
2. I can understand spoken Chinese, but I can't read Chinese characters.
3. A: I suppose we'll soon be there? B: It's still early, there are still three stations.

4. Never mind, I remember he bought a ticket. In the future he should be more careful!

5. I'm sorry, my classmate bought a ticket but now he can't find it. What should be done?

Unit 10, Part 1: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. The weather report says that starting Friday, it's going to get hotter and hotter.

2. Tomorrow the high temperature is 37 degrees, the low temperature is 28 degrees.

3. This morning is cloudy; this afternoon it's possible it will change to clear weather.

4. Dang it, it's started raining; now it has thundered. Do you think lightning will strike?

5. Don't ask her; she's merely a child, she doesn't necessarily know either. (use zhǐ...éryǐ)

Unit 10, Part 2: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Today is a cloudy day; if the sun came out, then it would be good.
2. The season I like the most is spring, so I've come at just the right time!
3. Hey, the weather here is not bad. Neither cold nor hot, quite comfortable.
4. If you want to have a good time in Canada, summer is the most appropriate.
5. In the winter it's extremely cold; in the summer it's both dry and hot, and it seldom rains.

Unit 10, Part 3: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. What are you doing? Don't go in! Come out quickly!

2. We encountered a big typhoon; we really had bad luck.
3. Taiwan is both hot and humid; in the winter it often drizzles.
4. Recently it's been raining every day, there's no way at all to go outdoors.
5. Actually, it's snowing right now, but because it's too far away, you can't tell.

Unit 10, Part 4: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. The East Coast of the U.S. is not as dry as the West Coast.
2. Where in China is your home? What is the climate like there?
3. When I first arrived, I didn't adapt too well; later it was pretty much O.K.
4. I feel that the scenery on the West Coast is more beautiful than on the East Coast.
5. The winters here are warmer than New York, and the summers are cooler than New York.

8. Translation Exercises, Units 1–10: For Each Complete Unit

Unit 1: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Mr. Zhao is a good teacher; he is very interesting.
2. Chinese is not too hard, and it's also not too easy.
3. Miss Ke, welcome! Please come in, please sit down.
4. Mrs. Li, has your work been busy recently? (be polite)
5. I'm going to take care of some things. How about you?
6. She is very tall; her mom and dad are also both very tall.
7. I'll go to the library; you please go back to the dormitory.
8. We have all gotten tired. Have you (plural) also gotten tired?
9. I have a little something to do; I must be going now. Goodbye!

10. Little Lin, how are you? Long time no see! Where are you going?

Unit 2: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I know Ms. Ma from the U.S. Embassy.
2. I suppose your studies must be very intense.
3. General Manager He, welcome to America! (be polite)
4. A: Sorry, I got it wrong, I didn't bring name cards. B: Never mind.
5. Excuse me, who is that? What's his name? What unit does he work in?
6. Don't address me like that. It would be better if you called me Little Wu.
7. My mother and I work at a trading company, my dad doesn't work anymore.
8. I will introduce you: this gentleman is my new colleague; his last name is Bai.

9. Old Wang, don't go back to the dining hall. It would be better if you went to the library.

10. They're my classmates; they're not all Americans. Little Lin is Chinese; she's very busy.

Unit 3: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. How much is nine plus eight minus six?
2. This bag is cheap. Why don't you buy one too?
3. I don't have an older brother, also don't have an older sister.
4. In our Chinese class, in all there are twelve classmates, right?
5. This one costs \$4,000, that one costs \$5,000. Too expensive!
6. Would it be all right if I took a look at your name card?
Thanks!
7. I'm afraid the classmate who works in the library is no longer coming.

8. Let me try to think... My mom will be forty-seven years old next month.

9. My mom and dad are coming at 11:45; it will still take an hour and a half.

10. A: How much does that cup cost? B: This cup only costs two dollars and ninety-eight cents.

Unit 4: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. She was born in Taipei on July 23, 1995.
2. This is the third time that he's going to China.
3. It seems Hong Kong has more than seven million people.
4. It seems yesterday was October 17, a Wednesday. Is that right?
5. This is my second time here; this time I'm going to stay for three months.
6. That trading company is open half-days on Saturdays; it's closed on Sundays.

7. The library opens daily at 8:45 in the morning and closes at 7:30 in the evening.

8. I've been to Shanghai, but I've never been to Guangzhou. Have you been there?

9. The first person wants to go for one day; the second person wants to go for one year.

10. Her address is 6th Floor, No. 108, Alley 22, Lane 345, Nanjing East Road Section Three.

Unit 5: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. If you're tired, you may sleep here.
2. Little Sun, do you know where the boss is?
3. Miss Zhang was not in. I left her a message.
4. Is she also studying Chinese at Peking University?
5. Last year they moved to Tianjin; it's east of Beijing.
6. Next month Mrs. Chen is coming here to study English.

7. The dog was on the bookshelf, the child was under the table.

8. This computer is a little cheaper, that computer is a little more expensive.

9. It will soon be 12:00. The shoe factory workers will soon be eating lunch.

10. A: Where does Mr. Bai live? B: He lives in Nanjing, to the west of Shanghai.

Unit 6: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. I'm a first-year and she's a junior. What year are you in?

2. My friend was born in China and then grew up in America.

3. Mrs. Zheng, this is a little present which we are giving you.

4. A: How old is her son? B: He's still small. It seems he's seven months old.

5. She's already over 70, but because she eats lots of good things, she looks young.

6. A: Are you married? B: My older brother is already married; I'm not yet married.
7. That Chinese person said that American food looks good but does not taste very good.
8. I have one older sister, she works at Southwest Airlines. Do you have brothers or sisters?
9. Sorry, I forgot to introduce myself. My surname is Huang. I'm a teacher; I teach junior high.
10. A: I suppose your daughter is already in elementary school? B: Yes, she's already in second grade.

Unit 7: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Where did you live before coming to America?
2. You say you have one child, right? A boy or a girl? How old?
3. I've heard that Little Chen knows German, French, and Japanese.

4. A: Did you go by yourself? B: No, I went together with three classmates.

5. A: Can you write Chinese? B: I can write a little, but I don't write it very well.

6. Do you know if that American teacher can speak Standard Chinese (Mandarin)?

7. She lived in Spain for over eleven years. No wonder she speaks Spanish so well.

8. After graduating from high school, she worked for two years, then she applied to college.

9. The Chinese University of Hong Kong has several thousand students. Some I know, others I don't.

10. A: You speak English very well, you know! Where did you learn it? B: I learned it in kindergarten.

Unit 8: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. Excuse me, how do I get to Taiwan University?

2. We'll come looking for you in half an hour, O.K.?

3. It seems that my home is not very far from your home.
4. Miss Li is not at her desk. Please call her again in ten minutes.
5. The tourists who come from America almost all stay at the Beijing Hotel.
6. These two pieces of luggage are mine, those three pieces of luggage are his.
7. Don't get excited, I think Professor Wang is likely to come in just a little while.
8. Keep going straight, after you've passed the French Embassy you then will have arrived.
9. A: How long does it take to get from there to the foreign ministry? B: One hour, more or less.
10. Darn it, I forgot! New Asia Trading Co. is closed today. We have no choice but to come again tomorrow.

Unit 9: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. He's not only stupid but also lazy.

2. First take the bus, then take the trolley.
3. When we get to Tiananmen, please call me.
4. She likes red and blue. What colors do you like?
5. I can't fall asleep on trains. Can you fall asleep on trains?
6. Go straight from here and turn left at the first traffic light.
7. You don't need to ask her, she's not very clear about it either.
8. First turn to the east, then turn to the west, and you'll be there!
9. I'm sorry, I can't find my name cards. (don't use kéyì or néng)
10. At home we raise fish. Do you keep any small animals at home?

Unit 10: Translation Exercise

NAME _____ COURSE _____ DATE _____

Translate the following sentences into Pinyin romanization with correct tone marks. If you have forgotten a word, consult the English-Chinese Glossary in the back of your textbook.

1. When Old Wang died, everybody was very sad.

2. The east coast of the U.S. is not as dry as the west coast.
3. This winter I'm going to Beijing. Is Beijing colder than New York?
4. I'm playing with my computer; Old Sun is sleeping. What are you doing?
5. Macao is hot every day—both hot and humid, so we seldom go outdoors.
6. Recently the weather has been cooler and cooler, more and more comfortable.
7. Starting tomorrow, I'm going to be working at the embassy. I'm so nervous I'm going to die.
8. The weather forecast said that tomorrow the high temperature will be 33° and the low temperature 25°.
9. If it rains tomorrow, then we won't go out to have fun; but the weather report isn't necessarily accurate.
10. A: My friends are neither many nor few. B: I have only one good friend. C: I don't have friends at all.

Cornelius C. Kubler is Stanfield Professor of Asian Studies at Williams College, where he teaches Chinese and for many years chaired the Department of Asian Studies. He was formerly Chinese Language Training Supervisor and Chair of the Department of Asian and African Languages at the




Foreign Service Institute, U.S. Department of State, where he trained American diplomats in Chinese and other languages, and he served for six years as Principal of the American Institute in Taiwan Chinese Language & Area Studies School. Kubler, who has directed intensive Chinese language training programs in the U.S., mainland China, and Taiwan, has been active in Chinese language test development and has authored or coauthored nine books and over 50 articles on Chinese language pedagogy and linguistics.

Yang Wang, native to Beijing, is a Lecturer in Chinese at Brown University, where she teaches all levels of modern Chinese language. Before joining the Brown faculty, she taught Chinese at The Ohio State University and Williams College. She also taught for several years at the Middlebury College Summer Chinese School. Wang is interested in the implications of pragmatics in Chinese pedagogical practice, teaching materials development, and the integration of technology into the curriculum.

REINFORCE YOUR CHINESE LANGUAGE SKILLS.

Anyone who's studying Chinese knows that it takes lots of practice. Use this one-of-a-kind practice guide together with any Chinese book or language program, and dramatically enhance your proficiency.

PRACTICE ESSENTIALS offers a wealth of carefully-designed activities to help you solidify every aspect of your spoken Chinese skills:

-  Substitution drills
-  Role Play exercises
-  Dictation exercises

-  Transformation & Response drills
-  Listening Comprehension exercises
-  Translation exercises

The included CD-ROM provides over 16 hours of audio by native speakers, plus printable PDF files of hundreds of additional pages of Chinese exercises and activities.

Praise for BASIC SPOKEN CHINESE

"Outstanding for its carefully graduated presentation of material ... and perhaps most important of all, its separation of the task of learning to speak the language from the very different processes of learning to read and write Chinese characters ... The most exciting Chinese language textbook I have seen in many years."

—Dr. James E. Dew, retired associate professor of Chinese, Univ. of Michigan;
former Director of the Inter-University Program for Chinese Language Studies in Taipei

"A breath of fresh air ... Its dual track for spoken and written language finally gives American students a chance to develop oral proficiency without being slowed down by the character writing ... An ideal textbook for any program that seeks to advance rapidly in spoken Chinese and to fully prepare the students for their encounter with China."

—Dr. Jingqi Fu, Associate Professor of Chinese, St. Mary's College of Maryland

"Contextualized so learners know not only what to say, but why, when, and with whom it is appropriate to use such language ... thorough and clear ... refreshing."

—Dr. Matthew Christensen, Associate Professor of Chinese, Brigham Young University

"Kubler's books distinguish themselves with natural, culturally-rooted dialogues, detailed notes (for both written and spoken language), generous practice activities and an amazing care for organization."

These books will be valuable tools for both students and their teachers."

—Prof. Eric Peizl, Wisconsin Lutheran College

TOGETHER WITH THIS BOOK, USE:



978-0-8048-4015-8

TWO TRACKS FOR MORE EFFICIENT LEARNING...

基础中文 THE BASIC CHINESE SERIES 基礎中文



978-0-8048-4016-3



978-0-8048-4017-0



DOWNLOAD
Free bonus material



ISBN 978-1-4629-1464-7
\$24.95
9 781462 914647 US \$24.95

TUTTLE

www.tuttlepublishing.com

Printed in Singapore